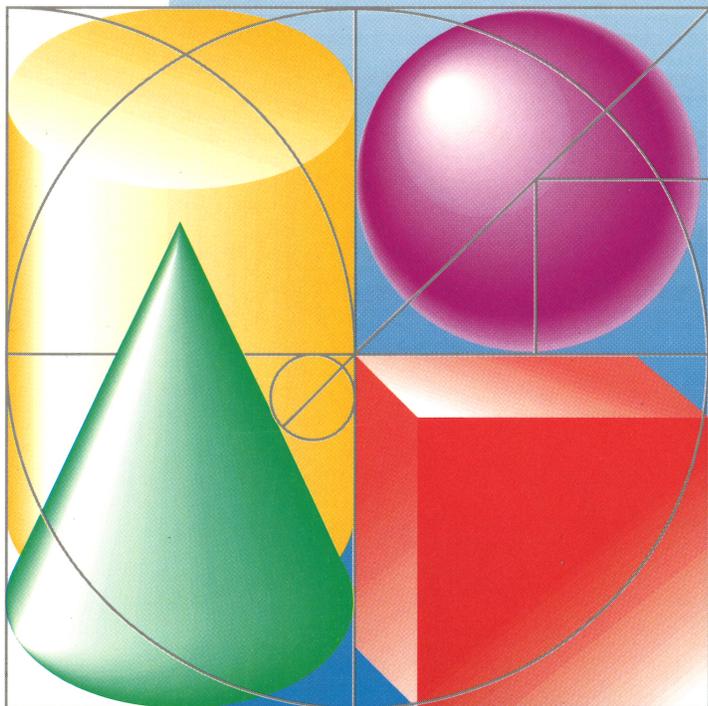




X-REF Apple® II Books and Notes

APDA # A0021LL/A



 **X-REF Apple II Books and Notes**

Packing List

This package contains the following items:

1	Manual <i>X-REF Books and Notes</i>	A0021LL/A
---	-------------------------------------	-----------

If you have any questions, please call 1-800-282-2732.

X-Ref (Cross-Reference) to Apple II Programming Books

The X-Ref to Apple II Programming Books is a compilation of the glossaries and indexes from the books and references listed below. It is intended to be a "look here first" book for helping you find the definition to terms used in any of these sources of technical information. In addition, the compiled index will help you find what you are looking for across the entire suite.

The books covered, and the initials used to represent them are:

Apple IIc Technical Reference	CTR
Apple IIe Technical Reference	ETR
Apple IIGS Firmware Reference	GSF
Apple IIGS Hardware Reference	GSH
ProDOS 16 Technical Reference	P16
Programmer's Introduction to the Apple IIGS	PI
Technical Introduction to the Apple IIGS	GST
Apple IIGS Toolbox Reference (treated as a whole)	GSTR
Technical Notes	
Apple IIe Tech Notes	Ile
Apple IIc Tech Notes	Ilc
Apple IIGS Tech Notes	IIGS
Apple II Miscellaneous Tech Notes	Miscellaneous
AppleTalk Tech Notes	AppleTalk
GS/OS Tech Notes	GS/OS
ImageWriter Tech Notes	ImageWriter
Memory Expansion Card	Memory Expansion Card
Mouse Tech Notes	Mouse
ProDOS 8 Tech Notes	ProDOS
Pascal Tech Notes	Pascal
SmartPort Tech Notes	SmartPort
UniDisk 3.5 Tech Notes	UniDisk 3.5

The X-Ref contains two sections. The first is the complete glossary from all of the books listed. The second section is the combined index from all of the above technical references.

I hope that you find the X-Ref to be a valuable tool for your programming the Apple II line of computers.

Tom Chavez
Product Manager,
X-Ref (Cross-Reference) to Apple II Programming Books

Glossary

128K Apple II: Any standard Apple II with both main and auxiliary 64K banks of RAM. That includes all models of the Apple IIc and some models of the Apple IIe, including those with the Extended 80-Column Text Card installed. The Apple IIGS is not a 128K Apple II in the strict sense, even though it includes both 64K banks of RAM and is capable of running programs designed for a 128K Apple II. (GSH, GST)

320 mode: An Apple IIGS video display mode, 320 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (GSTR)

640 mode: An Apple IIGS video display mode, 640 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (GSTR)

64K Apple II: Any standard Apple II that has at least 64K of RAM. That includes the Apple IIc, the Apple IIe, and an Apple II or Apple II Plus with 48K of RAM and the Apple Language Card installed. (GSF, GSH, GST)

6502: The microprocessor used in the Apple II, in the Apple II Plus, and in early models of the Apple IIe. The 6502 is an MOS device with 8-bit data registers and 16-bit address registers. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

65816 assembly language: A low-level programming language written for the 65816 family of microprocessors. (GSTR)

65C02: A CMOS version of the 6502; the microprocessor used in the enhanced Apple IIe, the extended keyboard IIe, and the Apple IIc. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

65C816: The microprocessor used in the Apple IIGS. The 65C816 is a CMOS device with 16-bit data registers and 24-bit address registers. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

68000: The microprocessor used in the Macintosh and Macintosh Plus. The 68000 has 32-bit data and address registers. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

80-column text card: A peripheral card that allows the Apple II, Apple II Plus, and Apple IIe computers to display text in 80 columns (in addition to the standard 40 columns). (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

80/40-column switch: A switch that controls the maximum number of columns or characters across the screen. A television can legibly display a maximum of 40 characters across the screen, whereas a video monitor can display 80 characters. (CTR, ETR)

A register: See accumulator. (GSTR, PI)

absolute: Characteristic of a load segment or other program code that must be loaded at a specific address in memory and never moved. Compare relocatable, position-independent. (GSTR, PI, P16)

absolute addressing: An addressing mode in which instruction operands are interpreted as literal addresses. (GSTR, PI)

absolute clamps: Values that establish the minimum and maximum X and Y coordinates for alternative pointing devices. (GSTR)

access (or access byte): An attribute of a ProDOS file that controls whether the file may be read from, written to, renamed, or backed up. (GSTR, PI)

access byte: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file that determines what types of operations, such as reading or writing, may be performed on the file. (P16)

accumulator: The register in a computer's central processor or microprocessor where most computations are performed. Also called A register. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

ACIA: Abbreviation for Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter, a type of communications IC used in some Apple computers. An ACIA converts data from parallel to serial form and vice versa. It handles serial transmission and reception and RS-232-C signals under the control of its internal registers, which can be set and changed by firmware or software. Compare SCC. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

acronym: A word formed from the initial letters of a name or phrase, such as ROM (from read-only memory). (CTR, ETR, GST)

activate: To make active. A control or window may be activated. Compare enable. (GSTR, PI)

activate event: A window event that occurs when a window is made either active or inactive. (GSTR, PI)

active: Able to respond to the user's mouse or keyboard actions. Controls and windows that are active are displayed differently from inactive items. (GSTR, PI)

ADB: See Apple DeskTop Bus. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

ADB commands: Commands that are issued to the Apple Desktop Bus. These are not the same as Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set routines; rather, the tool set routines often include an ADB command as a parameter. The Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set then interprets and issues the ADB command. (GSTR)

ADC: See analog-to-digital converter. (CTR, GST)

address: A number that specifies the location of a single byte of memory. Addresses can be given as decimal or hexadecimal integers. A 64K system has addresses ranging from 0 to 65535 (in decimal) or from \$0000 to \$FFFF (in hexadecimal). The Apple IIGS has addresses ranging from 0 to 16,777,215 (decimal) or from \$00 00 00 to \$FF FF FF (hexadecimal). A complete address consists of a 4-bit bank number (\$00 to \$FF) followed by a 16-bit address within that bank (\$00 00 to \$FF FF). The letter x in an address stands for all possible values for that digit. For example, \$Dxxx means all the addresses from \$D000 through \$DFFF. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, P16)

address bus: The bus that carries addresses from the CPU to components under its control. (PI)

advanced linker (APW): One aspect of the linker supplied with APW. The operation of the advanced linker is programmable. Compare standard linker. (PI)

alert: A warning or report of an error in the form of an alert box, a sound from the computer's speaker, or both. (GSTR, PI)

alert box: A special type of dialog box that appears on the screen to give a warning or to report an error message during use of an application. (GSTR, PI)

alert sound: A sound generated by a sound procedure that emits a tone or sequence of tones when the user is to be alerted of a condition. (GSTR)

alert stage: One of four stages that correspond to consecutive occurrences of an alert. (GSTR)

alert template: A data structure that contains an alert ID, a RECT determining the alert window's size and location, information about what should happen at each stage of the alert, and a list of pointers to the item templates. (GSTR)

alert window: The window in which an alert box appears. One of the two predefined window formats. Compare document window. (GSTR, PI)

algorithm: A step-by-step procedure for solving a problem or accomplishing a task. (CTR, ETR)

alternative pointing devices: A device, such as a graphics tablet or trackball, used instead of the mouse. (GSTR)

American Simplified Keyboard: See Dvorak keyboard. (CTR, ETR, GST)

American Standard Code for Information Interchange: See ASCII. (GST)

analog: (adj) Varying smoothly and continuously over a range, rather than changing in discrete jumps. For example, a conventional 12-hour clock face is an analog device that shows the time of day by the continuously changing position of the clock's hands. Compare digital. (CTR, ETR, GST)

analog data: Data in the form of continuously variable quantities. Compare digital data. (CTR, ETR)

analog RGB: A type of color video monitor that accepts separate analog signals for the red, green, and blue color primaries. The intensity of each primary can vary continuously, making possible many shades and tints of color. Compare TTL RGB. (GSH, GST, PI)

analog signal: A signal that varies continuously over time, rather than being sent and received in discrete intervals. Compare digital signal. (CTR, ETR, GST)

analog-to-digital converter (ADC): A device that converts quantities from analog to digital form. For example, computer hand controls convert the position of the control dial (an analog quantity) into a discrete number (a digital quantity) that changes stepwise even when the dial is turned smoothly. (CTR, ETR, GST)

AND: A logical operator that produces a true result if both its operands are true, and a false result if either or both its operands are false. Compare OR, NOT, exclusive OR. (CTR, ETR)

ANSI: Acronym for American National Standards Institute, which sets standards for many technical fields and is the most common standard for computer terminals. (CTR, ETR)

Apple Desktop Bus (ADB): An input bus, with its own protocol and electrical characteristics, that provides a method of connecting input devices such as keyboards and mouse devices to personal computers. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that facilitates an application's interaction with devices connected to the Apple Desktop Bus. (GSTR, PI)

Apple I: The first Apple computer. It was built in a garage in California by Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak. (CTR, ETR)

Apple II: A family of computers, including the original Apple II, the Apple II Plus, the Apple IIe, the Apple IIc, and the Apple IIGS. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

Apple II Pascal: A software system for the Apple II family that lets you create and execute programs written in the Pascal programming language. Apple II Pascal was adapted by Apple Computer from the University of California, San Diego, Pascal Operating System (UCSD Pascal). (CTR, ETR, GST)

Apple II Plus: A personal computer in the Apple II family with expansion slots that allow the user to enhance the computer's capabilities with peripheral and auxiliary cards. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

Apple IIc: A transportable personal computer in the Apple II family, with a disk drive, serial ports, and 80-column display capability built in. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

Apple IIe: A personal computer in the Apple II family with seven expansion slots and an auxiliary memory slot that allow the user to enhance the computer's capabilities with peripheral memory and video enhancement cards. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

Apple IIe 80-Column Text Card: A peripheral card that plugs into the Apple IIe's auxiliary memory slot and enables the computer to display text as either 40 or 80 characters per line. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Apple IIe Extended 80-Column Text Card:

A peripheral card that plugs into the Apple IIe's auxiliary memory slot and allows the computer to display either 40 or 80 characters per line while extending the computer's memory capacity by 64K. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Apple IIGS: The most advanced computer in the Apple II family. It features expanded memory, advanced sound and graphics, and the Apple IIGS Toolbox of programming routines. The Apple IIGS uses a 16-bit microprocessor and has 256K of RAM. It has slots like the Apple IIe and ports like the Apple IIc, and contains a 15-voice custom sound chip. (CTR, ETR, PI, GSTR)

Apple IIGS Debugger: A 65816 machine language code debugger for the Apple IIGS computer. (PI)

Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop: The development environment for the Apple IIGS computer. It consists of a set of programs that facilitate the writing, compiling, and debugging of Apple IIGS applications. See APW. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

Apple IIGS Toolbox: An extensive set of routines that facilitates writing desktop applications and provides easy program access to many Apple IIGS hardware and firmware features. Functions within the toolbox are grouped into tool sets. (GSTR, PI)

Apple III: An Apple computer; part of the Apple II family. The Apple III offered a built-in disk drive and built-in RS-232-C (serial) port. Its memory was expandable to 256K. (CTR, ETR)

Apple key: A modifier key on the Apple IIGS keyboard, marked with both an Apple icon and a spinner, the icon used on the equivalent key on some Macintosh keyboards. It performs the same functions as the Open Apple key on standard Apple II machines. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

Applesoft BASIC: The Apple II dialect of the BASIC programming language. An interpreter for creating and executing Applesoft BASIC programs is built into the firmware of computers in the Apple II family. See also BASIC, Integer BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GSF)

AppleTalk: Apple's local-area network for Apple II and Macintosh personal computers and the LaserWriter and ImageWriter II printers. Like the Macintosh, the Apple IIGS has the AppleTalk interface built in. (GSF)

AppleTalk connector: A piece of equipment—consisting of a connection box, a short cable, and an 8-pin miniature DIN connector—that enables an Apple IIGS to be part of an AppleTalk network. (GSF, GSH, GST)

application: A stand-alone program that performs a specific function, such as word processing, drawing, or telecommunications. Compare, for example, desk accessory, device driver. (GSTR, PI)

application event: Any of four types of events available for applications to define and respond to as desired. (GSTR)

application prefix: The ProDOS 16 prefix number 1/. It specifies the directory of the currently running application. (PI, GSTR)

application program (or application): (1) A program that performs a specific task useful to the computer user, such as word processing, data base management, or graphics. Compare controlling program, shell application, system program. (2) On the Apple IIGS, a program that accesses ProDOS 16 and the Toolbox directly, and that can be called or exited via the QUIT call. ProDOS 16 applications are file type \$B3. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

application window: A window in which an application's document appears. (GSTR, PI)

application-defined event: Any of four types of events available for applications to define and respond to as desired. (PI)

APW: See Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (GSF, GSH, PI, P16)

APW (Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop): A multilanguage development environment for writing Apple IIGS desktop applications. (GSTR)

APW Assembler: The 65816 assembly-language assembler provided with the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (GSTR, PI)

APW C Compiler: The C-language compiler provided with the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (GSTR, PI)

APW Editor: The program within the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop that allows you to enter, modify, and save source files for all APW languages. (PI)

APW Linker: The linker supplied with Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (PI, P16)

APW Shell: The programming environment of the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. It provides facilities for file manipulation and program execution, and supports shell applications. (GSTR, PI)

APW utility program: Any of various Shell applications supplied with the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop that function as APW Shell commands. (PI)

arbitrary mode: In the List Manager, a selection mode that allows the user to select members in a list without deselecting already-selected members. (GSTR)

arc: A portion of an oval; one of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. (GSTR, PI)

argument: A value on which a function or statement operates; it can be a number or a variable. For example, in the BASIC statement VTAB 10, the number 10 is the argument. Compare operand. (ETR)

arithmetic expression: A combination of numbers and arithmetic operators (such as $3 + 5$) that indicates some operation to be carried out. (CTR, ETR)

arithmetic operator: An operator, such as +, that combines numeric values to produce a numeric result. Compare logical operator, relational operator. (CTR, ETR)

ascent: In a font, the distance between the base line and the ascent line. (GSTR, PI)

ascent line: A horizontal line that coincides with the tops of the tallest characters in a font. See also base line, descent line. (GSTR, PI)

ASCII: Acronym for American Standard Code for Information Interchange, pronounced "ASK-ee." A code in which the numbers from 0 to 127 stand for text characters. ASCII code is used to represent text inside a computer and to transmit text between computers or between a computer and a peripheral device. Compare EBCDIC. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

aspect ratio: The ratio of an image's width to its height. For example, a standard video display has an aspect ratio of 4:3. (GSH, GST)

assembler: A language translator that converts a program written in assembly language into an equivalent program in machine language. The opposite of a disassembler. Compare compiler. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, PI, P16)

assembly language: A low-level programming language in which individual machine-language instructions are written in a symbolic form that's easier to understand than machine language itself. Each assembly-language instruction produces one machine-language instruction. See also machine language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

AsyncADBReceive completion routine: Used in conjunction with the ADB Tool Set routine AsyncADBReceive, the completion routine obtains ADB data from a buffer. Compare SRQ list completion routine. (GSTR)

asynchronous: Not synchronized by a mutual timing signal or clock. Compare synchronous. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter: See ACIA. (GST)

asynchronous transmission: A method of data transmission in which the receiving and sending devices don't share a common timer, and no timing data is transmitted. Each information character is individually synchronized, usually by the use of start and stop bits. The time interval between characters isn't necessarily fixed. Compare synchronous transmission. (CTR, ETR)

attributes word: Determines how memory blocks are allocated and maintained. Most of the attributes are defined at allocation time and can't be changed after that; other attributes can be modified after allocation. (GSTR, PI)

auto-key: A keyboard feature and an event type, in which a key being held down continuously is interpreted as a rapid series of identical keystrokes. (GSTR, PI)

auxID: A subfield of the User ID. An application may place any value it wishes into the auxID field. (GSTR, PI, P16)

auxiliary slot: The special expansion slot inside the Apple IIe used for the Apple IIe 80-Column Text Card or Extended 80-Column Text Card, and also for the RGB monitor card. The slot is labeled "AUX. CONNECTOR" on the circuit board. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

auxiliary type: A secondary classification of ProDOS files. A file's auxiliary type field may contain information of use to the applications that read it. Compare file type. (GSTR, PI)

available font: A font that the Font Manager can use because the font is the ROM font, or a font in the FONTS subdirectory, or a font that the application has added with the Font Manager routine AddFontVar. (GSTR)

back panel: The rear surface of the computer, which includes the power switch, the power connector, and connectors for peripheral devices. (CTR, GST)

background: The pixels within a character or other screen object that are not part of the object itself. (GSTR, PI)

background color: The color of background pixels in text; by default it is black. (GSTR, PI)

background pattern: The pattern QuickDraw II uses to erase objects on the screen. (GSTR, PI)

background pixels: In a character image, the pixels that are not part of the character itself. (GSTR, PI)

background printing: Printing from one application while another application is running. (GSF)

background procedure: A procedure run by the Print Manager whenever the Print Manager has directed output to the printer and is waiting for the printer to finish. (GSTR, PI)

backup bit: A bit in a file's access byte that tells backup programs whether the file has been altered since the last time it was backed up. (PI, P16)

bandwidth: The range of frequencies a device can handle. Bandwidth and maximum data transfer rate are directly proportional. For example, a video monitor's greater bandwidth allows it to display more information per scan frame than most home television sets can. To display 80 columns of text, a monitor should have a bandwidth of at least 12 MHz. (CTR)

bank: A 64K (65,536-byte) portion of the Apple IIGS internal memory. An individual bank is specified by the value of one of the 65C816 microprocessor's bank registers. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

bank \$00: The first bank of memory in the Apple IIGS. In emulation mode, it is equivalent to main memory in an Apple IIe or Apple IIc computer. (GSTR, PI)

bank-switched memory: On Apple II computers, that part of the language card memory in which two 4K-portions of memory share the same address range (\$D000-\$DFFF). (GSF, GSH, PI, P16)

base address: In indexed addressing, the fixed component of an address. (CTR, ETR)

base family: A font family is a base family if it is the ROM font or if a plain-styled example of the family can be found among the fonts in the FONTS subdirectory. (GSTR)

base height: In the LineEdit Tool Set, the distance between the top of the destination rectangle and the base line. This controls where the text is drawn. (GSTR)

base line: A horizontal line that coincides with the bottom of the main body of each character in a font. Character descenders extend below the base line. (GSTR, PI)

BASIC: Acronym for Beginners All-purpose Symbolic Instruction Code. BASIC is a high-level programming language designed to be easy to learn. Two versions of BASIC are available from Apple Computer for use with all Apple II-family systems: Applesoft BASIC (built into the firmware) and Integer BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

BASICOUT: The routine that outputs a character when the 80-column firmware is active. (GSF)

batch: A mode of executing a computer program in which all code and data required by the program are loaded into the computer at the beginning, the program is run, and all results are output at the end. Batch mode is non-interactive. (PI)

Battery RAM: RAM memory on the Apple IIGS clock chip. A battery preserves the clock settings and the RAM contents when the power is off. Control Panel settings are kept in the Battery RAM. (GSF)

baud: A unit of data transmission speed: the number of discrete signal state changes per second. Often, but not always, equivalent to bits per second. Compare bit rate. (CTR, ETR, GST)

baud rate: The rate at which serial data is transferred, measured in signal transitions per second. It takes approximately 10 signal transitions to transmit a single character. (GSF)

best-fit font algorithm: The algorithm that the Font Manager routine InstallFont uses to look for a font that matches a given set of specifications. (GSTR)

binary: A method of numeric representation using a base-2 system. Valid digits are 0 and 1. Compare hexadecimal, decimal. (GSH)
Characterized by having two different components, or by having only two alternatives or values available; sometimes used synonymously with binary system. (CTR, ETR)

binary digit: The smallest unit of information in the binary number system; a 0 or a 1. Also called a bit. (CTR, ETR)

binary file: (1) A file whose data is to be interpreted in binary form. Machine-language programs and pictures are stored in binary files. Compare text file. (2) A file in binary file format. (GST, PI, P16)

binary file format: The ProDOS 8 loadable file format, consisting of one absolute memory image along with its destination address. A file in binary file format has ProDOS file type \$06 and is referred to as a BIN file. The System Loader cannot load BIN files. (PI, P16)

binary operator: An operator that combines two operands to produce a result. For example, + is a binary arithmetic operator; < is a binary relational operator; OR is a binary logical operator. Compare unary operator. (CTR, ETR)

binary system: The representation of numbers in the base-2 system, using only the two digits 0 and 1. For example, the numbers 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 become 0, 1, 10, 11, and 100 in binary notation. The binary system is commonly used in computers because the values 0 and 1 can easily be represented in a variety of ways, such as the presence or absence of current, positive or negative voltage, or a white or black dot on the display screen. A single binary digit—a 0 or a 1—is called a bit. Compare decimal, hexadecimal. (CTR, ETR)

bit: A contraction of binary digit. The smallest unit of information that a computer can hold. The value of a bit (1 or 0) represents a simple two-way choice, such as yes or no, on or off, positive or negative, something or nothing. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

bit image: A collection of bits in memory that have a rectilinear graphical representation. The display on the screen is a visible bit image. (GST)

bit map: A set of bits that represents the positions and states of a corresponding set of items. In graphics, video pixels are represented by a bit or bits in video display memory. See also graphics. (GSH, GST, P16)

bit plane: A method of representing images in computer memory. In a bit plane, consecutive bits in memory specify adjacent pixels in the image; if more than one bit is required to completely specify the state of a pixel, more than one bit plane is used for the image. Compare chunky pixels. (GSTR, PI)

bit rate: The speed at which bits are transmitted, usually expressed as bits per second, or bps. Compare baud. (CTR, ETR, GST)

bits per second: See bit rate. (CTR, ETR)

block: (1) A unit of data storage or transfer, typically 512 bytes. (2) A contiguous region of computer memory of arbitrary size, allocated by the Memory Manager. Also called a memory block. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

block device: A device that transfers data to or from a computer in multiples of 1 block (512 bytes) of characters at a time. Disk drives are block devices. Also called block I/O device. (GSF, GSTR, PI, P16)

block I/O device: See block device. (GSTR)

board: See printed-circuit board. (CTR, ETR)

body: In BASIC, the statements or instructions that make up a part of a program, such as a loop or a subroutine. (CTR, ETR)

Boolean logic: A mathematical system in which every expression evaluates to one of two values, usually referred to as TRUE or FALSE. (GSTR, PI)

Boolean variable: A variable that can have one of two values, usually referred to as TRUE or FALSE. (GSTR, PI)

boot: Another way to say start up. A computer boots by loading a program into memory from an external storage medium such as a disk. Starting up is often accomplished by first loading a small program, which then reads a larger program into memory. The program is said to “pull itself up by its own bootstraps”—hence the term bootstrapping or booting. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

boot disk: See startup disk. (CTR, ETR)

boot prefix: The ProDOS 16 prefix number */. It specifies the name of the volume from which the currently running version of ProDOS 16 was started up. (PI)

bootstrap: See boot. (CTR, ETR, GST)

bottom scroll bar: The scroll bar the user selects to scroll horizontally through the data in a window. (GSTR)

boundary rectangle: A rectangle, defined as part of a QuickDraw II LocInfo record, that encloses the active area of the pixel image and imposes a coordinate system on it. Its upper-left corner is always aligned on the first pixel in the pixel map. (GSTR, PI)

boundsRect: The GrafPort field that defines the port's boundary rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

bps: See bit rate. (CTR, ETR)

branch: (v) To pass program control to a line or statement other than the next in sequence. (n) A statement that performs a branch. See conditional branch, unconditional branch. (CTR, ETR)

BREAK: A SPACE (0) signal, sent over a communication line, of long enough duration to interrupt the sender. This signal is often used to end a session with a time-sharing service. BREAK is also used in BASIC to stop execution of a program. It's generated by pressing Control-C. (CTR, ETR)

breakpoint: A machine-language instruction in a program that causes execution to halt. (PI)

BRK: A “software interrupt.” An instruction that causes the 6502 or 65C02 microprocessor to halt. Pronounced “break.” (CTR, ETR)

buffer: A holding area in the computer's memory (for example, a print buffer) where information can be stored by one program or device and then read at a different rate by another. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

bug: An error in a program that causes it not to work as intended. The expression reportedly comes from the early days of computing when an itinerant moth shorted a connection and caused a breakdown in a room-size computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

bus: A group of wires or circuits that transmit related information from one part of a computer system to another. In a network, a line of cable with connectors linking devices together. A bus network has a beginning and an end. (It's not in a closed circle or T shape.) (CTR, ETR, GST)

Busy word: A firmware flag, consulted by the Scheduler, that protects system software that is not reentrant from being called while processing another call. (GSTR, PI, P16)

button: (1) A pushbutton-like image in dialog boxes where the user clicks to designate, confirm, or cancel an action. See also check box, radio button. (2) A button on a mouse or other pointing device. See also mouse button. (GST, GSTR, PI)

byte: A unit of information consisting of 8 bits. A byte can have any value between 0 and 255, which may represent an instruction, a letter, a number, a punctuation mark, or another character. See also bit, kilobyte, megabyte. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

C: A high-level programming language. One of the languages available for the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (GSTR, PI)

c flag: See carry flag. (GSTR, PI)

C string: An ASCII character string terminated by a null character (ASCII value = 0). (GSTR, PI)

C string: An ASCII character string terminated by a null character (ASCII value = 0). Compare Pascal string. (GSTR)

C-type string: Same as C string. (GSTR)

C3COUT1: Also called BASICOUT, this is the routine that COUT jumps to when the 80-column firmware is active. (GSF)

cable: An insulated bundle of wires with connectors on the ends; the number of wires varies with the type of connection. Examples are serial cables, disk drive cables, and AppleTalk cables. (CTR, ETR)

call: (v) To request the execution of a subroutine, function, or procedure. (n) A request from the keyboard or from a procedure to execute a named procedure. See procedure. (CTR, ETR, GST, P16)

call block: The sequence of assembly-language instructions used to call ProDOS 16 or System Loader functions. (P16)

Cancel: One of two predefined item ID numbers for dialog box buttons (Cancel = 2). Compare OK. (GSTR, PI)

cancel: To stop an operation, such as the setting of page-setup values in a dialog box, without saving any results produced up to that point. (GSTR, PI)

card: See peripheral card. (PI)

caret: A symbol that indicates where something should or will be inserted in text. On the screen it designates the insertion point, and is usually a vertical bar (|). (GSTR, PI)

carriage return: An ASCII character (decimal 13) that ordinarily causes a printer or display device to place the next character on the left margin; in APW C, equal to newline (). (CTR, ETR, GST, GSH)

carrier: The background signal on a communication channel that is modified to carry information. Under RS-232-C rules, the carrier signal is equivalent to a continuous MARK (1) signal; a transition to 0 then represents a start bit. (CTR, ETR)

carry flag: A status bit in the 6502 or 65C02 microprocessor, used as a ninth bit with the eight accumulator bits in addition, subtraction, rotation, and shift operations. (CTR, ETR)

carry flag: A status bit in the microprocessor indicating whether an accumulator calculation has resulted in a carry out of the register. Also called c flag. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

cathode-ray tube (CRT): An electronic device, such as a television picture tube, that produces images on a phosphor-coated screen. The phosphor coating emits light when struck by a focused beam of electrons. A common display device used with personal computers. (CTR, GSH, GST)

CDA: See classic desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

CDA menu: The menu on which classic desk accessories are listed; the user selects the menu by pressing Control-Apple-Escape. See also classic desk accessory. (GSTR)

central processing unit (CPU): The “brain” of the computer; the microprocessor that performs the actual computations in machine language. See microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

character: (1) Any symbol that has a widely understood meaning and thus can convey information. Some characters—such as letters, numbers, and punctuation—can be displayed on the monitor screen and printed on a printer. Most characters are represented in the computer as 1-byte values. (2) In QuickDraw II, a single ASCII character. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

character bounds rectangle: The rectangle that determines the extent of the background pixels of a character. (GSTR)

character bounds width: The width of a character’s character bounds rectangle. (GSTR)

character code: A number used to represent a character for processing by a computer system. (CTR, ETR)

character device: A device that transfers data to or from a computer as a stream of individual characters. Keyboards and printers are character devices. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

character generator: The IC responsible for providing all text and special characters to the computer that may be displayed on the video monitor. (GSH)

character image: An arrangement of bits that defines a character in a font. (PI) The part of a font strike that represents a character in a font. (GSTR)

character image width: The number of columns in a character image. (GSTR)

character origin: The point on the base line used as a reference location for drawing a character. (GSTR, PI)

character position: An index into LineEdit text, with position 0 corresponding to the first character. (GSTR)

character rectangle: A rectangle that encloses a character image. Its width is equal to the image width of the character; its height is equal to the character height. (GSTR)

character set: The entire set of characters that can be either shown on a monitor or used to code computer instructions. In a printer, the entire set of characters that the printer is capable of printing. (CTR, ETR)

character width: The number of pixels the pen position is to be advanced after the character is drawn. (GSTR, PI)

check box: A small box associated with an option in a dialog box. When the user clicks the check box, that may change the option or affect related options. See also radio button. (GSTR, PI)

chip: See integrated circuit. (CTR, GST)

Choose Printer dialog box: A Print Manager dialog box that lets the user select a printer or port for printing. (GSTR, PI)

chunkiness: The number of bits required to describe the state of a pixel in a pixel image. (GSTR, PI)

chunky pixels: A method of representing images in computer memory. In chunky pixel organization, a number of consecutive bits in memory combine to specify the state of a single pixel in the image. Consecutive groups of bits (the size of the group is equal to the image's chunkiness) define adjacent pixels in the image. Compare bit plane. (GSTR, PI)

circuit board: A board containing embedded circuits and an attached collection of integrated circuits (chips). (GST)

clamp: A memory location that contains the maximum and minimum excursion positions of the mouse cursor when the desktop is in use. (GSF)

clamp values: The X- and Y-limits, in terms of pixels, on cursor position controlled by mouse movement. (GSTR, PI)

classic desk accessory (CDA): Desk accessories designed to execute in a non-desktop, non-event-based environment. Compare new desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

Clear To Send: An RS-232-C signal from a DCE to a DTE that is normally kept false until the DCE makes it true, indicating that all circuits are ready to transfer data out. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR)

click: To position the pointer on something, and then to press and quickly release the button on the mouse or other pointing device. (GSTR, PI)

clip: To restrict drawing to within a particular boundary; any drawing attempted outside that boundary does not occur. (GSTR, PI)

Clipboard: The holding place for the material the user last cut or copied; a buffer area in memory. Information on the Clipboard can be inserted (pasted) into documents. In memory, the contents of the clipboard are called the desk scrap. (GSTR, PI)

clipping region: The region to which an application limits drawing in a GrafPort. (GSTR, PI)

clock: (1) The timing circuit that controls execution of a microprocessor. Also called system clock. (2) An integrated circuit, often with battery-backup memory, that gives the current date and time. Also called clock-calendar. (GSTR, PI)

clock chip: A special chip in which parameter RAM and the current setting for the date and time are stored. This chip is powered by a battery when the system is off, thus preserving the information. (GST)

clock speed: The frequency of the system clock signal in megahertz. (PI)

close: To terminate access to an open file. When a file is closed, its updated version is written to disk and all resources it needed when open (such as its I/O buffer) are released. The file must be opened before it can be accessed again. (P16) To turn a window back into the icon that represents it. (GST)

close box: The small white box on the left side of the title bar of an active window. Clicking it closes the window. (GSTR, PI)

CMOS: Acronym for complementary metal oxide semiconductor, one of several methods of making integrated circuits out of silicon. CMOS devices are characterized by their low power consumption. CMOS techniques are derived from MOS techniques. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

code: (1) A number or symbol used to represent some piece of information. (2) The statements or instructions that make up a program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

cold start: The process of starting up the Apple II when the power is first turned on (or as if the power had just been turned on) by loading the operating system into main memory, and then loading and running a program. Compare boot, warm start. (CTR, ETR, GST)

color fringing: The rainbow-like effect that appears around text characters when they are displayed in color on most color video monitors. This fringing is unavoidable because the color-detection circuitry of most composite video color monitors cannot respond fast enough to the changing of the color information during the text portion of the display. Displaying text in monochrome makes it more readable. (GSH)

color table: One table of 16 lookup tables in Apple IIGS memory. The table lists the available color values for a scan line. (GSTR, PI)

column: A vertical arrangement of graphics points or character positions on the display. (CTR, ETR, GST)

command: An instruction that causes the computer to perform some action. A command can be typed from a keyboard, selected from a menu with a hand-operated device (such as a mouse), or embedded in a program. (CTR, ETR, GST) (1) In the Standard C Library, a parameter that tells a function which of several actions to perform. (2) In the APW Shell, a word that tells APW which utility to execute. (GSH)

command character: An ASCII character, usually Control-A or Control-I, that causes the serial port firmware to interpret subsequent characters as commands. (CTR)

command line: (1) In APW, the line of text with which the user invokes a procedure or function or executes a program. The command line often includes both the name of the function to execute and a list of parameters to be passed to the function. (2) The line on the screen on which a command is entered. (PI)

command register: An ACIA location (at \$C09A for port 1 and \$C0AA for port 2) that stores parity type and RS-232-C signal characteristics. (CTR)

command-line interface: The type of interface between user and program in which information is passed in a command line. (PI)

compact: To rearrange allocated memory blocks in order to increase the amount of contiguous unallocated (free) memory. The Memory Manager compacts memory when needed. (P16)

compaction: The rearrangement of allocated blocks in memory to open up larger contiguous areas of free space. (GSTR, PI)

compiler: A language translator that converts a program written in a high-level programming language (source code) into an equivalent program in some lower-level language such as machine language (object code) for later execution. (CTR, ETR, GST) A program that produces object files (containing machine-language code) from source files written in a high-level language such as C. Compare assembler. (GSTR, PI, P16)

component: A part; in particular, a part of a computer system. (GST)

composite video: A standard video signal that includes all color and timing information that is needed by a composite video monitor. Several video standards are in use around the world: NTSC video is used in northern America and Japan; PAL video is used in much of Europe; SECAM is used in the USSR and many other countries. The Apple IIGS is capable of generating both NTSC and PAL video. Compare RGB. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

computer: An electronic device that performs predefined (programmed) computations at high speed and with great accuracy. A machine that is used to store, transfer, and transform information. (CTR, ETR, GST)

computer language: See programming language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

computer system: A computer and its associated hardware, firmware, and software. (CTR)

conditional assembly: A feature of an assembler that allows the programmer to define macros or other pieces of code such that the assembler assembles them differently under different conditions. (GST)

conditional branch: A branch whose execution depends on the truth of a condition or the value of an expression. Compare unconditional branch. (CTR, ETR, GST)

configuration: (1) The total combination and arrangement of hardware components—CPU, video display device, keyboard, and peripheral devices—that make up a computer system. (2) The software settings that allow various hardware components of a computer system to communicate with each other. (CTR, ETR, GST)

connector: A plug, socket, jack, or port. (CTR, ETR)

constant: In a program, a symbol that represents a fixed, unchanging value. Compare variable. (CTR, ETR)

content region: The area in a window in which an application presents information to the user. (GSTR, PI)

control: An object in a window with which the user, using the mouse, can cause instant action with visible results or change settings to modify a future action. (GSTR, PI)

control character: A nonprinting character that controls or modifies the way information is printed or displayed. In the Apple II family, control characters have ASCII values between 0 and 31, and are typed from a keyboard by holding down the Control key while pressing some other key. In the Macintosh family, the Command key performs a similar function. (CTR, ETR)

control code: One or more nonprinting characters—included in a text file—whose function is to change the way a printer prints the text. For example, a program may use certain control codes to turn boldface printing on and off. See control character. (CTR, ETR)

control definition procedure: A procedure used to define the appearance and behavior of a custom control. (GSTR)

control key: A general term for a key that controls the operation of other keys; for example, Apple, Caps Lock, Control, Option, and Shift. When you hold down or engage a control key while pressing another key, the combination makes that other key behave differently. Also called a modifier key. (CTR, ETR)

Control key: A specific key on Apple II-family keyboards that produces control characters when used in combination with other keys. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Control Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that manages controls, which are objects on the screen that the user can manipulate with the mouse to cause instant action or change settings. (GSTR, PI)

Control Panel: A desk accessory that lets the user change certain system parameters, such as speaker volume, display colors, and configuration of slots and ports. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

control record: A data structure that defines the appearance and behavior of a control. (GSTR)

control register: A special register that programs can read and write, similar to a soft switch. The control registers are specific locations in the I/O space (\$Cxxx) in bank \$E0; they are accessible from bank \$00 if I/O shadowing is on. (GSF) An ACIA location (at \$C09B for port 1 and \$C0AB for port 2) that stores data format and baud rate selections. (CTR)

Control-Reset: A combination keystroke on Apple II-family computers that usually causes an Applesoft BASIC program or command to stop immediately. If a program disables the Control-Reset feature, you need to turn the computer off to get the program to stop. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

controller card: A peripheral card that connects a device such as a printer or disk drive to a computer's main logic board and controls the operation of the device. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

controlling program: A program that loads and runs other programs, without itself leaving memory. A controlling program is responsible for shutting down its subprograms and freeing their memory space when they are finished. A shell, for example, is a controlling program. (GSH, PI, P16)

coordinate plane: A two-dimensional grid defined by QuickDraw II. All drawing commands are located in terms of coordinates on the grid. (GSTR, PI)

coordinates: X and Y locations on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane. Most QuickDraw II routines accept and return coordinates in the order (Y,X). (GSTR, PI)

copy: To duplicate something by selecting it and choosing Copy from the Edit menu. A copy of the selected portion is placed on the Clipboard, without affecting the original selection. (GSTR, PI)

copy protect: To make a disk uncopyable. Software publishers frequently try to copy protect their disks to prevent them from being illegally duplicated by software pirates. Compare write protect. (CTR, ETR)

COUT: The firmware entry point for the Apple II character-output subroutine. COUT is actually an I/O link located in RAM rather than in ROM, and so can be modified to contain the address of the presently active character-output subroutine. (GSF)

COUT1: An entry point within the Apple II character-output subroutine. (GSF)

CPU: See central processing unit and microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

crash: To cease to operate unexpectedly, possibly destroying information in the process. (CTR, ETR)

creation date: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the date on which the file was first created. (PI, P16)

creation time: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the time at which the file was first created. (PI, P16)

CRT: See cathode-ray tube. (CTR)

CTS: See Clear To Send. (CTR)

current application: The application program currently loaded and running. Every application program is identified by a User ID number; the current application is defined as that application whose User ID is the present value of the USERID global variable. (P16)

current font: The font currently being used by QuickDraw II to draw text. (GSTR)

current input device: The source, such as the keyboard or a modem, from which a program is currently receiving its input. (CTR, ETR)

current output device: The destination, such as the display screen or a printer, currently receiving a program's output. (CTR, ETR)

cursor: A graphic icon displayed by the operating system or application program that indicates where the next input from the user is expected. Different styles of cursors are used with the Apple IIGS: an arrow, an underbar, a vertical bar, and an inverse video block. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

cursor record: The data structure that defines the height and width of the cursor, the image of the cursor, the mask controlling the appearance of the cursor, and the hot spot defining where the image of the cursor will be placed by the mouse. (GSTR)

cut: To remove something by selecting it and choosing Cut from the Edit menu. The cut portion is placed on the Clipboard. (GSTR, PI)

D register: See direct register. (PI)

DAC: See digital-to-analog converter. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data: Information transferred to or from or stored in a computer or other mechanical communications or storage device. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH)

data area: A document as viewed in a window. The data area is the entire document, only a portion of which (the visible region) may be seen in the window at any one time. (GSTR, PI)

data bank register: A register in the 65816 processor that contains the high-order byte of the 24-bit address that references data in memory. (GSTR, PI)

data bits: The bits in a communication transfer that contain information. Compare start bit, stop bit. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data block: A 512-byte portion of a ProDOS 16 standard file that consists of whatever kind of information the file may contain. (GSH, P16)

data bus: A set of the electrical conductors that carry data from one internal part of the computer to another. (PI)

Data Carrier Detect (DCD): A signal from a DCE (such as a modem) to a DTE (such as an Apple IIGS) indicating that a communication connection has been established. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Data Communication Equipment (DCE): As defined by the RS-232-C standard, any device that transmits or receives information. Usually this device is a modem. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data format: The form in which data is stored, manipulated, or transferred. For example, when data is transmitted and received serially, it typically has a data format of one start bit, five to eight data bits, an optional parity bit, and one or two stop bits. (CTR, GST)

data set: A device that modulates, demodulates, and controls signals transferred between business machines and communication facilities. A form of modem. (CTR, ETR)

Data Set Ready (DSR): A signal from a DCE to a DTE indicating that the DCE has established a connection. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data structure: A specifically formatted item of data or a form into which data may be placed. (GSTR, PI)

Data Terminal Equipment (DTE): As defined by the RS-232-C standard, any device that generates or absorbs information, thus acting as an endpoint of a communication connection. A computer might serve as a DTE. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Data Terminal Ready (DTR): A signal from a DTE to a DCE indicating a readiness to transmit or receive data. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

DB register: See data bank register. (GSTR, PI)

DCD: Abbreviation for Data Carrier Detect, a modem signal indicating that a communication connection has been established. See Data Carrier Detect. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

DCE: See Data Communication Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

dead character: A character with a character width of 0. (GSTR)

debug: A colloquial term that means to locate and correct an error or the cause of a problem or malfunction in a computer program. Compare troubleshoot. See also bug. (CTR, ETR, GST)

debugger: A utility used for software development that allows you to analyze a program for errors that cause it to malfunction. For example, it may allow you to step through execution of the program one instruction at a time. (PI)

decimal: A method of numeric representation using a base-10 system. Valid digits are 0 through 9. Compare hexadecimal, binary. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

default: A preset response to a question or prompt. The default is automatically used by the computer if the user doesn't supply a different response. Default values prevent a program from stalling or crashing if no value is supplied by the user. (CTR, ETR, GST)

default button: The button in a dialog box whose action will be executed if the user presses the Return key. (GSTR)

default prefix: The pathname prefix attached by ProDOS 16 to a partial pathname when no prefix number is supplied by the application. The default prefix is equivalent to prefix number 0/. (GSTR, PI, P16)

deferred execution: The execution of a BASIC program instruction that is part of a complete program. The program instruction is executed only when the complete program is run. You defer execution of the instruction by preceding it with a program line number. The complete program executes consecutive instructions in numerical order. Compare immediate execution. (CTR, ETR)

definition procedure: A routine that defines the characteristics of some desktop feature such as a window or control. For example, TaskMaster needs a pointer to a window-content definition procedure (wContDefProc) in order to draw the contents of windows that it manipulates. (PI)

DefProc: See definition procedure. (PI)

delete: To remove something, such as a character or word from a file, or a file from a disk. (GST)

Delete key: A key on the upper-right corner of the Apple IIe, Apple IIc, and Apple IIGS keyboards that erases the character immediately preceding (to the left of) the cursor. Similar to the Macintosh Backspace key. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

delimiter: A character that is used for punctuation to mark the beginning or end of a sequence of characters, and which therefore is not considered part of the sequence itself. For example, Applesoft BASIC uses the double quotation mark (") as a delimiter for string constants: the string "DOG" consists of the three characters D, O, and G, and does not include the quotation marks. (CTR, ETR)

delta: The difference from something the program already knows. For example, mouse moves are represented as deltas compared to previous mouse locations. The name comes from the way mathematicians use the Greek letter delta (Δ) to represent a difference. (GSF)

delta guide: A description of something new in terms of its differences from something the reader already knows about. The name comes from the way mathematicians use the Greek letter delta (Δ) to represent a difference. (GST)

demodulate: To recover the information being transmitted by a modulated signal. For example, a conventional radio receiver demodulates an incoming broadcast signal to convert it into the sound emitted by the radio's speaker. Compare modulate. (CTR, ETR)

dereference: To substitute a pointer for a memory handle, or a value for a pointer. When you dereference a memory block's handle, you access the block directly (through its master pointer) rather than indirectly (through its handle). (GSTR, PI, P16)

descender: Any part of a character that lies below the base line (such as the tail on a lowercase "p"). (GSTR, PI)

descent: In a font, the distance between the base line and the descent line. (GSTR, PI)

descent line: A horizontal line that coincides with the bottoms of character descenders (such as the tail on a lowercase "p") that extends farthest below the base line. See also ascent line, base height, font height. (GSTR, PI)

desk accessories: "Mini-applications" that are available from the computer's menu regardless of which application you're using. The Control Panel is an example of a desk accessory. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

desk accessory event: An event that occurs when the user enters the special keystroke (Control-Apple-Escape) to invoke a classic desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

Desk Accessory menu: The menu whose title is a colored apple symbol. (GSTR)

Desk Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that executes desk accessories and enables applications to support them. (GSTR, PI)

desk scrap: A piece of data, maintained by the Scrap Manager, taken from one application and available for insertion into another. (GSTR, PI)

desktop: The visual interface between the computer and the user. In computers that support the desktop concept, the desktop consists of a menu bar at the top of the screen, and a gray area in which applications are opened as windows. The desktop interface was first developed for the Macintosh computer. (GSF, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

desktop environment: A set of program features that make user interactions with an application resemble operations on a desktop. Commands appear as options in pull-down menus, and material being worked on appears in areas of the screen called windows. The user selects commands or other material by using the mouse to move a pointer around on the screen. (GST)

desktop interface: See desktop. (PI)

desktop user interface: See desktop, desktop environment. (GST, GSTR)

desktop user interface: The visual appearance of a program and the way in which it interacts with the user. In applications that use the desktop user interface, commands appear as options in pull-down menus, and material being worked on appears in rectangular areas of the screen called windows. The user selects commands or other material by using the mouse to move a pointer around on the screen. (GSH)

destination: See destination location. (PI)

destination location: The location (memory buffer or portion of the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) to which data such as text or graphics are copied. See also destination rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

destination rectangle: (1) The rectangle (on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) in which text or graphics are drawn when transferred from somewhere else. Compare source rectangle. (2) In LineEdit, the rectangle that determines where the text will be drawn. (GSTR, PI)

development environment: A program or set of programs that allows you to write applications. It typically consists of a text editor, an assembler or compiler, a linker, and support programs such as a debugger. (PI)

device: A piece of equipment (hardware) used in conjunction with a computer and under the computer's control. Also called a peripheral device because such equipment is often physically separate from, but attached to, the computer. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

device driver: A program that handles the transfer of data to and from a peripheral device, such as a printer or disk drive. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

device driver event: An event generated by a device driver. (GSTR)

device handler: See device driver. (CTR, ETR)

device-driver event: An event generated by a device driver. (PI)

dial: An indicator on the screen that displays a quantitative setting or value. Usually found in analog form, such as a fuel gauge or a thermometer. A scroll bar is a standard type of dial. (GSTR, PI)

dialog: See dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

dialog box: A box on the screen that contains a message requesting more information from the user. See also alert. (GSTR, PI)

Dialog Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that manipulates dialog boxes and alerts, which appear on the screen when an application needs more information to carry out a command or when the user needs to be notified of an important situation. (GSTR, PI)

dialog pointer: A pointer to a dialog's GrafPort; equivalent to the window pointer for the dialog box. (GSTR)

dialog record: Information describing a dialog window that is maintained by the Dialog Manager. (GSTR, PI)

dialog template: A record that contains information about a dialog to be created. (GSTR)

dialog window: The window in which a dialog box appears. (GSTR, PI)

digit: (1) One of the characters 0 through 9, used to express numbers in decimal form. (2) One of the characters used to express numbers in some other form, such as 0 and 1 in binary or 0 through 9 and A through F in hexadecimal. (CTR, ETR, GST)

digital: (adj) Represented in a discrete (noncontinuous) form, such as numerical digits or integers. For example, contemporary digital clocks show the time as a digital display (such as 2:57) instead of using the positions of a pair of hands on a clock face. Compare analog. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

digital data: Data that can be represented by digits—that is, data that are discrete rather than continuously variable. Compare analog data. (CTR, ETR)

Digital Oscillator Chip (DOC): An integrated circuit in the Apple IIGS that contains 32 digital oscillators, each of which can generate a sound from stored digital waveform data in a wavetable. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

digital RGB video monitor: A type of RGB video display in which the intensities of the red, green, and blue signals are fixed at discrete values. (PI)

digital signal: A signal that is sent and received in discrete intervals. A signal that does not vary continuously over time. Compare analog signal. (CTR, ETR, GST)

digital-to-analog converter: A device that converts quantities from digital to analog form. (CTR, ETR, GST)

dim: On the Apple IIGS desktop, to display a control or menu item in gray rather than black, to notify the user that the item is inactive. (GSTR, PI)

DIN: Abbreviation for Deutsche Industrie Normal, a European standards organization. (GSF, GSH, GST)

DIN connector: A type of connector with multiple pins inside a round outer shield. (GSF, GSH, GST)

DIP: See dual in-line package. (CTR, ETR, GST)

DIP switches: A bank of tiny switches, each of which can be moved manually one way or the other to represent one of two values (usually on and off). See dual in-line package. (CTR, ETR)

direct memory access (DMA): A means of fast data transfer into or out of computer memory to or from a computer peripheral. A peripheral device, usually a card in a peripheral I/O expansion slot, puts the 65C816 microprocessor in an idle state, and takes control of the computer for a short period of time. Data in memory may be directly accessed without the time-consuming usual handshaking and protocol. (GSH)

direct page: A page (256 bytes) of bank \$00 of Apple IIGS memory, any part of which can be addressed with a short (1-byte) address because its high-address byte is always \$00 and its middle-address byte is the value of the 65C816 direct register. Coresident programs or routines can have their own direct pages at different locations. The direct page corresponds to the 6502 processor's zero page. The term direct page is often used informally to refer to any part of the lower portion of the direct-page/stack space. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

direct register: A hardware register in the 65816 processor that specifies the start of the direct page. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

direct-page/stack segment: A program segment that is used to initialize the size and contents of an application's stack and direct page. (GSTR, PI)

direct-page/stack space: A portion of bank \$00 of Apple IIGS memory reserved for a program's direct page and stack. Initially, the 65C816 processor's direct register contains the base address of the space, and its stack register contains the highest address. In use, the stack grows downward from the top of the direct-page/stack space, and the lower part of the space contains direct-page data. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

directory: A file that contains a list of the names and locations of other files stored on a disk. Directories are either volume directories or subdirectories. A directory is sometimes called a catalog. (GSH, GST)

directory file: A directory. One of the two principal categories of ProDOS 16 files. Directory files contain specially formatted entries that give the names and disk locations of other files. (GSH, P16)

disable: To make unresponsive to user actions. A dialog box control that is disabled does nothing when selected or manipulated by the user. In appearance, however, it is identical to an enabled control. Compare inactive. (GSTR, PI)

disabled menu: A menu that can be pulled down, but in which items are dimmed and not selectable. (GSTR, PI)

disassembler: A language translator that converts a machine-language program into an equivalent program in assembly language, which is easier for programmers to understand. The opposite of an assembler. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, PI)

disk: An information-storage medium consisting of a flat, circular, magnetic surface on which information can be recorded in the form of small magnetized spots, in a manner similar to the way sounds are recorded on tape. See floppy disk, hard disk. (CTR, ETR)

disk controller card: A peripheral card that provides the connection between one or two disk drives and the computer. (This connection, or interface, is built into the Apple IIc, the Apple IIGS, and all Macintosh-family computers.) (CTR, ETR, GST)

disk device: See block device. (P16)

disk drive: A computer peripheral device that stores digital data on a revolving magnetic surface. Disk drives may be floppy disk drives (which use a removable, flexible mylar disk as the medium) or hard disk drives (which use a fixed aluminum platter as the medium). Disk drives retain the information after the computer is turned off, but are capable of altering the data as requested by the computer program. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

disk envelope: A removable, protective paper sleeve used when handling or storing a 5.25-inch disk. It must be removed before you insert the disk in a disk drive. Compare disk jacket. (CTR, ETR)

Disk II, Disk II drive: A type of disk drive made and sold by Apple Computer, Inc., for use with the Apple II, II Plus, and IIe computers. It uses 5.25-inch disks. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

disk jacket: A permanent, protective covering for a disk. 5.25-inch disks have flexible, paper or plastic jackets; 3.5-inch disks have hard plastic jackets. The disk is never removed from the jacket. Compare disk envelope. (CTR, ETR)

disk operating system: An operating system whose principal function is to manage files and communication with one or more disk drives. DOS and ProDOS are two families of Apple II disk operating systems. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI, P16)

Disk Operating System (DOS): An optional software system for the Apple II family of computers that enables the computer to control and communicate with one or more disk drives. The acronym DOS rhymes with boss. (CTR, ETR)

disk port: The connector on the rear panel of the Apple IIGS for attaching disk drives. (PI)

disk-based: See disk-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

disk-resident: A program that does not remain in memory. The computer retrieves all or part of the program from the disk, as needed. Sometimes called disk-based. Compare memory-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

display: (1) A general term to describe what you see on the screen of your display device when you're using a computer. (2) Short for a display device. (CTR, ETR, GST)

display color: The color currently being used to draw high-resolution or low-resolution graphics on the display screen. (CTR, ETR)

display device: A device that displays information, such as a television set or video monitor. (CTR, ETR, GST)

display mode: A specification for the way in which a video display functions, including such parameters as whether displaying text or graphics, available colors, and number of pixels. The Apple IIGS has two text display modes (40 column and 80 column), two standard Apple II graphics display modes (Hi-Res and Double Hi-Res), and two new Super Hi-Res graphics display modes (320 mode and 640 mode). (GSTR, PI)

display rectangle: A rectangle that determines where an item is displayed within a dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

display screen: The screen of the monitor; the area where you view text and pictures when using the computer. (CTR, ETR)

dispose: To permanently deallocate (a memory block). The Memory Manager disposes of a memory block by removing its master pointer. Any handle to that pointer will then be invalid. Compare purge. (GSTR, PI, P16)

dithering: A technique for alternating the values of adjacent pixels to create the effect of intermediate values. Dithering can give the effect of shades of gray on a black-and-white display, or more colors on a color display. (GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

dividing line: A line that divides groups of items in a menu; such a line uses the space of an entire item and requires an item record. Compare underline. (GSTR)

DMA: See direct memory access. (GSH)

DOC: See Digital Oscillator Chip. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

document: A file created by an application. (GSTR, PI)

document window: A window that displays a document. One of the two predefined window formats. Compare alert window. (GSTR, PI)

dormant: Said of a program that is not being executed, but whose essential parts are all in the computer's memory. A dormant program may be quickly restarted because it need not be reloaded from disk. (PI, P16)

DOS: Acronym for disk operating system. An Apple II disk operating system. See Disk Operating System. (GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

DOS 3.2: An early Apple II operating system. DOS stands for Disk Operating System; 3.2 is the version number. Disks formatted using DOS 3.2 have 13 sectors per track. (CTR, ETR)

DOS 3.3: An operating system for the Apple II family of computers. DOS stands for Disk Operating System; 3.3 is the version number. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Double Hi-Res: A high-resolution graphics display mode on Apple II computers with at least 128K of RAM, consisting of an array of points 560 wide by 192 high with 16 colors. (GSF, GSH)

double-click: To position the pointer where you want an action to take place, and then press and release the mouse button twice in quick succession without moving the mouse. (GSTR, PI)

draft printing: The print method that the LaserWriter uses. QuickDraw II calls are converted directly into command codes the printer understands, which are then immediately used to drive the printer. Compare spool printing. (GSTR, PI)

drag: To position the pointer on something, press and hold the mouse button, move the mouse, and release the mouse button. When you release the mouse button, you either confirm a menu selection or move an object to a new location. (GSTR, PI)

drag region: A region in a window (usually on the title bar) in which the mouse pointer must be placed before the user can drag the window. (GSTR, PI)

draw: In QuickDraw II, to color pixels in a pixel image. (GSTR, PI)

drawing environment: The complete description of how and where drawing may take place. Every open window on the Apple IIGS screen is associated with a GrafPort record, which specifies the window's drawing environment. Same as port, graphic port. (GSTR, PI)

drawing mask: An 8-bit by 8-bit pattern that controls which pixels in the QuickDraw II pen will be modified when the pen draws. (GSTR, PI)

drawing mode: One of 16 possible interactions between pixels in QuickDraw II's pen pattern and pixels already on the screen that fall under the pen's path. In modeCopy mode, for example, pixels already on the screen are ignored. In modeXOR mode, on the other hand, bits in pixels on the screen are XOR'd with bits in pixels in the pen; the resulting pixels are drawn on the screen. See also pen mode, text mode. (GSTR, PI)

drawing pen: See pen. (GSTR, PI)

drive: See disk drive. (CTR, ETR)

driver: See device driver. (GSTR, PI)

DSR: Abbreviation for Data Set Ready, a signal indicating that a modem has established a connection. See Data Set Ready. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSTR)

DTE: See Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

DTR: Abbreviation for Data Terminal Ready, a signal indicating that a terminal is ready to transmit or receive data. See Data Terminal Ready. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

dual in-line package (DIP): An integrated circuit packaged in a narrow rectangular box with a row of metal pins along each side. DIP switches on the box allow you to change settings. For example, ImageWriter printer DIP switches control functions such as line feed, form length, and baud setting. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Dvorak keyboard: An alternate keyboard layout, also known as the American Simplified Keyboard, which increases typing speed because the keys most often used are in the positions easiest to reach. Compare QWERTY keyboard. (CTR, ETR, GST)

dynamic ROM: A form of read-only memory (ROM) in which data is retained in memory while the computer power is off, but is lost as soon as the system is turned on. (GSH)

dynamic segment: A load segment capable of being loaded during program execution. Compare static segment. (GSTR, PI, P16)

e flag: A flag bit in the 65C816 that determines whether the processor is in native mode or emulation mode. (P16)

e flag: One of three flag bits in the 65816 processor that programs use to control the processor's operating modes. The setting of the e flag determines whether the processor is in native mode (6502), or emulation mode (65816). See also m flag and x flag. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

EBCDIC: Acronym for Extended Binary-Coded Decimal Interchange Code; pronounced "EB-si-dik." A code used by IBM that represents each letter, number, special character, and control character as an 8-bit binary number. EBCDIC has a character set of 256 8-bit characters. Compare ASCII. (CTR, ETR)

edit: To change or modify. For example, to insert, remove, replace, or move text in a document. (GST)

edit record: A complete text editing environment in the Line Edit Tool Set, which includes the text to be edited, the GrafPort and rectangle in which to display the text, the arrangement of the text within the rectangle, and other editing and display information. (GSTR, PI)

editor: A program that helps you create and edit information of a particular form; for example, a text editor or a graphics editor. (GST)

effective address: In machine-language programming, the address of the memory location on which a particular instruction operates, which may be arrived at by indexed addressing or some other addressing method. (CTR, ETR, GST)

embedded: Contained within. For example, the string 'HUMPTY DUMPTY' is said to contain an embedded space. (CTR, ETR)

empty handle: A handle pointing to a NIL master pointer. (GSTR)

emulate: To operate in a way identical to a different system. For example, the 65816 microprocessor in the Apple IIGS can carry out all the instructions in a program originally written for an Apple II that uses a 6502 microprocessor, thus emulating the 6502. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

emulate: To operate in a way identical to a different system. For example, the Apple II 2780/3780 Protocol Emulator and the Apple II 3270 BSC Protocol Emulator, together with the Apple Communications Protocol Card (ACPC), allow the Apple II, Apple II Plus, or Apple IIe to emulate the operations of IBM 3278 and 3277 terminals and 3274 and 3271 control units. (CTR, ETR)

emulation mode: A manner of operating in which one system imitates another. In the Apple IIGS computer, the mode the 65C816 is in when the Apple IIGS is running programs written for Apple II's that use the 6502. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, P16)

enable: To make responsive to user manipulation. A dialog or menu that is enabled can be selected by the user. Enabling does not affect how an item is displayed. Compare activate. (GSTR, PI)

end-of-command mark: A punctuation mark used to separate commands sent to a peripheral device such as a printer or plotter. Also called a command terminator. (CTR, ETR)

end-of-file: See EOF. (GSTR, PI)

end-of-line character: A character that indicates that the preceding text constitutes a full line. (CTR, ETR)

environment: The complete set of machine registers associated with a running program. Saving the environment allows a program to be restored to its original operating mode with all of its registers intact as though nothing had happened. Saving and restoring an environment is most often associated with calling system functions or processing interrupts. (GSF)

EOF (end-of-file): The logical size of a ProDOS 16 file; it is the number of bytes that may be read from or written to the file. (GSTR, PI, P16)

erase: In QuickDraw II, to color an area with the background pattern. (PI)

erasing: In QuickDraw II, to color an area with the background pattern. (GSTR)

error: The state of a computer after it has detected a fault in one or more commands sent to it. Also called error condition. (GSF, GSTR, PI, P16)

error code: A number or other symbol representing a type of error. (CTR, ETR, P16)

error condition: See error. (GSTR)

error message: A message displayed or printed to tell you of an error or problem in the execution of a program or in your communication with the system. An error message is often accompanied by a beep. (CTR, ETR) A message issued by the system or application program when it has encountered an abnormal situation or an error in data. (GSTR, PI)

Esc key: See Escape key. (CTR, ETR)

ESCAPE character: An ASCII character that, with many programs and devices, allows you to perform special functions when used in combination keypresses. (CTR, ETR, GST)

escape code: A key sequence formed by pressing the Esc (Escape) key, followed by pressing another key. Escape codes are used to control the video firmware. (CTR, ETR, GSF)

Escape key: A key on Apple II-family computers that generates the Escape character. The Escape key is labeled Esc. In many applications, pressing Escape allows you to return to a previous menu or to stop a procedure. (CTR, ETR, GST)

escape mode: A state of the Apple IIe and IIc entered by pressing the Esc key and certain other keys. The other keys take on special meanings for positioning the cursor and controlling the display of text on the screen. (CTR, ETR, GSF)

escape sequence: A sequence of keystrokes, beginning with the Esc key. In escape mode, escape sequences are used for positioning the cursor and controlling the display of text on the screen. Escape sequences are also used as codes to control printers. (CTR, ETR)

even parity: In data transmission, the use of an extra bit set to 0 or 1 as necessary to make the total number of 1 bits an even number; used as a means of error checking. Compare MARK parity, odd parity. (CTR, ETR, GST)

even/odd parity check: In data transmission, a check that tests whether the number of 1 bits in a group of binary digits is even (even parity check) or odd (odd parity check). (CTR, ETR)

event: A notification to an application of some occurrence (such as an interrupt generated by a keypress) that the application may want to respond to. (GSTR, PI, P16)

event code: A numeric value assigned to each event by the Event Manager. Compare task code. (GSTR, PI)

Event Manager: An Apple IIGS tool set that detects events as they happen, and passes the events on to the application or to the appropriate event handler, such as TaskMaster. (GSTR, PI)

event mask: A parameter passed to an Event Manager routine to specify which types of events the routine should apply to. (GSTR, PI)

event message: A field in the event record that contains additional information about the event. (GSTR)

event queue: A list of pending events maintained by the Event Manager. (GSTR, PI)

event record: The internal representation of an event, through which your program learns all pertinent information about that event. (GSTR, PI)

event type: The type of event reported to the Event Manager. (GSTR)

event-driven: A kind of program that responds to user inputs in real time by repeatedly testing for events posted by interrupt routines. An event-driven program does nothing until it detects an event such as a click of the mouse button. (GST, PI, P16)

event-driven program: A program that responds to user inputs in real time by repeatedly testing for events. An event-driven program does nothing until it detects an event such as a click of the mouse button. (GSH, GSTR)

exclusive OR: A logical operator that produces a true result if one of its operands is true and the other false, and a false result if its operands are both true or both false. Compare OR, AND, and NOT. (CTR, ETR)

execute: To perform the actions specified by a program command or sequence of commands. (CTR, ETR)

execution environment: See operating environment. (GSTR)

execution mode: One of two general states of execution of the 65C816 processor: native mode and 6502 emulation mode. (GSTR, PI)

expansion slot: A connector into which you can install a peripheral card. Sometimes called a peripheral slot. See also auxiliary slot, slot. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR)

expression: A formula in a program that defines a calculation to be performed. (CTR, ETR)

Extended 80-Column Text Card: See Apple IIe Extended 80-Column Text Card. (GST)

extended SmartPort call: A SmartPort call that allows data transfer to or from anywhere in the Apple II GS system memory space. Compare standard SmartPort call. (GSF)

extended task event record: A data structure based on the event record that contains information used and returned by TaskMaster. (GSTR, PI)

Extended value: An 80-bit signed floating-point value with 64 bits of fraction. (GSTR)

external device: See device. (GSH, P16)

external reference: A reference to a symbol that is defined in another segment. External references must be to global symbols. (GSH)

FALSE: Zero. The result of a Boolean operation. Opposite of TRUE. (GSTR, PI)

family name: The name identifying a font family. For example, the font family named Helvetica includes 10-point Helvetica, 12-point Helvetica Bold, and 36-point Helvetica Underlined. See also font family. (GSTR)

family number: The number identifying a font family. There is a one-to-one correspondence between family number and family name; that is, any two fonts with the same family number should have the same family name. (GSTR)

FamSpecBits: A bit flag in the Font Manager that restricts the range of font families available to a calling routine. (GSTR)

FamStatBits: A bit flag in the Font Manager that reports on the status of a font family. (GSTR)

fatal error: An error serious enough that the computer must halt execution. (GSH, P16)

field: A string of ASCII characters or a value that has a specific meaning to some program. Fields may be of fixed length or may be separated from other fields by field delimiters. For example, each parameter in a segment header constitutes a field. (GSF)

FIFO: Acronym for "first in, first out" order, as in a queue. (CTR, ETR)

file: A named, ordered collection of information stored on a disk. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI, P16)

file control block (FCB): A data structure set up in memory by ProDOS 16 to keep track of all open files. (P16)

file entry or file directory entry: The part of a ProDOS 16 directory or subdirectory that describes and points to another file. The file so described is considered to be "in" or "under" that directory. (P16)

file level: See system file level. (PI, P16)

file mark: See Mark. (PI)

file system ID: A number describing the general category of operating system to which a file or volume belongs. The file system ID is an input to the ProDOS 16 FORMAT call, and a result from the VOLUME call. (P16)

file type: An attribute in a ProDOS 16 file's directory entry that characterizes the contents of the file and indicates how the file may be used. On disk, file types are stored as numbers; in a directory listing, they are oGST, GSTR, PI, P16)

filename: The string of characters that identifies a particular file within its directory. ProDOS filenames may be up to 15 characters long. Compare pathname. (GSTR, PI, P16)

filing calls: Operating system calls that manipulate files. In ProDOS 16, filing calls are subdivided into file housekeeping calls and file access calls. (P16)

fill mode: A display option in Super Hi-Res 320 mode. In fill mode, pixels in memory with the value 0 are automatically assigned the color of the previous nonzero pixel on the scan line; the program thus need assign explicit pixel values only to change pixel colors. (GSTR, PI)

filling: In QuickDraw II, using a specified pattern and the drawing mask to fill the interior of a shape. (GSTR)

filter procedure: A procedure that allows the application programmer to control the types of events handled by the Dialog Manager. (GSTR)

finder: A program that performs file and disk utilities (formatting, copying, renaming, and so on) and also starts applications at the request of the user. (P16)

firmware: Programs stored permanently in read-only memory (ROM). Such programs (for example, the Applesoft Interpreter and the Monitor program) are built into the computer at the factory. They can be executed at any time but cannot be modified or erased from main memory. (GST)

firmware: Programs stored permanently in read-only memory (ROM). Such programs (for example, the Applesoft Interpreter and the Monitor program) are built into the computer at the factory. They can be executed at any time but cannot be modified or erased from main memory. Compare hardware, software. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

fixed: Not movable in memory once allocated. Also called immovable. Program segments that must not be moved are placed in fixed memory blocks. Opposite of movable. (GSTR, PI, P16)

fixed address: A memory block that must be at a specified address when allocated. (GSTR)

fixed bank: A block of memory that must start in a specified bank. (GSTR)

Fixed value: A 32-bit signed value with 16 bits of fraction. (GSTR)

fixed-address: A memory block that must be at a specified address when allocated. (PI)

fixed-bank: A block of memory that must start in a specified bank. (PI)

fixed-point: A method of representing numbers inside the computer in which the decimal point (more correctly, the binary point) is considered to occur at a fixed position within the number. Typically, the point is considered to lie at the right end of the number so that the number is interpreted as an integer. Compare floating-point. (CTR, ETR)

flag: A variable whose value (usually 1 or 0, standing for true or false) indicates whether some condition holds or whether some event has occurred. A flag is used to control the program's actions at some later time. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

floating-point: A method of representing numbers inside the computer in which the decimal point (more correctly, the binary point) is permitted to "float" to different positions within the number. Some of the bits within the number itself are used to keep track of the point's position. Compare fixed-point. (CTR, ETR)

floppy disk: A disk made of flexible plastic, as compared to a hard disk, which is made of metal. The term floppy is now usually applied only to disks with thin, flexible disk jackets, such as 5.25-inch disks. With 3.5-inch disks, the disk itself is flexible, but the jacket is made of hard plastic; thus, 3.5-inch disks aren't particularly "floppy." (CTR, ETR)

flush: To update an open file (write any updated information to disk) without closing it. (P16)

folder: The visual representation of a subdirectory. See also subdirectory. (GSTR, PI)

font: In typography, a complete set of type in one size and style of character. In computer usage, a collection of letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other typographical symbols with a consistent appearance; the size and style can be changed readily. See also font scaling. (GST, GSTR, PI)

font bounds rectangle: The smallest rectangle that would enclose all the pixels of every character in a font; that is, the rectangle that is the union of all the character bounds rectangles of the characters in the font. (GSTR)

font family: All fonts that share the same name but may vary in size or style. For example, all fonts named Helvetica are in the same family, even though that family contains Helvetica, Helvetica Narrow and Helvetica Bold. (GSTR, PI)

font height: The vertical distance from a font's ascent line to its descent line. (GSTR, PI)

font ID: A number that specifies a font by family, style, and size. (GSTR, PI)

font ID record: A record containing the number that specifies a font by family, style, and size. (GSTR)

Font Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that allows applications to use different fonts. (GSTR)

font rectangle: The smallest rectangle that would completely enclose all the foreground pixels of the characters of a font if the characters were drawn so that their character origins coincided. (GSTR)

font scaling: A process by which the Font Manager creates a font at one size by enlarging or reducing characters in an existing font of another size. (GSTR, PI)

font size: The size of a font in points, from 1 to 255. The Font Manager defines the font size as a byte; QuickDraw II and the Apple IIGS font record define the font size as a word. (GSTR)

font strike: A 1 bit/pixel pixelmap consisting of the character images of every defined character in the font, placed sequentially in order of increasing ASCII code. (GSTR, PI)

font style: The style in which a font was designed. The Font Manager defines the style style as a byte; QuickDraw II and the Apple IIGS font record define the font style as a word. (GSTR)

font substitution: An option in the LaserWriter style dialog box in the Print Manager, font substitution tells the system to substitute one font for another if the specified font is not available on the LaserWriter. (GSTR)

FontSpecBits: A bit flag in the Font Manager that restricts the range of fonts available to a calling routine. (GSTR)

FontStatBits: A bit flag in the Font Manager that reports on the status of a font. (GSTR)

foreground color: The color of the foreground pixels in text; by default it is white. (GSTR, PI)

foreground pixels: In a character image, the pixels corresponding to the character itself; that is, the bits set to 1 in the image. (GSTR)

form feed: An ASCII character (decimal 12) that causes a printer or other paper-handling device to advance to the top of the next page. (CTR, ETR)

format: (n) (1) The form in which information is organized or presented. (2) The general shape and appearance of a printed page, including page size, character width and spacing, line spacing, and so on. (v) To divide a disk into tracks and sectors where information can be stored. Blank disks must be formatted before you can save information on them for the first time; same as initialize. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

Fortran: Short for Formula Translator. A high-level programming language especially suitable for applications requiring extensive numerical calculations, such as in mathematics, engineering, and the sciences. (CTR, ETR)

FPI: Abbreviation for Fast Processor Interface. A custom integrated circuit that incorporates most of the memory organization and address-decoding functions of the Apple IIGS. One of this IC's functions is to slow the system clock to 1.024 MHz whenever access to banks \$E0 and E1 is detected. (GSH)

FPT: See function pointer table. (GSTR)

Frac value: A 32-bit signed value with 30 bits of fraction. (GSTR)

fragmentation: A condition in which free (unallocated) portions of memory are scattered due to repeated allocation and deallocation of blocks by the Memory Manager. (GSTR)

frame region: The part of a window that surrounds the window's content region and contains standard window controls. (GSTR, PI)

framing: In QuickDraw II, using the current pen size, pen pattern, drawing mask, and pen mode to draw an outline of a shape. (GSTR)

framing error: In serial data transfer, the absence of the expected stop bit(s) at the end of a received character. (CTR, ETR)

frequency: In alternating current (AC) signals, the number of complete cycles transmitted per second. Frequency is usually expressed in hertz (cycles per second), kilohertz (kilocycles per second), or megahertz (megacycles per second). In acoustics, frequency of vibration determines musical pitch. Compare duration. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

fringing: Also known as color fringing. The undesirable effect of rainbow-like colors obscuring text on the video monitor. Occurs when 80-column text is displayed in color. (GSH)

full duplex: A four-wire communication circuit or protocol that allows two-way data transmission between two points at the same time. Compare half duplex. (CTR, ETR)

full native mode: See native mode. (GSTR)

full pathname: The complete name by which a file is specified, starting with the volume directory name. A full pathname always begins with a slash (/), because a volume directory name always begins with a slash. See also pathname. (GSTR, PI)

function: A preprogrammed calculation that can be carried out on request from any point in a program. A function takes in one or more arguments and returns a single value. It can therefore be embedded in an expression. (CTR, ETR, GST)

function pointer table (FPT): A table, maintained by the Tool Locator, that points to all routines in a given tool set. (GSTR, PI)

game I/O connector: A 16-pin connector inside all the open models of the Apple II, originally designed for connecting hand controls to the computer, but also used for connecting some other peripheral devices. Compare hand control connector. (CTR, ETR, GST)

GCB: See generator control block. (GSTR)

General Logic Unit: A class of custom integrated circuits used as interfaces between different parts of the computer. (GSH)

general logic unit: See GLU. (GSTR, PI)

generator: In the swap mode of the DOC, a functional unit formed from a pair of oscillators. (GSTR)

generator control block (GCB): A 16-byte block in the sound routines' work area that controls one generator. (GSTR)

GETLN: The firmware routine that a program calls to obtain an entire line of characters from the currently active input device. (GSF)

GetNextEvent: The Event Manager call that an application can make on each cycle through its main event loop. Compare TaskMaster. (GSTR, PI)

global coordinates: The coordinate system assigned to a pixel image (such as screen memory) that QuickDraw II draws to. In global coordinates, the boundary rectangle's origin (top left corner) has the value (0,0). Compare local coordinates. (GSTR, PI)

global page: Under ProDOS 8, 256 bytes of data at a fixed location in memory, containing useful system information (such as a list of active devices) available to any application. (P16)

global page bit map: A portion of the ProDOS 8 global page that keeps track of memory use in the computer. Applications under ProDOS 8 are responsible for marking and clearing parts of the bit map that correspond to memory they have allocated or freed. (P16)

global symbol: A label in a segment that may be referenced by other segments. Compare with local symbol, private symbol. (PI)

GLU: Abbreviation of general logic unit, a class of custom integrated circuits used as interfaces between different parts of the computer. See General Logic Unit. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

go-away region: A region in a window frame, corresponding to the close box. Clicking inside this region of the active window makes the window close or disappear. (GSTR, PI)

GrafPort: A data structure (record) that specifies a complete drawing environment, including such elements as a pixel image, boundaries within which to draw, a character font, patterns for drawing and erasing, and other pen characteristics. (GSTR, PI)

graph: A pictorial representation of data. (CTR, ETR, GST)

graphic interface: An interface between computer and user in which all screen drawing or other output, including text, is done by graphic routines. Desktop programs use a graphic interface. Compare text-based interface. (PI)

graphic port: A specification for how and where QuickDraw II draws. A graphic port is defined by its GrafPort record; an application may have more than one graphic port open at one time, each defined by its own GrafPort. Same as drawing environment. (GSTR, PI)

graphics: (1) Information presented in the form of pictures or images. (2) The display of pictures or images on a computer's display screen. Compare text. (CTR, ETR, GST) The display by a computer on a video monitor of data in memory, to visually represent figures, charts, graphs, or icons. In the Apple IIGS, each pixel on the monitor screen is directly controllable by bits in the screen. See also bit map. (GSH)

grow box: A small square in the lower-right corner of some windows, with which the user can resize the window. The grow box corresponds to the grow region. (PI)

grow image: A dotted outline of an entire window plus the lines delimiting the title bar, size box, and scroll bar areas. The image can be pulled around to follow the movements of the mouse until the mouse button is released. (GSTR)

grow region: A window region in which dragging changes the size of the window. (GSTR, PI)

guest file system: A file system, other than ProDOS 16's, whose files can be read by ProDOS 16. (P16)

half duplex: A two-wire communication circuit or protocol designed for data transmission in either direction but not both directions simultaneously. Compare full duplex. (CTR, ETR)

hand control: A hand-held device with a knob and pushbutton that provides the user with a means for inputting stimuli to the computer for the purpose of controlling the application program. Usually used in conjunction with game software. Compare joystick. (GSH)

hand control connector: A 9-pin connector on the back panel of the Apple IIe and IIc computers, used for connecting hand controls to the computer. Compare game I/O connector. (CTR, ETR, GST)

hand controller: Peripheral devices, with rotating dials and push buttons. Hand controllers are used to control game-playing programs, but they can also be used in other applications. (CTR, ETR, GST)

handle: See memory handle. (GSTR, PI, P16)

handshaking: The exchange of status information between a DCE (Data Communications Equipment) and a DTE (Data Terminal Equipment), usually a computer and a peripheral device, used to control the transfer of data between them. The status information can be the state of a signal connecting the DCE and the DTE, or it can be in the form of a character transmitted with the rest of the data. See also XOFF, XON. (GSF, GSH, GST)

hang: To cease operation because either an expected condition is not satisfied or an infinite loop is occurring. A computer that's hanging is called a hung system. Compare crash. (CTR, ETR)

hard disk: A disk made of metal and sealed into a drive or cartridge. A hard disk can store very large amounts of information compared to a floppy disk. (CTR, ETR)

hard disk drive: A device that holds a hard disk, retrieves information from it, and saves information to it. Hard disks made for microprocessors are permanently sealed into the drives. (CTR, ETR)

hardware: Collectively, electronic circuit components and associated fittings and attachments. In computers, the computer itself (the processor), disk drives, and other peripheral equipment. The saying goes, "If you can touch it, it's hardware. If you can't, it's software." Compare firmware, software. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GSTR, PI)

Heartbeat Interrupt Task Queue: A list of tasks, such as cursor-movement updating or checking stack size, to be performed during vertical blanking. Heartbeat tasks are manipulated by the Miscellaneous Tool Set. (PI)

Heartbeat routines: Routines that execute at some multiple of the heartbeat interrupt signal, which occurs during the vertical blanking interval (every 1/60 of a second). (GSTR, PI)

hertz: The unit of frequency of vibration or oscillation, defined as the number of cycles per second. Named for the physicist Heinrich Hertz and abbreviated Hz. See also kilohertz, megahertz. (GST)

hertz: The unit of frequency of vibration or oscillation, defined as the number of cycles per second. Named for the physicist Heinrich Hertz and abbreviated Hz. The 6502 microprocessor used in the 8-bit Apple II systems operates at a clock frequency of about 1 million hertz, or 1 megahertz (MHz). The 68000 microprocessor used in the Macintosh operates at 7.8336 MHz. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

hex: See hexadecimal. (GSTR, PI)

hexadecimal: The base-16 system of numbers, using the ten digits 0 through 9 and the six letters A through F. Hexadecimal numbers can be converted easily and directly to binary form, because each hexadecimal digit corresponds to a sequence of 4 bits. In Apple manuals, hexadecimal numbers are usually preceded by a dollar sign (\$). (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, PI, P16)

hexadecimal, hex: The representation of numbers in the base-16 system, using the ten digits 0 through 9 and the six letters A through F. Each hexadecimal digit corresponds to a sequence of four binary digits, or bits. Hexadecimal numbers are usually preceded by a dollar sign (\$). (GSTR)

Hi-Res: A high-resolution graphics display mode on the Apple II family of computers, consisting of an array of pixels 140 wide by 192 high in 6 colors or 280 wide by 192 high in monochrome. (GSF, GSH, GST)

hide: To make invisible (but not necessarily to discard) an object on the screen such as a window. (GSTR, PI)

hierarchical file system: A method of organization in which disk files are grouped together within directories and subdirectories. In a hierarchical file system, a file is specified by its pathname, rather than by a single filename. (P16)

high ASCII characters: ASCII characters with decimal values of 128 to 255. Called high ASCII because their high bit (first binary digit) is set to 1 (for on) rather than 0 (for off). (CTR, ETR)

high order: The most significant part of a numerical quantity. In normal representation, the high-order bit of a binary value is in the leftmost position; likewise, the high-order byte of a binary word or longword quantity consists of the leftmost 8 bits. (GSF)

high-level language: A programming language that is relatively easy for people to understand. A single statement in a high-level language typically corresponds to several instructions of machine language. Compare low-level language. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

high-order: Referring to the most significant part of a numerical quantity. In normal representation, the high-order bit of a binary value is in the leftmost position; likewise, the high-order byte of a binary word or long word consists of the leftmost 8 bits. (GSH, P16)

high-order byte: The more significant half of a memory address or other multi-byte quantity. In the 6502 microprocessor used in the Apple II family of computers, the low-order byte of an address is usually stored first, and the high-order byte second. (In the 68000 microprocessors used in the Macintosh family, the high-order byte is stored first.) (CTR, ETR, GST)

high-resolution graphics: On the 8-bit Apple II family the display of graphics on a screen as a six-color array of points, 280 columns wide and 192 rows high. When a text window is in use, the visible high-resolution graphics display is 280 by 160 points. (CTR, ETR)

highlight: To make something visually distinct. For example, when a button on a dialog box is selected, it appears as light letters on a dark background, rather than dark on light. An active window or control is highlighted differently than an inactive one. (GSTR, PI)

HodgePodge: A sample Apple IIGS desktop application; the program described in this book. (PI)

hold time: In computer circuits, the amount of time a signal must remain valid after some related signal has been turned off. Compare setup time. (CTR, ETR)

horizontal blanking: The interval between the drawing of each scan line on a video display. (GSTR, PI)

hot spot: The interval between the drawing of each scan line on a video display. (GSTR)

Human Interface Guidelines: A set of software development guidelines designed by Apple Computer to support the desktop concept and to promote uniform user interfaces in Apple II and Macintosh applications. (GSF, GSTR, PI, P16)

Hz: See hertz. (CTR, ETR, GST)

i flag: A bit in the 65816 microprocessor's Processor Status register that, if set to 1, disables interrupts. (GSTR, PI)

I/O: Input/Output. A general term that encompasses input/output activity, the devices that accomplish it, and the data involved. See input/output. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

I/O device: Input/output device. A device that transfers information into or out of a computer. See input, output, peripheral device. (CTR, ETR, GST)

I/O expansion slots: The seven rectangular connectors located on Apple IIGS main logic board. These slots will accept standard Apple II peripheral cards and allow the computer to communicate with peripherals such as printers and disk drives. See also peripheral card. (GSH)

I/O link: A fixed location that contains the address of an input/output subroutine in the computer's Monitor program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

I/O space: The portion of the memory map in a standard Apple II (and in banks \$00, \$01, \$E0, and \$E1 of an Apple IIGS) with addresses between \$C000 and \$CFFF. Programs perform I/O by writing to or reading from locations in this I/O space. (GSTR, PI)

IC: See integrated circuit. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, PI)

icon: An image that graphically represents an object, a concept, or a message. (GSF, GST, GSTR, PI)

image: A representation of the contents of memory. A code image consists of machine-language instructions or data that may be loaded unchanged into memory. See also pixel image. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

image pointer: In QuickDraw II, the pointer to the first byte of a pixel image. (GSTR)

image width: (1) Part of the QuickDraw II `locInfo` record that specifies the width of each line of a pixel image; the width must be an even multiple of 8 bytes. (2) For characters, same as character image width. (GSTR)

immediate execution: The execution of a program statement as soon as it is typed. In BASIC, immediate execution occurs when the line is typed without a line number; immediate execution allows you to try out nearly every statement immediately to see how it works. Compare deferred execution. (CTR, ETR)

immovable: See fixed. (GSTR)

implement: To put into practical effect, as to implement a plan. For example, a language translator implements a particular language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

IN#: This command designates the source of subsequent input characters. It can be used to designate a device in a slot or a machine-language routine as the source of input. (CTR, ETR)

inactive: Controls that have no meaning or effect in the current context, such as an Open button when no document has been selected to be opened. These inactive controls are not affected by the user's mouse actions and are dimmed on the screen. Compare disable. (GSTR, PI)

index: (1) A number used to identify a member of a list or table by its sequential position. (2) A list or table whose entries are identified by sequential position. (3) In machine-language programming, the variable component of an indexed address, contained in an index register and added to the base address to form the effective address. (CTR, ETR)

index block: A 512-byte part of a ProDOS 16 standard file that consists entirely of pointers to other parts (data blocks) of the file. (P16)

index register: A register in a computer processor that holds an index for use in indexed addressing. The 6502 and 65C816 microprocessors used in the Apple II family of computers have two index registers, called the X register and the Y register. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

index variable: A variable whose value changes on each pass through a loop. Often called control variable or loop variable. (CTR, ETR)

- indexed addressing:** A method used in machine language programming to specify memory addresses. See also memory location. (CTR, ETR, GST)
- indicator:** On a dial type of control, the moving part that displays the current setting. (GSTR)
- infinite loop:** A section of a program that will repeat the same sequence of actions indefinitely. (CTR, ETR)
- information bar:** An optional component of a window. If present, the information bar appears just below the title bar. It may contain any information the application that created the window wishes. (GSTR, PI)
- initial load file:** The first file of a program to be loaded into memory. It contains the program's main segment and the load file tables (Jump Table segment and Pathname segment) needed to load dynamic segments and run-time libraries. (P16)
- initialization segment:** A segment in an initial load file that is loaded and executed independently of the rest of the program. It is commonly executed first, to perform any initialization that the program may require. (GSTR, PI, P16)
- initialization file:** A program (in the SYSTEM.SETUP subdirectory of the boot disk) that is loaded and executed at system startup, independently of any application. (PI)
- initialize:** (1) To set to an initial state or value in preparation for some computation. (2) To prepare a blank disk to receive information by organizing its surface into tracks and sectors; see format. (CTR, ETR, GSF)
- initialized disk:** A disk that has been organized into tracks and sectors by the computer and is therefore ready to store information. (CTR, ETR)
- input:** (n) Information transferred into a computer from some external source, such as the keyboard, a disk drive, or a modem. (CTR, ETR, GST)
- input device:** The keyboard is the main input device for the Apple IIGS. Other possible input devices are the mouse and the graphics tablet. Almost any device may be used as an ADB input device, as long as it conforms to the Apple Desktop Bus protocol. Chapter 6 provides details on the ADB. (GSH)
- input routine:** A machine-language routine; the standard input routine reads characters from the keyboard. A different input routine might, for example, read them from an external terminal. (CTR, ETR)
- input/output (I/O):** The process by which information is transferred between the computer's memory and its keyboard or peripheral devices. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)
- insertion point:** The place in a document where something will be added; it is selected by clicking and is normally represented by a blinking vertical bar. (GSTR, PI)
- instruction:** A unit of a machine-language or assembly-language program corresponding to a single action for the computer's processor to perform. (CTR, ETR, GST)
- instrument:** A data structure, used by the Note Sequencer and Synthesizer, that specifies such parameters as the amplitude envelope, pitchbend and vibrato characteristics, and the specific waveforms that characterize the sound to be played. (PI)
- integer:** A whole number in fixed-point form. Compare real number. (CTR, ETR, PI)
- Integer BASIC:** A version of the BASIC programming language used by the Apple II family of computers. Integer BASIC is older than Applesoft BASIC and is capable of processing numbers in integer (fixed-point) form only. Many games are written in Integer BASIC because its instructions can be executed very quickly. Compare Applesoft BASIC. (CTR, ETR)
- Integer Math String:** An ASCII string with no length indication supplied by the string itself. (GSTR)

Integer Math Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that performs simple mathematical functions on integers and other fixed-point numbers and converts numbers to their ASCII string-equivalents. (GSTR, PI)

Integer value: A 16-bit signed or unsigned value. (GSTR)

integrated circuit: An electronic circuit, including components and interconnections, entirely contained in a single piece of semiconducting material, usually silicon. Often referred to as an IC or a chip. (CTR, ETR, GST, PI) A miniature electronic circuit consisting of many thousands of transistors and other electronic components by processing a chip of semiconductor material. This chip is then cast in a plastic or ceramic package with metal leads or "legs" used to connect it to a circuit board. Categories of ICs are labeled due to their construction process: monolithic, hybrid, and thin-film are some. Almost any electronic circuit may be miniaturized and made into an integrated circuit. (GSH)

intelligent device: A device containing a microprocessor and a program that allows the device to interpret data sent to it as commands that the device is to perform. (GSF)

interactive: Operating by means of a dialog between the computer system and a human user. (GST)

interface: (1) The point at which independent systems or diverse groups interact. The devices, rules, or conventions by which one component of a system communicates with another. Also, the point of communication between a person and a computer. (2) The part of a program that defines constants, variables, and data structures, rather than procedures themselves. (CTR, ETR, GST, PI)

interface card: A peripheral card that implements a particular interface (such as a parallel or serial interface) by which the computer can communicate with a peripheral device such as a printer or modem. (CTR, ETR, GST)

interface library: A set of variable definitions and data-structure definitions that link a program (such as a C application) with software written in another language (such as the Apple IIGS Toolbox). (GSTR, PI)

interpreter: A language translator that reads a program instruction by instruction and immediately translates each instruction for the computer to carry out. Compare compiler. (CTR, ETR, GSF)

interrupt: A request made of the microprocessor by a device, either built-in or external, to receive urgent data or respond to a recent event. Disk drives make interrupt requests of the microprocessor, as do the real-time clock and the mouse firmware in the Apple IIGS. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16) A temporary suspension in the execution of a program that allows the computer to perform some other task, typically in response to a signal from a peripheral device or other source external to the computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

interrupt environment: The machine state, including register length and contents, that the interrupt handler executes within. (GSTR, PI)

interrupt handler: A program, associated with a particular external device, that executes whenever that device sends an interrupt signal to the computer. The interrupt handler performs its tasks during the interrupt, then returns control to the computer so it may resume program execution. (GSF, GSH, P16)

interrupt mode: A mode in which interrupts are used to synchronize drawing with vertical blanking. (GSTR)

interrupt vector table: A table maintained in memory by ProDOS 16 that contains the addresses of all currently active (allocated) interrupt handlers. (GSH, P16)

INTERSEG record: A part of a relocation dictionary. It contains relocation information for external (intersegment) references. (P16)

inverse video: The display of text on the computer's display screen in the form of dark dots on a light (or other single phosphor color) background, instead of the usual light dots on a dark background. (CTR, ETR)

invert: To highlight by changing white pixels to black and vice versa. (PI)

inverting: In QuickDraw II, using the drawing mask to invert the pixels in the interior of a shape. (GSTR)

IRQ: A 65C816 signal line that, when activated, causes an interrupt request to be generated. (GSF)

item: A component of a dialog box, such as a button, a text field, or an icon. (GSTR, PI)

item descriptor: In a dialog box, a pointer or a handle to additional information concerning a dialog item. (GSTR)

item ID: A unique number that defines an item in a dialog box and allows further reference to it. (GSTR, PI)

item line: The line of text that defines a menu item's name and appearance. (GSTR, PI)

item list: A list of information about all the items in a dialog box or an alert box. (GSTR, PI)

item template: A record that contains information about the items in a dialog box. (GSTR)

item type: Identifies the type of dialog item, usually represented by a predefined constant (such as editLine) or a series of constants (such as editLine+itemDisable). (GSTR, PI)

item value: In a dialog box, additional information concerning a dialog item. (GSTR)

IWM: "Integrated Woz Machine"; the custom chip that controls Apple's 3.5-inch disk drives. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

JML: Unconditional Long Jump; a 65C816 assembly-language op code. It takes a 3-byte address operand. A JML can reach any address in the Apple IIGS memory space. (P16)

JMP: Unconditional Jump; a 6502 and 65C816 assembly-language op code. It takes a 2-byte address operand. A JMP can reach addresses only within a single 64K bank of the Apple IIGS memory space. (P16)

job dialog box: A dialog box presented when the user selects Print from the File menu. (GSTR, PI)

job subrecord: A field in the print record that contains information about a particular printing job. See also print record. (GSTR)

journaling mechanism: A mechanism that can separate the Event Manager from the user and feed the manager events from a file. (GSTR)

joystick: A peripheral device with a lever, typically used to move creatures and objects in game programs; a joystick can also be used in applications such as computer-aided design and graphics programs. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, PI)

JSL: Jump to Subroutine (Long), a 65816 assembly-language instruction that requires a long (3-byte) address. JSL can be used to transfer execution to code in another memory bank. (PI, P16, GSTR)

JSR: Jump to Subroutine, a 6502 and 65816 assembly-language instruction that requires a 2-byte address. (GSTR, PI, P16) A JSR can access addresses only within a single 64K bank of the Apple IIGS memory space. (P16)

Jump Table: (1) A table constructed in memory by the System Loader from all Jump Table segments encountered during a load. The Jump Table contains all references to dynamic segments that may be called during execution of the program. (2) The mechanism the Sound Tool Set uses to find a low-level sound routine. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

Jump Table directory: A master list in memory, containing pointers to all segments that make up the Jump Table. (P16)

Jump Table segment: A segment in a load file that contains all references to dynamic segments that may be called during execution of that load file. The Jump Table segment is created by the linker. In memory, the loader combines all Jump Table segments it encounters into the Jump Table. (GSTR, P16)

K: Abbreviation for the prefix kilo-, meaning 1024. A kilobyte (expressed 1K) of memory is 1024 memory locations. See kilobyte. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

kernel: The central part of an operating system. ProDOS 16 is the kernel of the Apple IIGS operating system. (P16)

kerning: The situation that occurs when a character has foreground pixels to the left of the old pen position or to the right of the new pen position or both. When kerning occurs, the character images of adjacent characters may overlap. (GSTR)

key block: The first block in any ProDOS 16 file. (P16)

key-down: An event type caused by the user's pressing any character key on the keyboard or keypad. The character keys include all keys except Shift, Caps Lock, Control, Option, and Apple, which are called modifier keys. Modifier keys are treated differently and generate no keyboard events of their own. (PI)

key-down event: An event type caused by the user pressing any character key on the keyboard or keypad. The character keys include all keys except Shift, Caps Lock, Control, Option, and Apple, which are called modifier keys. Modifier keys are treated differently and generate no keyboard events of their own. (GSTR)

keyboard: The set of keys, similar to a typewriter keyboard, used for entering information into the computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

keyboard equivalent: The combination of the Apple key and another key, used to invoke a menu item from the keyboard. (GSTR, PI)

keyboard input connector: The connector inside the Apple II family of computers by which the keyboard is connected to the computer. (CTR, ETR)

KEYIN: The firmware entry point that a program calls to obtain a keystroke from the currently active input device (normally the keyboard). (GSF)

keyword: A special word or sequence of characters that identifies a particular type of statement or command, such as RUN, BRUN, or PRINT. (CTR, ETR)

kilobit: A unit of measurement, 1024 bits, commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory ICs. Not to be confused with kilobyte. (GSF, GSH, GST)

kilobyte: A unit of measurement, 1024 bytes, commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory or disk storage systems. In this usage, kilo (from the Greek, meaning a thousand) stands for 1024. Thus, 64K memory equals 65,536 bytes. See also megabyte. Compare kilobit. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

kilohertz: A unit of measurement of frequency, equal to 1000 hertz (abbreviated kHz). See also megahertz. (GSF, GSH, GST)

kind: See segment kind. (PI, P16)

KSW: The symbolic name of the location in the computer's memory where the standard input link (namely, to the keyboard) is stored. KSW stands for keyboard switch. (CTR, ETR, GST)

landscape mode: A printing mode in which text is printed top to bottom (that is, longways) on the paper. (GSTR)

language: See programming language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

language card: Memory with addresses between \$D000 and \$FFFF in any Apple II-family computer. It includes two RAM banks in the \$Dxxx space, called bank-switched memory. The language card was originally a peripheral card for the 48K Apple II or Apple II Plus that expanded the computer's memory capacity to 64K and provided space for an additional dialect of BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, PI, P16)

language translator: A system program that reads another program written in a particular programming language and either executes it directly or converts it into some other language (such as machine language) for later execution. See interpreter, compiler, assembler. (CTR, ETR)

language-card memory: Memory with addresses between \$D000 and \$FFFF on any Apple II-family computer. It includes two RAM banks in the \$Dxxx space, called bank-switched memory. The language card was originally a peripheral card for the 48K Apple II or Apple II Plus computer that expanded the computer's memory capacity to 64K and provided space for an additional dialect of BASIC. (GSF)

last-changeable location: The last location whose value the user inquired about through the Monitor. (GSF)

leading: (Pronounced LED-ing.) The space between lines of text. It is the number of pixels vertically between the descent line of one character and the ascent line of the character immediately beneath it. (GSTR, PI)

leading zero: A zero occurring at the beginning of a decimal number, deleted by most computing programs. (CTR, ETR)

least significant bit: The rightmost bit of a binary number. The least significant bit contributes the smallest quantity to the value of the number. Compare most significant bit. (CTR, ETR)

leftward kern: For characters, the distance in pixels from the character origin to the left edge of the character. (GSTR)

length byte: The first byte of a Pascal string. It specifies the length of the string, in bytes. (GSTR, PI)

level: See system file level. (P16)

library (or library file): An object file containing program segments, each of which can be used in any number of programs. The linker can search through the library file for segments that have been referenced in the program source file. (GSTR, PI, P16)

library dictionary segment: The first segment of a library file; it contains a list of all the symbols in the file together with their locations in the file. The linker uses the library dictionary segment to find the segments it needs. (PI)

LIFO: Acronym for "first in, last out" order, as in a stack. (CTR, ETR)

limit rectangle: The rectangle that limits the travel of a region that is being dragged with the mouse. (GSTR)

line: In QuickDraw II, an infinitely thin graphic object that is represented by its ends, which are defined by two points. (GSTR, PI) Also see program line. (CTR, ETR)

line feed: An ASCII character (decimal 10) that ordinarily causes a printer or video display to advance to the next line. (CTR, ETR)

line height: The total amount of vertical space from line to line in a text document. Line height is the sum of ascent, descent, and leading. (GST, GSTR, PI)

line number: A number identifying a program line in an Applesoft BASIC program. (CTR, ETR)

line width: The number of characters that fit on a line on the screen or on a page. (CTR, ETR)

LineEdit Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that provides simple text-editing functions. It is used mostly in dialog boxes. (GSTR, PI)

link: An area in memory that contains an address and a jump instruction. Programs are written to jump to the link address. Other programs can modify this address to make everything behave differently. COUT and KEYIN are examples of I/O links. (GSF)

LinkEd: A command language that can be used to control the APW Linker. (PI)

linker: A program that combines files generated by compilers and assemblers, resolves all symbolic references, and generates a file that can be loaded into memory and executed. (P16, PI)

Lisa: A model of Apple computer; the first computer that offered windows and the use of a mouse to choose commands. The Lisa is now known as the Macintosh XL. (PI)

list: As defined by the List Manager, a scrollable, vertical arrangement of similar items on the screen; the items are selectable by the user. See list control. (GSTR, PI) To display on a monitor, or print on a printer, the contents of memory or of a file. (CTR, ETR)

list control: A custom control created by the List Manager. It is a scrollable, vertical arrangement of similar items on the screen; the items are selectable by the user. (GSTR, PI)

list control record: A data structure that defines the appearance of a list control after the control has been created. (GSTR)

List Manager: The Apple IIGS Tool set that allows an application to present the user with a list from which to choose (for example, the Font Manager uses the List Manager to arrange lists of fonts). (GSTR, PI)

list record: A data structure that defines the initial appearance of a list control. (GSTR)

Lo-Res: The lowest resolution graphics display mode on the Apple II family of computers, consisting of an array of blocks 48 high by 40 wide with 16 colors. (GSF, GSH, GST)

load: To transfer information from a peripheral storage medium (such as a disk) into main memory for use—for example, to transfer a program into memory for execution. (CTR, ETR, GST, PI)

load file: The output of the linker. Load files contain memory images that the system loader can load into memory, together with relocation dictionaries that the loader uses to relocate references. (PI, P16)

load segment: A segment in a load file. Any number of object segments can go into the same load segment. (PI, P16)

loader: A program that brings files from a disk into the computer's memory. (GST)

local: Connected to or close by the host system. (CTR)

local area network: A high-speed data communication channel that provides connections between computers, disk drives, printers, and other peripherals in a limited geographic area, such as within a single building or campus. (GSH)

local coordinates: A coordinate system unique to each GrafPort and independent of the global coordinates of the pixel image that the port is associated with. For example, local coordinates do not change as a window is dragged across the screen; global coordinates do not change as a window's contents are scrolled. (GSTR, PI)

local symbol: A label defined only within an individual segment. Other segments cannot reference the label. Compare with global symbol. (PI)

location: See memory location. (CTR, ETR, GST)

location table: In a font, an array of integers with an entry for each character code. (GSTR)

locInfo: Acronym for location information. The data structure (record) that ties the coordinate plane to an individual pixel image in memory. (GSTR, PI)

lock: To prevent a memory block from being moved or purged. A block may be locked or unlocked by a call to the Memory Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

logic: (1) In microcomputers, a mathematical treatment of formal logic using a set of symbols to represent quantities and relationships that can be translated into switching circuits, or gates. AND, OR, and NOT are examples of logical gates. Each gate has two states, open or closed, allowing the application of binary numbers for solving problems. (2) The systematic scheme that defines the interactions of signals in the design of an automatic data processing system. (CTR, ETR)

logic board: See main logic board. (CTR, ETR, GST)

logical operator: An operator, such as AND, that combines logical values to produce a logical result, such as true or false; sometimes called a Boolean operator. Compare arithmetic operator, relational operator. (CTR, ETR)

long (or long word): A double-length word. For the Apple IIGS, a long word is 32 bits (4 bytes) long. (GSH, PI)

Longint value: A 32-bit signed or unsigned value. (GSTR)

loop: A section of a program that is executed repeatedly until a limit or condition is met, such as an index variable's reaching a specified ending value. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

loop variable: See index variable. (CTR, ETR)

low order: The least significant part of a numerical quantity. In normal representation, the low-order bit of a binary number is in the rightmost position; likewise, the low-order byte of a binary word or longword quantity consists of the rightmost 8 bits. (GSF)

low-level language: A programming language that is relatively close to the form the computer's processor can execute directly. One statement in a low-level language corresponds to a single machine-language instruction. Compare high-level language. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

low-order: Referring to the least significant part of a numerical quantity. In normal representation, the low-order bit of a binary number is in the rightmost position; likewise, the low-order byte of a binary word or long word consists of the rightmost 8 bits. (GSH, P16)

low-order byte: The least significant byte of a memory address or other multi-byte quantity. In the 6502 and 65C816 microprocessors used in the Apple II family of computers, the low-order byte of an address is usually stored first, and the high-order byte last. (In the 68000 microprocessors used in the Macintosh family, the high-order byte is stored first.) (GST, CTR, ETR)

low-power Schottky (LS): A type of transistor-transistor logic (TTL) integrated circuit having lower power and higher speed than a conventional TTL integrated circuit; named for Walter Schottky (1886–1956), a semiconductor physicist. (CTR, ETR)

low-resolution graphics: The display of graphics on a display screen as a 16-color array of blocks, 40 columns wide and 48 rows high. For example, on a Macintosh when the text window is in use, the visible low-resolution graphics display is 40 by 40 plotting points—that is, 40 by 40 pixels. See high-resolution graphics. (CTR, ETR)

LS: See low-power Schottky. (CTR, ETR)

m flag: One of three flags in the 65816 microprocessor's Processor Status register that controls execution mode. When the m flag is set to 1, the accumulator is 8 bits wide; otherwise, it is 16 bits wide. See also e flag, x flag. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

machine language: The form in which instructions to a computer are stored in memory for direct execution by the computer's processor. Each model of computer processor (such as the 6502 microprocessor used in 8-bit Apple II computers) has its own form of machine language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Macintosh: A family of Apple computers built around 68000 microprocessors, having high-resolution black-and-white displays and using mouse devices for choosing commands and for drawing pictures. (GST, GSTR, PI)

macro: A single keystroke or command that a program replaces with several keystrokes or commands. For example, the APW Editor allows you to define macros that execute several editor keystroke commands; the APW Assembler allows you to define macros that execute instructions and directives. Macros are almost like higher-level language instructions, making assembly-language programs easier to write and complex keystrokes easier to execute. (GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

macro assembler: A type of assembler that allows the programmer to define sequences of several assembly-language instructions as single pseudo-instructions called macros. (GST)

macro library: A file of related macros. (GSTR, PI)

main event loop: The central routine of an event-driven program. During execution, the program continually cycles through the main event loop, branching off to handle events as they occur and then returning to the event loop. (GSTR, PI)

main logic board: A large circuit board that holds RAM, ROM, the microprocessor, custom integrated circuits, and other components that make the computer a computer. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

main memory: The part of a computer's memory whose contents are directly accessible to the microprocessor; usually synonymous with random-access memory (RAM). Programs are loaded into main memory, and that's where the computer keeps information while you're working. Sometimes simply called memory. See also read-only memory, read-write memory. (CTR, ETR, GST)

main segment: The first static segment (other than initialization segments) in the initial load file of a program. It is loaded at startup and never removed from memory until the program terminates. (P16)

mainframe computer: A central processing unit or computer that is larger and more powerful than a minicomputer or a personal computer (microcomputer). Frequently called simply a mainframe for short. The Apple Access II program and MacTerminal make it possible to communicate with mainframe computers over telecommunications media. (CTR, ETR)

mainID: A subfield of the User ID. Each running program is assigned a unique mainID. (GSTR, PI, P16)

manager: See tool set. (GSTR, PI)

Mark: The current position in an open file. It is the point in the file at which the next read or write operation will occur. (PI, P16)

Mark List: A table maintained in memory by the System Loader to help it perform relocation rapidly. (P16)

MARK parity: A bit of value 1 appended to a binary number for transmission. The receiving device checks for errors by looking for this value on each character. Compare even parity, odd parity. (CTR, ETR, GST)

mask: (n) A parameter, typically one or more bytes long, whose individual bits are used to permit or block particular features. See, for example, event mask. (v) To apply a mask. (GSTR, PI)

master color value: A 2-byte number that specifies the relative intensities of the red, green, and blue signals output by the Apple IIGS video hardware. (GSTR, PI)

master index block: The key block in a ProDOS 16 tree file, the largest organization of a standard file that ProDOS 16 can support. The master index block consists solely of pointers to one or more index blocks. (P16)

master pointer: A pointer to a memory block; it is kept by the Memory Manager. Each allocated memory block has a master pointer, but the block is normally accessed through its memory handle (which points to the master pointer), rather than through the master pointer itself. See also memory handle. (GSTR, P16)

master User ID: The value of a User ID, disregarding the contents of the auxID field. If an application allocates various memory blocks and assigns them unique ID's consisting of different auxID values added to its own User ID, then all will share the same Master User ID and all can be purged or disposed with a single call. (GSTR, PI)

Mb: See megabyte. (GSTR, PI, P16)

Mega II: A custom large-scale integrated circuit that incorporates most of the timing and control circuits of the standard Apple II. It addresses 128K of RAM organized as 64K main and auxiliary banks and provides the standard Apple II video display modes, both text (40-column and 80-column) and graphics (Lo-Res, Hi-Res, and Double Hi-Res). (GSF, GSH, GST)

megabit: A unit of measurement equal to 1,048,576 (216) bits, or 1024 kilobits. Megabits are commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory integrated circuits. Not to be confused with megabyte. (GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

megabyte: 1,048,576 bytes or 1024 kilobytes, usually used to describe a range or size of memory. Compare megabit. (GSH)

megabyte: A unit of measurement equal to 1,048,576 (216) bytes, or 1024 kilobytes. Megabytes are commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory or disk storage systems. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

megahertz (MHz): A unit of measurement of frequency, equal to 1,000,000 hertz (cycles per second). (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

memory: A hardware component of a computer system that can store information for later retrieval. See main memory, random-access memory, read-only memory, read-write memory. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

memory attributes word: A word that determines how a specified memory block is allocated and maintained. (GSTR)

memory block: See block (2). (GSF, GSTR, PI, P16)

memory expansion card: A slot card that contains additional RAM and ROM memory. In the Apple IIGS, this optional expansion card is to be used only in the memory expansion slot. Memory expansion cards for use in the Apple IIe are not to be used in this computer. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

memory expansion slot: The single slot located on the Apple IIGS main logic board which accepts an Apple IIGS memory expansion card. Memory expansion cards designed for other Apple II computers will not work in this slot. (GSH)

memory fragmentation: A condition in which free (unallocated) portions of memory are scattered because of repeated allocation and deallocation of blocks by the Memory Manager. See fragmentation. (GSTR, PI)

memory handle: A number that identifies a memory block. A handle is a pointer to a pointer; it is the address of a master pointer, which in turn contains the address of the block. Also called simply handle. (GSTR, PI) The identifying number of a particular block of memory. It is a pointer to the master pointer to the memory block. A handle rather than a simple pointer is needed to reference a movable memory block; that way the handle will always be the same though the value of the pointer may change as the block is moved around. (P16)

memory image: See image. (PI)

memory location: A unit of main memory that is identified by an address and can hold a single item of information of a fixed size. In the Apple II family of computers, a memory location holds one byte, or eight bits, of information. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Memory Manager: A program in the Apple IIGS Toolbox that manages memory use. The Memory Manager keeps track of how much memory is available and allocates memory blocks to hold program segments or data. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

Memory Segment Table: A linked list in memory, created by the loader, that allows the loader to keep track of the segments that have been loaded into memory. (PI, P16)

memory-mapped I/O: The method used for I/O operations in Apple II computers, where certain memory locations are attached to I/O devices, and I/O operations are just memory load and store instructions. (GSF, GSH, GST)

memory-resident: (adj) (1) Stored permanently in memory as firmware (ROM). (2) Held continually in RAM even while not in use. DOS is a memory-resident program. Compare disk-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

menu: A list of choices presented by a program, from which the user can select an action. See also pull-down menu. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

menu bar: The horizontal strip at the top of the screen that contains menu titles for the pull-down menus. (GST, GSTR, PI)

menu bar record: A data structure that contains the menu position, color, menu lists, item lists, and other flags the Menu Manager needs to manage menus. (GSTR)

menu definition procedure: A procedure used to define the appearance and behavior of a custom menu. (GSTR)

menu ID: A number in the menu record that identifies an individual menu. (GSTR, PI)

menu item: On a menu, the text of a command or a line dividing groups of choices. (GSTR)

menu line: A line of text plus code characters that defines the appearance of a particular menu title. (GSTR, PI)

Menu Manager: The Apple IIGS Tool Set that maintains the pull-down menus and the items in the menus. (GSTR, PI)

menu record: A data structure that provides information about one of the menus in a menu bar. (GSTR)

menu title: A word, phrase, or icon in the menu bar that designates one menu. Pressing on the menu title causes the title to be highlighted and its menu to appear below it. (GST)

MHz: Abbreviation for megahertz, one million hertz. See hertz. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

microcomputer: Any small computer whose central processing element is contained on a single small circuit board or within a single integrated circuit. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

microprocessor: The heart of a microcomputer. Usually, a single-chip computer element that contains the control unit, central processing circuitry, and arithmetic and logic functions and is suitable for use as the central processing unit of a microcomputer or a dedicated automatic control system. In the Apple IIGS computer, the microprocessor is the 65C816. Previous Apple II computers utilize the 6502 and 65C02 microprocessors. Some microprocessors used in other computers are the 68000, the 8080, the Z80, and the 8086. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

microsecond: One millionth of a second. Abbreviated μ s. (CTR, ETR, GST)

millisecond: One thousandth of a second. Abbreviated ms. (CTR, ETR, GST)

mini-assembler: A part of the Apple IIGS Monitor program that allows the user to create small assembly-language test routines. See also assembler. (GSF)

minimum blink interval: The minimum time between blinks of the caret. (GSTR)

minimum version number: The minimum version of a particular tool set that an application needs to function. (GSTR)

minipalette: In Super Hi-Res 640 mode, a quarter of the color table. Each pixel in 640 mode can have one of four colors specified in a minipalette. (GSTR, PI)

Miscellaneous Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that includes mostly system-level routines that must be available for other tool sets. (GSTR, PI)

missing character: In a font, a character that does not have a defined symbol. (GSTR)

missing symbol: In a font, the symbol substituted for any ASCII value for which the font does not have a defined symbol. In the Apple IIGS system font, the missing symbol is a box containing a question mark. (GSTR, PI)

MLI: Machine Language Interface—the part of ProDOS 8 that processes operating system calls. (P16)

modal dialog box: A dialog box that puts the machine in a state where the user cannot execute functions outside of the dialog box until the dialog box is closed. Compare modeless dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

mode: A state of a computer or system that determines its behavior. A manner of operating. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

modeless dialog box: A dialog box that does not require the user to respond before doing anything else. Unlike a modal dialog box, it is possible to keep working even if the box is still in use. Compare modal dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

modem: Acronym for modulator-demodulator. A computer peripheral device that allows computers to transfer digital information over conventional telephone lines. Modems usually connect to the computer's serial port, but may instead plug into a peripheral expansion slot. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

modification date: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the date on which the content of the file was last changed. (PI, P16)

modification time: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the time at which the content of the file was last changed. (PI, P16)

modifier key: A key (Apple, Caps Lock, Control, Option, Shift) that generates no keyboard events of its own, but changes the meaning of other keys or mouse actions. Also called a control key. (CTR, ETR, GSTR)

modulate: To modify or alter a signal so as to transmit information. For example, conventional broadcast radio transmits sound by modulating the amplitude (amplitude modulation, or AM) or the frequency (frequency modulation, or FM) of a carrier signal. (CTR, ETR)

monitor: See video monitor. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

Monitor program: A firmware program built into the firmware of Apple II computers, used for directly inspecting or changing the contents of main memory and for operating the computer at the machine-language level. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, PI, P16)

monochrome: Displaying video in one color and the background in another, frequently black and white, but not necessarily. The Apple IIGS monochrome default is white characters on a medium blue background. (GSH)

monospaced: Said of a font whose character widths are all identical. Compare proportionally spaced. (GSTR, PI)

MOS: Abbreviation for metal oxide silicon, a method of semiconductor integrated-circuit fabrication on silicon using layers of silicon dioxide in the make-up of the devices. Compare CMOS. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

most significant bit: The leftmost bit of a binary number. The most significant bit contributes the largest quantity to the value of the number. For example, in the binary number 10110 (decimal value 22), the leftmost bit has the decimal value 16 (24). Compare least significant bit. (CTR, ETR)

mouse: A small device you move around on a flat surface next to your computer. The mouse controls a pointer on the screen whose movements correspond to those of the mouse. You use the pointer to select menu items, to move data, and to draw with in graphics programs. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

mouse button: The button on the top of the mouse. In general, pressing the mouse button initiates some action on whatever is under the pointer, and releasing the button confirms the action. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

mouse clamps: Values that establish the minimum and maximum X and Y coordinates for the mouse. (GSTR)

mouse-down: An action or an event, signifying that the user has pressed the mouse button. (GSTR, PI)

mouse-up: An action or an event, signifying that the user has released the mouse button. (GSTR, PI)

movable: A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager is free to move the block. Opposite of fixed. Only position-independent program segments may be in movable memory blocks. A block is made movable or fixed through Memory Manager calls. The opposite of fixed. (GSTR, PI, P16)

move: To change the location of a group of data bytes in memory. The Memory Manager may move blocks to consolidate memory space. (GSH, P16)

nanosecond: One billionth of a second. Abbreviated ns. (CTR, ETR)

native mode: The 16-bit configuration of the 65C816 microprocessor. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

NDA: See new desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

nested loop: A loop contained within the body of another loop and executed repeatedly during each pass through the outer loop. See loop. (CTR, ETR)

nested subroutine call: A call to a subroutine from within the body of another subroutine. (CTR, ETR)

new desk accessory (NDA): A desk accessory designed to execute in a desktop, event-driven environment. Compare classic desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

newline (read) mode: A file-reading mode in which each character read from the file is compared to a specified character (called the newline character); if there is a match, the read is terminated. Newline mode is typically used to read individual lines of text, with the newline character defined as a carriage return. (PI, P16)

NewWindow parameter list: A template describing the features of a window that is to be created. A pointer to a NewWindow parameter list is a required input to the NewWindow call. (PI)

next-changeable location: The memory location that is next to have its value changed. (GSF)

nibble: A unit of data equal to half a byte, or four bits. A nibble can hold any value from 0 to 15 (\$0 and \$F hexadecimal). (CTR, ETR, P16)

NIL: Pointing to a value of 0. A memory handle is NIL if the address it points to is filled with zeros. Handles to purged memory blocks are NIL. Compare null. (GSTR, PI, P16)

NMOS: One of several methods of making integrated circuits out of silicon; a metal-oxide semiconductor device made on a p-type substrate using n-type source and drain contacts. (GSH)

nonspecial, normal memory: Memory that has no special restrictions on it. On the Apple IIGS, such memory includes banks \$2-\$DF and parts of banks \$E0 and \$E1. (GSTR)

NOT: A unary logical operator that produces a true result if its operand is false, and a false result if its operand is true. Compare AND, OR, exclusive OR. (CTR, ETR)

Note Sequencer: The Apple IIGS tool set that makes it possible to play music asynchronously in programs. (GSTR, PI)

Note Synthesizer: An Apple IIGS tool set that facilitates creation and manipulation of musical notes. (GSTR, PI)

NTSC: (1) Abbreviation for National Television Standards Committee, which defined the standard format used for transmitting broadcast video signals in the United States. (2) The standard video format defined by the NTSC; also called composite because it combines all video information, including color, into a single signal. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

null: Zero. A pointer is null if its value is all zeros. Compare NIL. (GSH, PI, P16)

null event: An event reported when there are no other events to report. (GSTR, PI)

null prefix: A prefix of zero length (and therefore nonexistent). (PI, P16)

object code: See object program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

object file: The output from an assembler or compiler, and the input to a linker. It contains machine-language instructions as well as other information. Also called object program or object code. In APW an object file cannot be loaded into memory. Compare source file, load file. (GSF, PI, P16)

object module format (OMF): The file format used in Apple IIGS object files, library files, and load files. (GSTR, PI, P16)

object program: The translated form of a program produced by a language translator such as a compiler or assembler. Also called object code. Compare source program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

object segment: A segment in an object file. (PI)

odd parity: In data transmission, the use of an extra bit set to 0 or 1 as necessary to make the total number of 1 bits an odd number; used as a means of error checking. Compare even parity, MARK parity. (CTR, ETR, GST)

offset: The number of character positions or memory locations away from a point of reference. (GSTR, PI)

OK: One of two predefined item ID numbers for dialog box buttons (OK = 1). Compare Cancel. (GSTR, PI)

OMF: See object module format. (GSTR, PI)

OMF file: Any file in object module format. (P16)

op code: See operation code. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

open: To allow access to a file. A file may not be read from or written to until it is open. (P16)

Open Apple key: A modifier key on some Apple II-family keyboards; on the Apple IIGS keyboard, the equivalent key is marked with both an Apple icon and a spinner, the icon used on some Macintosh keyboards, and called simply the Apple key. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

operand: (1) In assembly language, the part of an instruction that follows the operation code. The operand is used as a value or an address, or to calculate a value or an address. (2) In object module format, an operation code that is followed by a single value that constitutes part of an expression. The value following the operand opcode is acted on by an operator. (GSH, P16) A value to which an operator is applied. The value on which an operation code operates. Compare argument. (CTR, ETR) An item on which an operator (such as + or AND) acts. (GSF)

operating environment: The overall hardware and software setting within which a program runs. Also called execution environment. (GSTR, PI, P16)

operating system: A general-purpose program that manages the actions of the parts of the computer and its peripheral devices for the benefit of the application programs. See disk operating system. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

operating system call: A request to execute a named operating system function; also, the name of the function itself. OPEN, GET_FILE_INFO, and QUIT are ProDOS 16 operating system calls(P16)

operation code: The part of a machine-language instruction that specifies the operation to be performed. Often called op code. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

operator: A symbol or sequence of characters, such as + or AND, specifying an operation to be performed on one or more values (the operands) to produce a result. See arithmetic operator, relational operator, logical operator, unary operator, binary operator. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

option: (1) Something chosen or available as a choice; for instance, items in a menu. (2) An argument whose provision is optional. (CTR, ETR)

OR: A logical operator that produces a true result if either or both of its operands are true, and a false result if both of its operands are false. Compare exclusive OR, AND, NOT. (CTR, ETR)

origin: (1) The first memory address of a program or of a portion of one. The first instruction to be executed. (2) The location (0,0) on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane, in either global coordinates or local coordinates. (3) The upper-left corner of any rectangle (such as a boundary rectangle or port rectangle) in QuickDraw II. (4) See character origin. (GSTR, PI)

oscillator: A device that generates a vibration. In the Apple IIGS digital oscillator chip, an oscillator is an address generator that points to the next data byte in memory that represents part of a particular sound wave. (GSH, GSTR, PI)

output: Information transferred from a computer to some external destination, such as the display screen, a disk drive, a printer, or a modem. (CTR, ETR)

output routine: A machine-language routine that performs the sending of characters. The standard output routine sends characters to the screen. A different output routine might, for example, send them to a printer. (CTR, ETR)

oval: A circle or an ellipse, one of the fundamental classes of objects drawn by QuickDraw II. (GSTR, PI)

overflow: The condition that exists when an attempt is made to put more data into a given memory area than it can hold; for example, a computational result that exceeds the allowed range. (CTR, ETR)

overlay: One of a set of program segments meant to alternately occupy the same memory space. Use of overlays is one way to minimize the amount of memory a program needs. (PI)

override: To modify or cancel an instruction by issuing another one. (CTR, ETR)

overrun: A condition that occurs when the processor does not retrieve a received character from the receive data register of the Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA) before the subsequent character arrives. The ACIA automatically sets bit 2 (OVR) of its status register; subsequent characters are lost. The receive data register contains the last valid data word received. (CTR, ETR, GST)

P register: See status register. (PI)

pack: To compress data into a smaller space to conserve storage space. (GSTR, PI)

page: (1) A portion of memory 256 bytes long and beginning at an address that is an even multiple of 256. Memory blocks whose starting addresses are an even multiple of 256 are said to be page-aligned. (2) (usually capitalized) An area of main memory containing text or graphic information being displayed on the screen. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16) (1) A screenful of information on a video display. In the Apple II family of computers, a page consists of 24 lines of 40 or 80 characters each. (2) An area of main memory containing text or graphical information being displayed on the screen. (3) A segment of main memory 256 bytes long and beginning at an address that is an even multiple of 256. (CTR, ETR)

page zero: See zero page. (CTR, ETR, GST)

page-aligned: Said of a memory block that starts at a memory address that is an even multiple of 256 (a memory block attribute). See also page (1). (GSTR, PI)

paging region: In a scroll bar, the area a user clicks to move the view of the data a page at a time. (GSTR)

painting: In QuickDraw II, using the current pen pattern, drawing mask, and pen mode to fill the interior of a shape. (GSTR)

PAL: Acronym for phase alternating lines. A video standard originated in England and used in other European countries. (GSH)

palette: The set of colors from which the user can choose a color to apply to a pixel on the screen. (GSF, GSTR, PI)

parallel: (1) The simultaneous occurrence of more than one phenomenon. (2) The connection of a group of wires for the purpose of conducting bits of data simultaneously, rather than one at a time (via a serial connection). (GSH)

parallel interface: An interface in which several bits of information (typically 8 bits, or 1 byte) are transmitted simultaneously over different wires or channels. Compare serial interface. (CTR, ETR, GST)

parameter: An argument that determines the outcome of a command. For example, in the command `write(n,msg)`, `n` and `msg` are parameters. (GSF, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

parameter block: A set of contiguous memory locations set up by a calling program to pass parameters to and receive results from an operating-system function that the program calls. Every call to SmartPort must include a pointer to a properly constructed parameter block. (GSF, P16)

parameter RAM: RAM on the Apple IIGS clock chip. A battery preserves the clock settings and the RAM contents when the power is off. Control Panel settings are kept in battery RAM. (GSTR, PI)

parity: Sameness of level or count, usually the count of 1 bits in each character, used for error checking in data transmission. See even parity, MARK parity, odd parity, parity bit. (CTR, ETR, GST)

parity bit: A bit that is sometimes transmitted along with the other bits that define a serial character. It is used to check the accuracy of the transmission of the character. Even parity means that the total number of 1 bits transmitted, including the parity bit itself, is even. Odd parity means that the total number is odd. The parity bit is generated individually for each character and checked, a character at a time, at the receiving end. (GSF, GST)

part code: A number between 1 and 255 that stands for a particular part of a control. The Control Manager uses part codes to allow different parts of a control to respond in different ways. (GSTR)

partial pathname: A pathname that includes the filename of the desired file but excludes the volume directory name (and possibly one or more of the subdirectories in the path). It is the part of a pathname following a prefix—a prefix and a partial pathname together constitute a full pathname. A partial pathname does not begin with a slash because it has no volume directory name. (GSTR, PI, P16)

Pascal: A high-level programming language with statements that resemble English phrases. Pascal was designed to teach programming as a systematic approach to problem solving. Named after the philosopher and mathematician Blaise Pascal. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

Pascal string: An ASCII character string preceded by a single byte whose numerical value is the number of characters in the string. Compare C string. (GSTR, PI)

Pascal-type string: Same as Pascal string. (GSTR)

pass: A single execution of a loop. (CTR, ETR)

paste: To place the desk scrap (contents of the Clipboard—whatever was last cut or copied) at the insertion point. (GSTR, PI)

patch: To replace one or more bytes in memory or in a file with other values. The address to which the program must jump to execute a subroutine is patched into memory at load time, when the System Loader performs relocation on a file. (PI, P16)

pathname: A name that specifies a file. It is a sequence of one or more filenames separated by slashes, tracing the path through subdirectories that a program must follow to locate the file. See full pathname, partial pathname, prefix. (GSTR, PI, P16)

pathname prefix: See prefix. (GSTR, PI)

Pathname segment: segment in a load file that contains the cross-references between load files referenced by number (in the Jump Table segment) and their pathnames (listed in the file directory). The Pathname segment is created by the linker. (P16)

Pathname Table: A table constructed in memory by the System Loader. The Pathname Table contains cross-references between load files referenced by number (in the Jump Table) and by pathname (in the file directory). (PI, P16)

pattern: (1) An 8-by-8 pixel image, used to define a repeating design (such as stripes) or color. (2) A series of commands to the Note Synthesizer. (GSTR, PI)

PB register: See program bank register. (GSTR, PI)

PB register: See program bank register. (PI)

PC board: See printed-circuit board. (CTR, ETR)

PC register: A register within the 65816 microprocessor that keeps track of the memory address of the next instruction to be executed. PC stands for program counter. (GSTR, PI)

peek: To read information directly from a location in the computer's memory. (CTR, ETR)

pen: The conceptual tool with which QuickDraw II draws shapes and characters. Each GrafPort has its own pen. (GSTR, PI)

pen location: The position (on the coordinate plane) at which the next character or line will be drawn. (GSTR, PI)

pen mode: One of several Boolean operations that determine how the pen pattern is to affect an existing image. Compare text mode. (GSTR)

pen pattern: See pattern (1). (GSTR, PI)

pen size: The size of the rectangle that will be used as the drawing pen. (GSTR)

peripheral: (adj) At or outside the boundaries of the computer itself, either physically (as a peripheral device) or in a logical sense (as a peripheral card). (n) Short for peripheral device. (CTR, ETR, GST)

peripheral bus: The bus used for transmitting information between the computer and peripheral devices connected to the computer's expansion slots or ports. (CTR, ETR)

peripheral card: A hardware device placed inside a computer and connected to one of the computer's peripheral expansion slots. Peripheral cards perform a variety of functions, from controlling a disk drive to providing a clock/calendar. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI) A removable printed-circuit board that plugs into one of the seven I/O expansion slots, allowing the computer to use a peripheral device or to perform some subsidiary or peripheral function. These cards may be self-contained (such as a clock card) or an interface card (such as a disk interface card) with a cable connecting the card and the peripheral. (GSH)

peripheral device: A piece of hardware—such as a video monitor, disk drive, printer, or modem—used in conjunction with a computer and under the computer's control. Peripheral devices are often (but not necessarily) physically separate from the computer and connected to it by wires, cables, or some other form of interface. They often require peripheral cards. See device. (CTR, ETR, GST) An input or output (or input/output) device, usually external to the computer (but which may reside on a card in a peripheral-expansion slot), that performs some secondary function for the computer. Printers, disk drives, modems, and video monitors are examples of peripheral devices. See device. (GSH, GSTR, PI)

peripheral expansion slot: The seven slots at the rear of the main logic board that will accept most Apple II peripheral expansion cards. Each slot has 50 pins, which carry required power and signals to and from the peripheral cards. (GSH)

peripheral slot: See expansion slot. (CTR, ETR, GST)

phase: (1) A stage in a periodic process. A point in a cycle. For example, the 6502 and 65C816 microprocessors use a clock cycle consisting of two phases called F0 and F1. (2) The relationship between two periodic signals or processes. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

phrase: In music synthesis, a set of pointers to patterns that make it easy to build repetitive, complex passages out of simple patterns. (PI)

picture: A saved sequence of QuickDraw drawing commands (and, optionally, picture comments) that you can play back later with a single procedure call; also, the image resulting from these commands. (GSTR, PI)

PILOT: Acronym for Programmed Inquiry, Learning, Or Teaching. A high-level programming language designed for teachers and used to create computer-aided instruction (CAI) lessons that include color graphics, sound effects, lesson text, and answer checking. SuperPILOT is an enhanced version of the original Apple II PILOT programming language. (CTR, ETR)

pinning: The process of assigning positive overflows to the largest positive representable value and negative overflows to the largest negative representable value. (GSTR)

pipelining: A feature of a processor that enables it to begin fetching the next instruction before it has finished executing the current instruction. All else being equal, processors with this feature run faster than those without it. (CTR, ETR)

pixel: A contraction of picture element, the smallest dot you can draw on the screen. Also a location in video memory that corresponds to a point on the graphics screen when the viewing window includes that location. In the Super Hi-Res display on the Apple IIGS, each pixel is represented by either 2 or 4 bits. See also pixel image. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

pixel image: A graphics image picture consisting of a rectangular grid of pixels. (GSTR, PI)

pixel map: A set of values that represents the positions and states of the set of pixels making up an image. Compare bit map. (GSF, GSH, GST)

plain-styled: Said of a font or character that is not bold, italicized, underlined, or otherwise styled apart from ordinary text. (GSTR, PI)

plane: The front-to-back position of a window on the desktop. (GSTR, PI)

plotting vector: A code representing a single step in drawing a shape on the high-resolution graphics screen. The plotting vector specifies whether to plot a point at the current screen position, and in what direction to move (up, down, left, or right) before processing the next vector. (CTR, ETR)

point: (1) A unit of measurement for type; 12 points equal 1 pica, and 6 picas equal 1 inch; thus, 1 point equals 1/72 inch. (2) A relative measure (taken from the type measure) used to distinguish font size on output devices. (3) In QuickDraw II, the Y and X coordinates of a location on the coordinate plane. (GSTR, PI)

point of call: The point in a program from which a subroutine or function is called. (CTR, ETR)

pointer: (1) An item of information consisting of the memory address of some other item. For example, the 65816 stack register contains a pointer to the top of the stack. (2) The mouse pointer, an arrow-shaped cursor whose screen location is controlled by mouse movements. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

pointing device: Any device, such as a mouse, graphics tablet, or light pen, that can be used to specify locations on the computer screen. (GSTR, PI)

poke: To store information directly into a location in the computer's memory. (CTR, ETR)

polygon: Any sequence of connected lines. (GSTR, PI)

pop: To remove the top entry from a stack, moving the stack pointer to the entry below it. Synonymous with pull. Compare push. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

port: (1) A socket on the back panel of the computer where the user can plug in a cable to connect a peripheral device, another computer, or a network. (2) A graphic port (GrafPort). (GST, GSTR, PI) In the Apple IIc, slots are called ports. (CTR)

port rectangle: A rectangle that describes the active region of a GrafPort's pixel map—the part that QuickDraw II can draw into. The content region of a window on the desktop corresponds to the window's port rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

portrait mode: A printing mode in which text prints from left to right on the paper. (GSTR)

portRect: The GrafPort field that defines the port's port rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

position-independent: Code that is written specifically so that its execution is unaffected by its position in memory. It can be moved without needing to be relocated. Compare absolute, relocatable. (PI, P16)

post: To place an event in the event queue for later processing. (GSTR, PI)

power supply: A circuit that draws electrical power from a power outlet and converts it to the kind of power the computer can use. (CTR, ETR) The large metal box inside the Apple IIGS that divides and conditions the household current, supplying the voltages required by the main logic board and some peripheral devices. (GSH) The metal case inside most Apple II and Macintosh computers that houses the power supply. The Apple IIc uses an external power supply case. (CTR, ETR)

PR#: An Applesoft BASIC command that directs output to a slot or a machine-language program. It activates an output routine in the ROM on a peripheral card or in equivalent RAM by changing the address of the standard output routine used by the computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

precedence: The order in which operators are applied in evaluating an expression. Precedence varies from language to language, but usually resembles the precedence rules of algebra. (CTR, ETR)

prefix: A pathname starting with a volume name and ending with a subdirectory name. It is the part of a full pathname that precedes a partial pathname—a prefix and a partial pathname together constitute a full pathname. A prefix always starts with a slash (/) because a volume directory name always starts with a slash. (GSTR, PI, P16)

prefix number: A code used to represent a particular prefix. Under ProDOS 16, there are nine prefix numbers, each consisting of a number (or asterisk) followed by a slash: 0/, 1/, ..., 8/, and */. (PI, P16)

prestyled: Said of a font that has a certain style or combination of styles built into the font's design. (GSTR)

Print Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that allows an application to use standard QuickDraw II routines to print text or graphics on a printer. (GSTR, PI)

print record: A record containing all the information needed by the Print Manager to perform a particular printing job. (GSTR, PI)

printed-circuit board: A hardware component of a computer or other electronic device, consisting of a flat, rectangular piece of rigid material, commonly Fiberglass, to which integrated circuits and other electronic components are connected. (CTR, ETR)

printer information subrecord: A data structure within the print record that contains the information needed for page composition. (GSTR)

printing loop: The page-by-page cycle that an application goes through when it prints a document. (GSTR, PI)

private scrap: A buffer (and its contents) set up by an application for cutting and pasting, analogous to but apart from the desk scrap. (GSTR, PI)

private symbol: A label in a segment that may be referenced by other segments in the same file, but not by segments in other files. (PI)

procedure: In the Pascal and Logo programming languages, a sequence of instructions that work as a unit; approximately equivalent to the term function in C or subroutine in BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GST)

processor: The hardware component of a computer that performs the actual computation by directly executing instructions represented in machine language and stored in main memory. See microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GST)

processor status register: See status register. (PI)

ProDOS: A disk operating system for the Apple II family of computers. ProDOS stands for Professional Disk Operating System, and includes ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16. Compare Disk Operating System (DOS). (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

ProDOS 16: A disk operating system developed for 65816 native-mode operation on the Apple IIGS. It is functionally similar to ProDOS 8 but more powerful. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

ProDOS 8: A disk operating system developed for standard Apple II computers. It runs on 6502-series microprocessors and on the Apple IIGS when the 65C816 processor is in 6502 emulation mode. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

ProDOS command: Any one of the 28 commands recognized by ProDOS. (CTR, ETR)

program: (n) A set of instructions describing actions for a computer to perform in order to accomplish some task, conforming to the rules and conventions of a particular programming language. (v) To write a program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

program bank register: The 65C816 register whose contents form the high-order byte of all 3-byte code address operands. Also called PB register. (GSTR, PI)

program counter: See PC register. (GSTR, PI)

program line: The basic unit of an Applesoft BASIC program, consisting of one or more statements separated by colons (:). (CTR, ETR)

program status register: A register in the 65C816 microprocessor that contains flags reflecting the various aspects of machine state and operation results. See status register. (GSTR, PI)

programmable read-only memory (PROM): A type of ROM device that is programmed after fabrication, unlike ordinary ROM devices, which are programmed during fabrication. (GSH, GST)

programming language: A set of symbols and associated rules or conventions for writing programs. BASIC, Logo, and Pascal are programming languages. (CTR, ETR, GST)

PROM: See programmable read-only memory. (GSH, GST)

prompt: A message on the screen that a program provides when it needs a response from the user. A prompt is usually in the form of a symbol, a dialog box, or a menu of choices. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

prompt character: A text character displayed on the screen, usually just to the left of a cursor, where your next action is expected. The prompt character often identifies the program or component of the system that's prompting you. For example, Applesoft BASIC uses a square bracket prompt character ([); Integer BASIC, an angle bracket (>); and the system Monitor program, an asterisk (*). (CTR, ETR, GST)

prompt line: A specific area on the display reserved for prompts. (CTR, ETR)

proportionally spaced: Said of a font whose characters vary in width, so the amount of horizontal space needed for each character is proportional to its width. Compare monospaced. (GSTR, PI)

protocol: A formal set of rules for the interchange of information between two programs or devices; for example, the rules for sending and receiving data on a communication line. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

Protocol Converter: A set of machine language routines used in the Apple II family for performing block device I/O. See Smartport. (CTR) A set of ROM-based assembly-language routines used to support external I/O devices such as the Apple Memory Expansion Card and the Apple 3.5 Drive. (GST)

pseudo-type: A type that provides some additional information about a parameter of a toolbox routine. (GSTR)

pull: To remove the top entry from a stack, this instruction moves the stack pointer to the entry below it. Synonymous with pop. Compare push. (GSH, P16)

pull-down menu: A set of choices for actions that appears near the top of the display screen in a desktop application, usually overlaying the present contents of the screen without disrupting them. Dragging through the menu and releasing the mouse button while a command is highlighted chooses that command. (GSTR, PI)

purge: To temporarily deallocate a memory block. The Memory Manager purges a block by setting its master pointer to NIL (0). All handles to the pointer are still valid, so the block can be reconstructed quickly. Compare dispose. (GSTR, PI, P16)

purge level: A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager may purge the block if it needs additional memory space. Purgeable blocks have different purge levels, or priorities for purging; these levels are set by Memory Manager calls. (PI)

purge level: A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager may purge the block if it needs additional memory space. Purgeable blocks have different purge levels, or priorities for purging; these levels are set by Memory Manager calls. (GSTR, P16)

purgeable: A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager may purge the block if it needs additional memory space. Purgeable blocks have different purge levels, or priorities for purging; these levels are set by Memory Manager calls. (P16)

push: To add an item to the top of a stack, moving the stack pointer to the next entry above the top. Compare push. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

Quagmire register: On the Apple IIGS, the name given to the 8 bits comprising the speed-control bit and the shadowing bits. From the Monitor program, the user can read from or write to the Quagmire register to access those bits, even though they are actually in separate registers. (GSF)

queue: A list in which entries are added (pushed) at one end and removed (pulled) at the other end, causing entries to be removed in first-in, first-out (FIFO) order. Compare stack (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

QuickDraw II: The Apple IIGS tool set that controls the graphics environment and draws simple objects and text. Other tools call QuickDraw II to draw such things as windows. (GSTR, PI)

QuickDraw II Auxiliary: An Apple IIGS tool set that provides extensions to the capabilities of QuickDraw II. (PI)

QuickDraw II Auxiliary: The Apple IIGS tool set that provides extensions to the capabilities of QuickDraw II. (GSTR)

QuickDraw II Auxiliary icon record: A data structure that defines the appearance of an icon. (GSTR)

quit: To terminate execution in an orderly manner. Apple IIGS applications quit by making a ProDOS 16 QUIT call or the equivalent. (GSTR, PI)

quit return stack: A stack maintained in memory by ProDOS 16. It contains a list of programs that have terminated but are scheduled to return when the presently executing program is finished. (PI, P16)

QWERTY keyboard: The standard layout of keys on a typewriter keyboard; its name is formed from the first six letters on the top row of letter keys. Compare Dvorak keyboard. (CTR, ETR, GST)

radio button: A common type of control in dialog boxes. Radio buttons are small circles organized into families; clicking any button on turns off all the others in the family, like the buttons on a car radio. See also check box. (GSTR, PI)

radio frequency (RF): Broadcast frequency over which radio and television operate. Generally defined as the radio spectrum between 3 MHz and 3000 MHz. (GSH)

radio-frequency modulator: A device used to raise video signals to a frequency that may be received and displayed by a television, as a substitute for a standard video monitor when one is not available. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

RAM: See random-access memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

RAM disk: A feature of some operating systems which makes it possible to use programmable memory (RAM) as a disk volume. Large applications designed for machines with limited amounts of RAM must load program segments from disk as needed; on machines with RAM disk, the entire application is first loaded into RAM, where it runs as if still resident on disk, but much faster. (GSF, GSH, GST)

random-access device: See block device. (GSH, P16)

random-access memory (RAM): Memory in which information can be referred to in an arbitrary or random order. As an analogy, a book is a random-access storage device in that it can be opened and read at any point. RAM usually means the part of memory available for programs from a disk; the programs and other data are lost when the computer is turned off. A computer with 512K RAM has 512 kilobytes available to the user. (Technically, the read-only memory (ROM) is also random access, and what's called RAM should correctly be termed read-write memory.) Compare read-only memory, read-write memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, GSTR, PI)

random-access text file: A text file that is partitioned into an unlimited number of uniform-length compartments called records. When you open a random-access text file for the first time, you must specify its record length. No record is placed in the file until written to. Each record can be individually read from or written to—hence, random-access. (CTR, ETR)

range mode: In the List Manager, a selection mode that allows the user to select a range of members in a list. (GSTR)

raster: The pattern of parallel lines making up the image on a video display screen. The image is produced by controlling the brightness of successive points on the individual lines of the raster. (CTR, ETR)

RDKEY: The firmware routine that a program uses to read a single keystroke from the keyboard. (GSF)

read: To transfer information into the computer's memory from outside the computer (such as a disk drive or modem) or into the computer's processor from a source external to the processor (such as the keyboard or main memory). (CTR, ETR)

read-only memory (ROM): Memory whose contents can be read, but not changed; used for storing firmware. Information is placed into read-only memory once, during manufacture; it then remains there permanently, even when the computer's power is turned off. Compare random-access memory, read-write memory, write-only memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, GSTR, PI) Nonvolatile, permanent memory. ROM ICs may be written once, usually in the development of the computer. Data are retained in the memory even after power is disconnected. Special ROM ICs allow you to change the data in them under specific conditions such as ultraviolet light (EPROMs [erasable programmable read-only memory]), or high voltages (EEPROMs [electrically erasable programmable read-only memory]). Normally, however, ROM ICs are written once. (GSH)

read-write memory: Memory whose contents can be both read and changed (or written to); commonly called RAM. The information contained in read-write memory is erased when the computer's power is turned off and is permanently lost unless it has been saved on a disk or other storage device. Compare random-access memory, read-only memory. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

real font: A font that exists on disk or was added by an application and marked as real. Compare unreal font. (GSTR)

real number: In computer usage, a number that may include a fractional part; represented inside the computer in floating-point form. Because a real number is of infinite precision, this representation is usually approximate. Compare integer. (CTR, ETR)

real-time clock (RTC): A custom IC that, once set, retains the current time of day, month, and year. Chapter 7 provides details of the RTC and other built-in I/O devices. (GSH)

receive data register: A read-only register in the serial port ACIA (at \$C098 for port 1 and \$C0A8 for port 2) that stores the most recent character successfully received. (CTR)

recharge routine: The function that supplies data to the output device when background printing is taking place. (GSF)

record: A component of an load segment. All OMF file segments are composed of records, some of which are program code and some of which contain cross-reference or relocation information. (P16)

rectangle: One of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. Rectangles are completely defined by two points—their upper-left and lower-right corners on the coordinate plane. The upper-left corner of any rectangle is its origin. (GSTR, PI)

reentrant: Said of a routine that is able to accept a call while one or more previous calls to it are pending, without invalidating the previous calls. Under certain conditions, the Apple IIGS Scheduler manages execution of routines that are not reentrant. (GST, GSTR, PI), P16

reference: (n) The name of a segment or entry point to a segment; same as symbolic reference. (v) To refer to a symbolic reference or to use one in an expression or as an address. (P16)

region: An arbitrary area or set of areas on the QuickDraw coordinate plane. The outline of a region must be one or more closed loops. (GSTR, PI)

register: A location in a processor or other chip where an item of information is held and modified under program control. (CTR, ETR, GST)

relational operator: An operator, such as >, that operates on numeric values to produce a logical result. Compare arithmetic operator, logical operator. (CTR, ETR)

Reload segment: a load-file segment that is always loaded from the file at program startup, regardless of whether the rest of the program is loaded from file or restarted from memory. Reload segments contain initialization information, without which certain types of programs would not be restartable. (P16) A segment that is always reloaded from disk when a program is executed, even if the program is in a dormant state in computer memory. Some programs require RELOAD segments in order to be restartable. (PI)

RELOC record: A part of a relocation dictionary that contains relocation information for local (within-segment) references. (P16)

relocatable: Characteristic of a load segment or other OMF program code that includes no references to specific address, and so can be loaded at any memory address. A relocatable segment consists of a code image followed by a relocation dictionary. Compare absolute. (GSTR, PI, P16)

relocate: To modify a file or segment at load time so that it will execute correctly at its current memory location. Relocation consists of patching the proper values onto address operands. The loader relocates load segments when it loads them into memory. See also relocatable. (P16)

relocation: The act of modifying a program in memory so that its address operands correctly reflect its location and the locations of other segments in memory. Relocation is performed by the System Loader when a relocatable segment is first loaded into memory. (GSTR, PI)

relocation dictionary: A portion of a load segment that contains relocation information necessary to modify the memory image portion of the segment. See relocate. (PI, P16)

repeat delay: The time interval before the first auto-key event is generated. (GSTR)

repeat speed: The time interval between auto-key events, except for the first auto-key event. See also repeat delay. (GSTR)

Request-To-Send: An RS-232-C signal from a DTE to a DCE that serves to prepare the DCE for data transmission. (CTR)

reserved memory: Memory not managed by the Memory Manager; that is, memory that is marked as busy at startup time. (GSTR)

reserved word: A word or sequence of characters reserved by a programming language for some special use and therefore unavailable as a variable name in a program. (CTR, ETR)

resident: See memory-resident, disk-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

resource: A type of organization for certain components of Macintosh files. Resources provide a convenient means for manipulating the fixed (unchanging) parts of a program file. (PI)

resource editor: A program for editing resources, especially data in a program, without having to recompile the program. (GST, PI)

Resource Manager: The Macintosh toolbox component that retrieves, manipulates, and disposes of resources. (GST, PI)

restart: To reactivate a dormant program in the computer's memory. The System Loader can restart dormant programs if all their static segments are still in memory. If any critical part of a dormant program has been purged by the Memory Manager, the program must be reloaded from disk instead of restarted. (PI, P16)

restartable: Said of a program that reinitializes its variables and makes no assumptions about machine state each time it gains control. Only restartable programs can be resurrected from a dormant state in memory. (PI, P16)

result: An item of information returned to a calling program from a function. Compare value. (P16)

return address: The point in a program to which control returns on completion of a subroutine or function. (CTR, ETR, GST)

RF: See radio frequency. (GSH)

RF modulator: See radio-frequency modulator. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

RGB: Abbreviation for red, green, and blue. A method of displaying color video by transmitting these three colors as three separate signals. There are two ways of using RGB with computers: TTL RGB, which allows the color signals to take on only a few discrete values; and analog RGB, which allows the color signals to take on any values between their upper and lower limits, for a wide range of colors. The Apple IIGS uses analog RGB; connect only RGB monitors using analog RGB to the RGB video connector at the rear of the computer. Compare composite video. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

RGB monitor: A type of color monitor that receives separate signals for each color (red, green, and blue). Compare composite video. (CTR, ETR, GST)

right scroll bar: The control the user selects to scroll vertically through the data in the window. (GSTR)

ROM: See read-only memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

ROM disk: A feature of some operating systems making it possible to use read-only memory (ROM) as a disk volume. Often used for making applications permanently resident. See also RAM disk. (GSF, GSH, GST)

ROM font: The font contained in system ROM. (GSTR)

rounded result: The nearest representable value to the actual value, with ties going to the value with the larger magnitude. (GSTR)

rounded-corner rectangle: One of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. The rounded corners of this type of rectangle are defined by an oval height and oval width. (GSTR)

routine: A part of a program that accomplishes some task subordinate to the overall task of the program. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

row: A horizontal arrangement of character cells or graphics pixels on the screen. (CTR, ETR, GST)

RS-232: A common standard for serial data communication interfaces. (GSF, GST)

RS-232 cable: Any cable that is wired in accordance with the RS-232 standard, which is the common serial data communication interface standard. (CTR, ETR)

RS-232-C: A common standard for serial data-communication interfaces. (GSH)

RS-422: A standard for serial data-communication interfaces, different from the RS-232 standard in its electrical characteristics and in its use of differential pairs for data signals. The serial ports on the Apple IIGS use RS-422 devices modified so as to be compatible with RS-232-C devices. (GSF, GSH, GST)

RTC: See read-only memory. (GSH)

RTI: Return from Interrupt, a 65816 assembly-language instruction. (PI)

RTL (Return from Subroutine Long): Return from subroutine Long; a 65C816 assembly-language instruction. It is used in conjunction with a JSL instruction. (GSTR, PI, P16)

RTS (Return from Subroutine): Return from Subroutine; a 6502 and 65C816 assembly-language instruction. It is used in conjunction with a JSR instruction. (GSTR, PI, P16)

RTS: See Request-To-Send. (CTR)

run: (1) To execute a program. When a program runs, the computer performs the instructions. (2) To load a program into main memory from a peripheral storage medium, such as a disk, and execute it. (CTR, ETR)

run-time library file: A load file containing program segments—each of which can be used in any number of programs—that the System Loader loads dynamically when they are needed. (P16)

S register: See stack register. (GSTR, PI)

SANE (Standard Apple Numeric Environment): The set of methods that provides the basis for floating-point calculations in Apple computers. SANE meets all requirements for extended-precision, floating-point arithmetic as prescribed by IEEE Standard 754 and ensures that all floating-point operations are performed consistently and return the most accurate results possible. See Standard Apple Numeric Environment. (GST, GSTR, PI)

SANE Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that performs high-precision floating-point calculations, following SANE standards. (GSTR, PI)

sapling file: An organizational form of a ProDOS 16 standard file. A sapling file consists of a single index block and up to 256 data blocks. (P16)

save: To store information by transferring the information from main memory to a disk. Work not saved disappears when you turn off the computer or when the power is interrupted. (CTR, ETR)

scaled font: A font that is created by the Font Manager by calculation from a real font of a different size. (GSTR, PI)

scaling: The process of taking all characters of a real font and making them bigger or smaller to generate a requested font. (GSTR)

scan line: A single horizontal line of pixels on the screen. It corresponds to a single sweep of the electron gun in the video display tube. (GSTR, PI)

scan line control byte (SCB): A byte in memory that controls certain properties, such as available colors and number of pixels, for a scan line on the Apple IIGS. Each scan line has its own SCB. (GSTR, PI)

SCB: See scan line control byte. (GSTR)

SCC: Abbreviation for Serial Communications Controller, a type of communications IC used in the Apple IIGS. The SCC can run synchronous data transmission protocol and thus transmit data at faster rates than the ACIA. See Serial Communications Controller. (GSF, GSH, GST)

Scheduler: The Apple IIGS tool set that manages requests to execute interrupted software that is not reentrant. If, for example, an interrupt handler needs to make system software calls, it must do so through the Scheduler because ProDOS 16 is not reentrant. Applications normally need not use the Scheduler because ProDOS 16 is not in an interrupted state when it processes applications' system calls. (GSTR, PI, P16)

schematic diagram: A diagram using special figures to represent ICs, logic functions, and interconnecting wires, to describe a circuit. Schematic diagrams for the Apple IIGS main logic board are located in the Addendum. (GSH)

scrap count: A count that indicates how many times the desk scrap has changed. (GSTR)

Scrap Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that supports the desk scrap, which allows data to be copied from one application to another (or from one place to another within an application). (GSTR, PI)

screen: See display screen. (CTR, ETR)

screen holes: Locations in the text display buffer (text Page 1) used for temporary storage either by I/O routines running in peripheral-card ROM or by firmware routines addressed as if they were in card ROM. Text Page 1 occupies memory from \$0400 to \$07FF; the screen holes are locations in that area that are neither displayed nor modified by the display firmware. (GSF, GSH, GST)

scroll: To move all the text on the screen upward or downward, and, in some cases, sideways. See viewport, window. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

scroll bar: A rectangular bar that may be along the right or bottom of a window. Clicking or dragging in the scroll bar causes the view of the document to change. (GSTR, PI)

SECAM: A French acronym meaning "sequential color with memory." A video standard originating in France and used in the USSR and other countries. (GSH)

sector: A division of a track on a disk. When a disk is formatted, its surface is divided into tracks and sectors. (GSH, P16)

sector: See track. (GSF)

seedling file: An organizational form of a ProDOS 16 standard file. A seedling file consists of a single data block. (P16)

segment: A component of an OMF file, consisting of a header and a body. In object files, each segment incorporates one or more subroutines. In load files, each segment incorporates one or more object segments. (PI, P16)

segment kind: A numerical designation used to classify a segment in object module format. It is the value of the KIND field in the segment's header. (PI, P16)

selection range: The series of characters where the next editing action will occur. (GSTR)

self-booting: Said of a program that executes automatically when the computer is turned on or reset. (PI)

semiconductor: A class of materials whose resistivity lies between that of conductors and insulators, for example, germanium and silicon. Solid-state electronics is based on the use of semiconductors. (GSH)

sequence: A series of commands that tells the computer what notes to play and when. (PI)

sequential-access device: See character device. (P16)

serial: A single-wire connection for the purpose of transferring bits of data one at a time, usually between a computer and a peripheral device. Compare parallel. (GSH)

Serial Communications Controller (SCC): A type of communications IC used in the Apple IIGS. The SCC can run synchronous data transmission protocol and thus transmit data at faster rates than the ACIA. Compare ACIA. (GSH, GST)

serial interface: A standard method, such as RS-232, for transmitting data serially (as a sequence of bits). (GSTR, PI) An interface in which information is transmitted sequentially, a bit at a time, over a single wire or channel. Compare parallel interface. (CTR, ETR, GST)

serial port: The connector for a peripheral device that uses a serial interface. (GST, GSTR, PI) The two connectors located at the back of the Apple IIGS main logic board that provide a means for communicating with peripherals (such as printers and local area networks) using a serial interface. (GSH)

setup time: The amount of time a signal must be valid in advance of some event. Compare hold time. (CTR, ETR)

shadowing: The process whereby any changes made to one part of the Apple IIGS memory are automatically and simultaneously copied into another part. When shadowing is on, information written to bank \$00 or \$01 is automatically copied into equivalent locations in bank \$E0 or \$E1. Likewise, any changes to bank \$E0 or \$E1 are immediately reflected in bank \$00 or \$01. (GSF, GSH, P16)

Shaston: The Apple IIGS system font. (GSTR, PI)

shell: A program that provides an operating environment for other programs, and that is not removed from memory when those programs are running. For example, the APW Shell provides a command processor interface between the user and the other components of APW, and remains in memory when APW utility programs are running. A shell is one type of controlling program. (PI)

shell application: A type of program that is launched from a shell and runs under its control. Shell applications are ProDOS 16 file type \$B5. In APW, compilers and certain Shell commands are shell applications that are launched from the APW Shell. (PI, P16)

shell call: A request from a program to the APW Shell to perform a specific function. (PI)

shut down: To remove from memory or otherwise make unavailable, as a tool set that is no longer needed or an application that has quit. (GSTR, PI)

silicon: A solid, crystalline chemical element (symbol Si) from which integrated circuits are made. Silicon is a semiconductor; that is, it conducts electricity better than insulators, but not as well as metallic conductors. Silicon should not be confused with silica—that is, silicon dioxide, such as quartz, opal, or sand—or with silicone, any of a group of organic compounds containing silicon. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

simple variable: A variable that is not an element of an array. (CTR, ETR)

Simplified Keyboard: See Dvorak keyboard. (GST)

single mode: In the List Manager, a selection mode that allows the user to select only one member of a list at once; that is, when the user drags the mouse, the selection moves from one member to another. (GSTR)

640 mode: An Apple IIGS video display mode, 640 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (PI)

6502: The microprocessor used in the Apple II, in the Apple II Plus, and in early models of the Apple IIe. The 6502 is an NMOS device with an 8-bit data bus and a 16-bit address bus. (PI)

65C816: The version of the 65816 microprocessor used in the Apple IIGS. The 65C816 is a CMOS device. (PI)

65816: A general term for the type of microprocessor used in the Apple IIGS. The 65816 is related to, but more advanced than, the 6502 microprocessor. It has a 16-bit data bus and a 24-bit address bus. (PI)

65816 assembly language: A low-level programming language written for the 65816 family of microprocessors. (PI)

size box: A small region in the lower right corner of a window that the user can drag to change the size of the window. (GSTR)

slop rectangle: The rectangle that allows the user some margin for error when moving the mouse. (GSTR)

slot: A narrow socket inside the computer where the user can install peripheral cards. Also called an expansion slot. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

SmartPort: A set of firmware routines supporting multiple block devices connected to the Apple IIGS disk port. See also extended SmartPort call and standard SmartPort call. (GSF, GSH, PI)

Smartport: A set of machine language routines used in the Apple II family for performing block device I/O. See Protocol Converter. (CTR)

smoothing: A LaserWriter printing option that asks the system to smooth out any bit-mapped fonts with jagged edges. (GSTR)

soft switch: Also called a software switch; a means of changing some feature of the computer from within a program. For example, DIP switch settings on ImageWriter printers can be overridden with soft switches.

Specifically, a soft switch is a location in memory that produces some special effect whenever its contents are read or written. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

software: A collective term for programs, the instructions that tell the computer what to do. Software is usually stored on disks. Compare firmware, hardware. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI) A group of instructions to the microprocessor, instructing it to perform certain functions, such as performing computations, displaying data on a monitor, reading data from and writing data to a disk. The group of instructions is known collectively as a program. Compare application program. (GSH)

sound GLU (general logic unit): The interface chip between the system hardware and the sound hardware. (GSTR)

Sound Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that provides low-level access to the sound hardware. (GSTR, PI)

source: See source location. (PI)

source code: See source program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

source file: An ASCII file consisting of instructions written in a particular language, such as Pascal or assembly language. An assembler or compiler converts source files into object files. (GSF, PI, P16)

source location: The location (memory buffer or portion of the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) from which data such as text or graphics are copied. Compare destination location. See also source rectangle, destination rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

source program: The form of a program given to a language translator, such as a compiler or assembler, for conversion into another form; sometimes called source code. Compare object program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

source rectangle: The rectangle (on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) where text or graphics are drawn when transferred from somewhere else. Compare destination rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

space character: A text character whose printed representation is a blank space, typed from the keyboard by pressing the Space bar. (CTR, ETR)

SPACE parity: A bit value of 0 appended to a binary number for transmission. The receiving device can look for this value on each character as a means of error checking. (CTR)

sparse file: A variation of the organizational forms of ProDOS 16 standard files. A sparse file may be either a sapling file or a tree file; what makes it sparse is the fact that its logical size (defined by its EOF) is greater than its actual size on disk. This occurs when one or more data blocks contain nothing but zeros. Those data blocks are considered to be part of the file, but they are not actually allocated on disk until nonzero data is written to them. (P16)

special memory: On an Apple IIGS, all of banks \$00 and \$01 and all display memory in banks \$E0 and \$E1. It is the memory directly accessed by standard Apple II programs running on the Apple IIGS. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

spool printing: A two-step printing method used to print graphics on the ImageWriter. In the first step, it writes out (spools) a representation of your document's printed image to a disk file or to memory. IN the second step, this information is converted into a bit image and printed. Compare draft printing. (GSTR, PI)

SRQ list: A special tool mechanism that can be used to poll the Apple Desktop Bus for data from specific devices. (GSTR)

SRQ list completion routine: Used in conjunction with the ADB Tool Set routine AsyncADBReceive, this completion routine obtains ADB data from a buffer. The only major difference between this routine and the AsyncADBReceive completion routine is that the SRQ list routine has an extra return address on the stack when it is called. Compare AsyncADBReceive completion routine. (GSTR)

SSC: Abbreviation for Super Serial Card, a peripheral card that enables an Apple II to communicate with serial devices. (GSF)

stack: A list in which entries are added (pushed) and removed (pulled) at one end only (the top of the stack), causing entries to be removed in last-in, first-out (LIFO) order. The stack usually refers to the particular stack pointed to by the 65C816's stack register. Compare queue. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, , GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

stack pointer: See stack register. (GSTR, PI)

stack register: A hardware register in the 65C816 processor that contains the address of the top of the processor's stack. (GSF, GSH)

stack register: A register in the 65816 processor that indicates the next available memory address in the stack. Also called S register. (GSTR, PI, P16)

stage byte: Determines the actions taken by an alert. See also alert stage. (GSTR)

standard Apple II: Any computer in the Apple II family except the Apple IIGS. That includes the Apple II, the Apple II Plus, the Apple IIe, and the Apple IIc. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

Standard Apple Numerics Environment (SANE): The set of methods that provides the basis for floating-point calculations in Apple computers. SANE meets all requirements for extended-precision, floating-point arithmetic as prescribed by IEEE Standard 754 and ensures that all floating-point operations are performed consistently and return the most accurate results possible. (GST, GSTR, PI)

standard file: One of the two principal categories of ProDOS 16 files. Standard files contain whatever data they were created to hold; they have no predefined internal format. Compare directory file. (P16)

Standard File Operations Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that creates a standard user interface for opening and closing files. (GSTR)

Standard File Operations Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that creates a standard user interface for opening and closing files. (PI)

standard instruction: An instruction automatically present when no superseding instruction has been received. (CTR, ETR)

standard linker (APW): One aspect of the linker supplied with APW. The operation of the standard linker is automatic. Compare advanced linker. (PI)

standard SmartPort call: A SmartPort call that allows data transfer to or from anywhere in standard Apple II memory, or the lowest 64K of Apple IIGS memory. Compare extended SmartPort call. (GSF)

standard window controls: The window controls that allow the user to scroll through the data in the window, change the window's shape, or close the window. They also provide information about the document currently displayed in the window. (GSTR, PI)

START: The name of the program in the SYSTEM/subdirectory of the startup disk that is launched automatically when the system is booted. START is typically a finder or program launcher. (PI)

start bit: A transition from a MARK signal to a SPACE signal for one bit-time, indicating that next string of bits represents a character. (CTR)

start bit: One or two bits that indicate the beginning of a character in a string of serially transmitted characters. (GST)

start up: To get the system or application program running. (PI)

start up: To get the system running. It involves loading system software from disk, and then loading and running an application. Also called boot. (P16)

start up: To get the system running. Starting up involves loading system software from disk, and then loading and running an application. Also called boot. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

starting value: The value assigned to the index variable on the first pass through a loop. (CTR, ETR)

startup disk: A disk with all the necessary program files—such as the Finder and System files contained in the System folder in Macintosh—to set the computer into operation. In Apple II, sometimes called a boot disk. (CTR, ETR, GST)

statement: A unit of a program in a high-level language that specifies an action for the computer to perform. A statement typically corresponds to several instructions of machine language. (CTR, ETR)

static segment: A program segment that must be loaded when the program is started and cannot be removed from memory until execution terminates. Compare dynamic segment. (GSTR, PI, P16)

static text: Text on the screen that cannot be altered by the user. (GSTR, PI)

status register: A location in the ACIA (at \$C099 for port 1 and \$C0A9 for port 2) that stores the state of two RS-232-C signals and the state of the transmit and receive data registers, as well as the outcome of the most recent character transfer. (CTR) A register in the 65816 microprocessor that contains flags reflecting the various aspects of machine state and operation results. (PI)

step value: The amount by which the index variable changes on each pass through a loop. (CTR, ETR)

stop bit: A bit indicating the end of a character in a string of serially transmitted characters. (GST) A MARK signal following a data string (or the optional parity bit), indicating the end of a character. (CTR)

storage type: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file that describes the file's organizational form (such as directory file, seedling file, or sapling file). (P16)

string: A sequence of characters. See C string, Pascal string. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

string bounds rectangle: The smallest rectangle that would enclose all the foreground and background pixels of a string if the string were to be drawn. (GSTR)

strobe: A signal whose change is used to trigger some action. (CTR, ETR, GST)

structure region: An entire window: its content region plus its frame region. (GSTR, PI)

style dialog box: A dialog box that allows the user to specify formatting information, page size, and printer options. (GSTR, PI)

style subrecord: A data structure within the print record that contains information gathered from the user via the style and job dialog boxes. (GSTR)

styled variation: An italicized, bold, underlined, or otherwise altered version of a plain-styled character or font. (GSTR, PI)

subdirectory: A file that contains information about other files. In a hierarchical file system, files are accessed through the subdirectories that reference them. (GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

subroutine: A part of a program that can be executed on request from another point in the program and that returns control, on completion, to the point of the request. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

Super Hi-Res: Either of two high-resolution Apple IIGS display modes. 320 mode consists of an array of pixels 320 wide by 200 high, with 16 available colors; 640 mode is an array 640 wide by 200 high, with 16 available colors (with restrictions). (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

swap pair: A pair of oscillators that form a functional unit (called a generator) when the digital oscillator chip (DOC) is in swap mode. (GSTR)

switch event: An event that indicates the application is being returned to after being switched out of by a switcher-type application. (GSTR, PI)

switcher: A controlling program that rapidly transfers execution among several applications. (GSTR, PI, P16)

symbolic reference: A name or label, such as the name of a subroutine, that is used to refer to a location in a program. When a program is linked, all symbolic references are resolved; when the program is loaded, actual memory addresses are patched into the program to replace the symbolic references. (This process is called relocation.) (PI)

sync signal: A signal which exists for the purpose of synchronizing two devices. Frequently generated by a video generator and used by a video monitor to synchronize the video display to the separate video information. In the Apple IIGS, the sync signal is mixed with the video information resulting in the composite video signal. (GSH)

synchronous: A mode of data transmission in which a constant time interval exists between transmission of successive bits, characters, or events. Compare asynchronous. (CTR, ETR, GST)

synchronous transmission: A transmission process that uses a clocking signal to ensure an integral number of unit (time) intervals between any two characters. Compare asynchronous transmission. (CTR, ETR)

syntax: (1) The rules governing the structure of statements or instructions in a programming language. (2) A representation of a command that specifies all the possible forms the command can take. (CTR, ETR)

synthesizer: (1) A hardware device capable of creating sound digitally and converting it into an analog waveform that you can hear. (2) By analogy, any sound-making entity, such as the Free-Form Synthesizer in the Sound Tool Set. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

system: A coordinated collection of interrelated and interacting parts organized to perform some function or achieve some purpose—for example, a computer system comprising a processor, keyboard, monitor, disk drive, and software. (CTR, ETR, GST, P16)

system call: See operating system call. (P16)

system clock: See clock (1). (GSTR)

system configuration: See configuration. (CTR, ETR, GST)

system disk: A disk that contains the operating system and other system software needed to run applications. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

system event mask: A set of flags that control which event types get posted into the event queue by the Event Manager. (GSTR, PI)

system failure: The unintentional termination of program execution due to a severe software error. (GSTR, PI)

System Failure Manager: A firmware program that processes fatal errors by displaying a message on the screen and halting execution. (P16) A part of the Miscellaneous Tool Set that processes fatal errors by displaying a message on the screen and halting execution. (GSTR, PI)

system file: See system program. (P16)

system file level: A number between \$00 and \$FF associated with each open ProDOS 16 file. Every time a file is opened, the current value of the system file level is assigned to it. If the system file level is changed (by a SET_LEVEL call), all subsequently opened files will have the new level assigned to them. By manipulating the system file level, a controlling program can easily close or flush files opened by its subprograms. (PI, P16)

system folder: The SYSTEM/subdirectory on a ProDOS 16 system disk. (GSTR, PI)

system font: The font that QuickDraw II uses as the default current font when a new GrafPort is opened. (GSTR)

system library prefix: ProDOS 16 prefix number 2/. It specifies the directory containing library files used by system software. (PI)

System Loader: The program that manages the loading and relocation of load segments (programs) into the Apple IIGS memory. The System Loader works closely with ProDOS 16 and the Memory Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

system menu bar: The menu bar that always appears at the top of the screen in desktop applications. It contains all of the commonly used functions such as File, Edit, and so on. Compare window menu bar. (GSTR, PI)

system prefix (ProDOS 8): The one prefix maintained by ProDOS 8. (PI)

system program: (1) A software component of a computer system that supports application programs by managing system resources such as memory and I/O devices. Also called system software. (2) Under ProDOS 8, a stand-alone and potentially self-booting application. A ProDOS 8 system program is of file type \$FF; if it is self-booting, its filename has the extension .SYSTEM. (CTR, ETR, GST, P16)

system software: The component of a computer system that supports application programs by managing system resources such as memory and I/O devices. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

system window: A window in which a desk accessory is displayed. (GSTR, PI)

TAB: An ASCII character that commands a device such as a printer to start printing at a preset location (called a tab stop). There are two such characters: horizontal tab (hex 09) and vertical tab (hex 0B). TAB works like the tabs on a typewriter. (CTR, ETR)

task code: A numeric value assigned to the result of each event handled by TaskMaster. Compare event code. (GSTR, PI)

task mask: A parameter passed to TaskMaster, specifying which types of events Taskmaster is to respond to. (PI)

TaskMaster: A Window Manager routine that handles many typical events for an application. Applications may call TaskMaster instead of GetNextEvent. (GSTR, PI)

television set: A display device capable of receiving broadcast video signals (such as commercial television broadcasts) by means of an antenna. Can be used in combination with a radio-frequency modulator as a display device for the Apple II family of computers. Compare video monitor. (CTR, ETR)

template: A data structure or set of parameters that defines the characteristics of a desktop feature, such as a window control. The NewWindow parameter list is a template that defines the appearance of a window to be opened by the NewWindow call. (GSTR, PI)

terminal mode: The mode of operation in which the Apple IIGS acts like an intelligent terminal. (GSF)

text: (1) Information presented in the form of readable characters. (2) The display of characters on a display screen. Compare graphics. (CTR, ETR, GST)

text block: A number of ASCII characters in a buffer, with the number specified separately. (GSTR)

text buffer: A 1-bit-per-pixel pixel image reserved for the private use of the QuickDraw II text-drawing call. (GSTR, PI)

text file: A file consisting of the ASCII representation of characters. (PI)

text file format (TFF): A file that consists of ASCII representations of characters. Compare object module format. (GSTR)

text mode: One of 16 possible interactions between pixels in text being drawn to the screen and pixels on the screen that fall under characters being drawn. Compare pen, drawing mode. (GSTR, PI)

Text Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that provides an interface between Apple II character device drivers and applications running in native mode. (GSTR, PI)

text window: A window on the desktop within which text is displayed and scrolled. (GST) An area on the video display screen within which text is displayed and scrolled. (CTR, ETR) That portion of the screen that is reserved for text. After starting the computer, the firmware uses the entire display for text. However, if you wish, you can restrict the text video activity to any rectangular portion of the display. (GSH)

text-based interface: An interface between computer and user in which all screen drawing (or other output) consists of characters. The form of each character is stored in ROM and can be involved with a single byte of data. Compare graphic interface. (PI)

TFF: See text file format. (GSTR)

320 mode: An Apple IIGS video display mode, 320 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (PI)

tick count: The (approximate) number of 60th second intervals since system startup. (GSTR, PI)

title bar: The horizontal bar at the top of a window that shows the name of the window's contents. The user can move the window by dragging the title bar. (GSTR, PI)

tool: See tool set. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

tool call: A call to a function within a tool set. (PI)

Tool Locator: The Apple IIGS tool set that dispatches tool calls. The Tool Locator knows and retrieves the appropriate routine when your application makes a tool call. (GSTR, PI)

tool pointer table (TPT): A table, maintained by the Tool Locator, that contains pointers to all active tool sets. (GSTR, PI)

tool set: A group of related routines (usually in ROM) that perform necessary functions or provide programming convenience. They are available to applications and system software. The Memory Manager, the System Loader, and QuickDraw II are Apple IIGS tool sets. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

tool table: A list of all needed tool sets and their minimum required versions. An application constructs this table in order to load its RAM-based tool sets with the LoadTools call. (GSTR, PI)

toolbox: A collection of built-in routines on the Apple IIGS that programs can call to perform many commonly needed functions. Functions within the toolbox are grouped into tool sets. See Apple IIGS Toolbox. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

TPT: See tool pointer table. (GSTR)

traces: Electrical paths that connect the components on a circuit board. (CTR, ETR)

track: (1) One of a series of concentric circles magnetically recorded on the surface of a disk when it is formatted. Each track is further divided into sectors. Each sector can hold several K of data. (2) A grouping of items in a musical sequence. The Note Sequencer supports multiple tracks to facilitate writing multi-instrument music. (GSF, GSH, PI, P16)

transfer mode: A specification of which Boolean operation QuickDraw II should perform when drawing. See, for example, XOR. (GSTR, PI)

transistor-transistor logic (TTL): (1) A family of integrated circuits having bipolar circuit logic; TTL ICs are used in computers and related devices. (2) A standard for interconnecting such circuits, which defines the voltages used to represent logical zeros and ones. (CTR, ETR, GST)

transmit data register: A location in the ACIA (at location \$C098 for port 1 and \$C0A8 for port 2) that holds the current character to be transmitted. (CTR)

tree file: An organizational form of a ProDOS 16 standard file. A tree file consists of a single master index block, up to 127 index blocks, and up to 32,512 data blocks. (P16)

troubleshoot: To locate and correct the cause of a problem or malfunction, especially in hardware. Compare debug. (CTR, ETR)

TRUE: Not zero. The result of a Boolean operation. The opposite of FALSE. (GSTR, PI)

TTL: See transistor-transistor logic. (CTR, ETR, GST)

TTL RGB: A type of video monitor that can accept only a limited number of digital values and display only a correspondingly limited number of colors. Stands for transistor-transistor logic, red, green, blue. Compare analog RGB. (GSH, GST, PI)

turnkey disk: See startup disk. (CTR, ETR)

type-ahead buffer: A buffer that accepts and holds characters that are typed faster than the computer can process them. (GST)

typeID: A subfield of the user ID. The User ID Manager assigns a typeID value based on the type of program (application, tool set, and so on) requesting the memory. (GSTR, PI, P16)

unary operator: An operator that applies to a single operand. For example, the minus sign (-) in a negative number such as -6 is a unary arithmetic operator. Compare binary operator. (CTR, ETR)

unbuffered: A style of input and output that does not use a buffer for I/O; reading and writing is done one character at a time. (GSH)

unclaimed interrupt: This occurs when the hardware Interrupt Request Line is active, indicating that an interrupt-producing device needs attention, but none of the installed interrupt handlers claims responsibility for the interrupt. (GSTR)

unconditional branch: A branch that does not depend on the truth of any condition. Compare conditional branch. (CTR, ETR)

underline: (1) A style of text. (2) A method used to separate groups of items in a menu. An underlined item does not use any more space, on the screen or in memory, than the item does without the underline. Compare dividing line. (GSTR)

unhighlight: To restore to normal display. Selected controls, menu items, or other objects may be highlighted (usually displayed in inverse colors) while in use and unhighlighted when not in use. (GSTR, PI)

unload: To remove a load segment from memory. To unload a segment, the System Loader does not actually "unload" anything; it calls the Memory Manager to either purge or dispose of the memory block in which the code segment resides. The loader then modifies the Memory Segment Table to reflect the fact that the segment is no longer in memory. (GSTR, PI, P16)

unlock: To permit the Memory Manager to move or purge a memory block if needed. Opposite of lock. (GSTR, PI)

unmovable: See fixed. (GSTR, P16, PI)

unpack: To restore to normal format from a packed format. (GSTR, PI)

unpurgeable: Having a purge level of zero. The Memory Manager is not permitted to purge memory blocks whose purge level is zero. (GSTR, PI, P16)

unreal font: A font that was scaled by the Font Manager from a real font of a different size or added by an application and marked as unreal. Compare real font. (GSTR)

update: A type of window event, signifying that all or part of the window needs to be redrawn. (PI)

update event: An event posted by the Window Manager when all or part of a window needs to be redrawn. (GSTR, PI)

update region: A description of the part of a window that needs to be redrawn. The Window Manager keeps track of each open window's update region. (PI)

user: A person operating or controlling a computer system. (GST)

User ID: An identification number that specifies the owner of every memory block allocated by the Memory Manager. User ID's are assigned by the User ID Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

User ID Manager: A part of the Miscellaneous Tool Set that is responsible for assigning user ID's to every block of memory allocated by the Memory Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

user interface: The rules and conventions by which a computer system communicates with the person operating it. (GST)

utilities: Programs that let you rename, copy, format, delete, and otherwise manipulate files and volumes. (GST)

value: An item of information passed from a calling routine to a function. Compare result. (P16) An item of information that can be stored in a variable, such as a number or a string. (CTR, ETR, GST)

variable: (1) A location in the computer's memory where a value can be stored. (2) The symbol used in a program to represent such a location. Compare constant. (CTR, ETR, GST)

VBL: Short for vertical blanking, an interrupt signal generated by the video timing circuit each time it finishes a vertical scan, 60 times a second. (GSH, GST)

vector: (1) The starting address of a program segment, when used as a common point for transferring control from other programs. (2) A memory location used to hold a vector, or the address of such a location. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI) A location containing a value that, when added to a base address value, provides the address that is the entry point of a specific kind of routine. (GSF)

version: A number indicating the release edition of a particular piece of software. Version numbers for most system software (such as ProDOS 16 and the System Loader) are available through function calls. (P16)

vertical blanking: The interval between successive screen drawings on a video display. It is the time between drawing the last pixel of the last scan line of one frame and the first pixel of the first scan line of the next frame. (PI)

VGC: See Video Graphics Controller. (GSH)

video: (1) A medium for transmitting information in the form of images to be displayed on the screen of a cathode-ray tube. (2) Information organized or transmitted in video form. (CTR, ETR, GST) An electrical signal containing information that may be obtained visually when displayed on a video monitor. Information organized or transmitted in video form. See also NTSC, PAL, SECAM. (GSH)

Video Graphics Controller (VGC): The custom IC on the Apple IIGS main logic board responsible for generating all video used in the Apple IIGS. (GSH)

video monitor: A display device that can receive video signals by direct connection only, and that cannot receive broadcast signals such as commercial television. Can be connected directly to the computer as a display device. Compare television set. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

view rectangle: The rectangle within which text in an edit record is visible; that is, the portion of the text in the destination rectangle that the user can see is determined by the view rectangle. (GSTR)

viewport: All or part of the display screen used by an application program to display a portion of the information (such as a document, picture, or worksheet) on which a program is working. Compare window. (CTR, ETR)

visible region: The part of a window that's actually visible on the screen. The visible region is a GrafPort field manipulated by the Window Manager. (GSTR, PI)

voice: Any one of 16 pairs of oscillators in the Ensoniq sound chip on the Apple IIGS. (GSTR, PI)

volume: An object that stores data; the source or destination of information. A volume has a name and a volume directory with the same name; information on a volume is stored in files. Volumes typically reside in devices; a device such as a floppy disk drive may contain one of any number of volumes (disks). (CTR, ETR, P16)

volume bit map: A portion of every ProDOS 16-formatted disk that keeps track of free disk space. (P16)

volume control block (VCB): A data structure set up in memory by ProDOS 16 to keep track of all volumes/devices connected to the computer. (P16)

volume directory: A ProDOS 16 directory file that is the principal directory of a volume. It has the same name as the volume. The pathname of every file on the volume starts with the volume directory name. (P16)

volume name: The name by which a particular volume is identified. It is the same as the filename of the volume directory file. (PI, P16)

warm start: The process of transferring control back to the operating system in response to a failure in an application program. Compare cold start. (CTR, ETR, GST)

wavetable: A group of data bytes in memory used as data by the DOC to generate sound. The wavetable is built by using the DOC to digitize an analog input signal and placing the resulting data bytes in sound RAM memory. (GSH)

wedge: A filled arc, one of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. (GSTR, PI)

window: A rectangular area that displays information on a desktop. You view a document through a window. You can open or close a window, move it around on the desktop, and sometimes change its size, scroll through it, and edit its contents. The area inside the window's frame corresponds to the port rectangle of the window's GrafPort. (GST, GSTR, PI) The portion of a collection of information (such as a document, picture, or worksheet) that is visible in a viewport on the display screen. Compare viewport. (CTR, ETR)

window definition procedure: A procedure used to define the appearance and behavior of a custom window. (GSTR)

window frame: The outline of the entire window plus certain standard window controls. (GSTR, PI)

Window Manager: The Apple IIGS Tool Set that updates and maintains windows. (GSTR, PI)

window menu bar: A menu bar that appears at the top of the active window, below the system menu bar. It can contain document titles, applications, and functions. Compare system menu bar. (GSTR, PI)

window record: The internal representation of a window, where the Window Manager stores all the information it needs for its operations on that window. (GSTR, PI)

word: A group of bits that is treated as a unit. For the Apple IIGS, a word is 16 bits (2 bytes) long. Compare long, long word. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

wraparound: The automatic continuation of text from the end of one line to the beginning of the next; wraparound means that you don't have to press the Return key at the end of each line as you type. (GST)

write: To transfer information from the computer to a destination external to the computer (such as a disk drive, printer, or modem) or from the computer's processor to a destination external to the processor (such as main memory). (CTR, ETR)

write protect: To protect the information on a 5.25-inch disk by covering the write-enable notch with a write-protect tab, preventing the disk drive from writing any new information onto the disk. Compare copy protect. (CTR, ETR)

write-enable notch: The square cutout on one edge of a 5.25-inch disk's jacket. If there is no write-enable notch, or if it is covered with a write-protect tab, the disk drive can read information from the disk, but cannot write on it. (CTR, ETR)

write-only memory: A form of computer memory into which information can be stored but never, ever retrieved. For more information, refer to *The Life of Homberg T. Farnsfarfle*, by Bruce Tognazzini. (GSH, GST)

write-protect tab: (1) A small adhesive sticker used to write protect a 5.25-inch disk by covering the write-enable notch. (2) The small plastic tab in the corner of a 3.5-inch disk jacket. You lock (write protect) the disk by sliding the tab toward the edge of the disk; you unlock the disk by sliding the tab back so that it covers the rectangular hole. (CTR, ETR)

x flag: One of three flag bits in the 65C816 processor that programs use to control the processor's operating modes. In native mode, the setting of the x flag determines whether the index registers are 8 bits wide or 16 bits wide. See also e flag, m flag. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

X register: One of the two index registers in the 6502 OR 65C816 microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

XOFF: A special character (ASCII value \$11) used for controlling the transfer of data between a microcomputer and a serial peripheral device. When one piece of equipment receives an XOFF character from the other, it stops transmitting characters until it receives an XON. See handshaking, XON. (GSF, GSH, GST)

XON: A special character (ASCII value \$13) used for controlling the transfer of data between a microcomputer and a serial peripheral device. See handshaking, XOFF. (GSF, GSH, GST)

XOR: Exclusive-OR. A Boolean operation in which the result is TRUE if, and only if, the two items being compared are unequal in value. (GSTR, PI)

Y register: One of the two index registers in the 6502 OR 65C816 microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

z flag: A bit in the 65816 processor's Processor Status register that is set to 1 if the last operation resulted in 0 (zero). (GSTR)

zero page: The first page (256 bytes) of memory in a standard Apple II computer (or in the Apple IIGS computer when running a standard Apple II program). Because the high-order byte of any address in this part of memory is zero, only a single byte is needed to specify a zero-page address. Compare direct page. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

zoom box: A small box with a smaller box enclosed in it found on the right side of the title bar of some windows. Clicking the zoom box expands the window to its maximum size; clicking it again returns the window to its original size. (GSTR, PI)

zoom region: The window region that corresponds to the zoom box. (GSTR, PI)

⌘: A modifier key on some Apple II keyboards. On the Apple IIGS keyboard, the equivalent key is called simply the Apple key; it is marked with both an Apple icon and a spinner, the icon used on some Macintosh keyboards. (GSF)

Index

- #6 command CTR-155
- #7 command CTR-169
- #8 command CTR-169
- #include statement GSTR-2-6
- \$ (dollar) CTR-225
- \$C0 IIGS #27
- \$C1 IIGS #27
- \$C300 space GS/OS #2
- \$C800 I/O space Miscellaneous #3
- \$C800 space Miscellaneous #11
- * (asterisk) as prompt character ETR-62
- * (asterisk) CTR-59,CTR-104
- . (period) as Monitor command ETR-102
- . (period) CTR-206
- : (colon) as Monitor command ETR-105
- : (colon) CTR-216,CTR-224
- > (greater than sign) as prompt character ETR-62
- ? (question mark) as prompt character ETR-62
- ? (question mark) CTR-59,CTR-169,CTR-179
- @ (at sign) CTR-113
- \ (backslash) CTR-59,CTR-63
-] (right bracket) as prompt character ETR-62
- ^ (caret) ETR-122, ETR-125, CTR-225
- _ (underscore) CTR-179
- ⌘ (Open Apple) ETR-11-14, ETR-228
- ⌘ (Solid Apple) ETR-11-14, ETR-228
- /RAM ProDOS #8, #16, #18, #21
- /RAM5 GST-40, GST-79
- /SYSTEM.DISK GS/OS #1
- /SYSTEM.TOOLS GS/OS #1
- 01 time IIe #2
- 0o time IIe #2
- 1 MHz speed GST-15, GST-76
- 128K Apple II GST-xiv
 - display modes GST-86
 - memory bank emulation GST-15
- 128K Apple IIe, graphic display features GST-20-21
- 128K Run-Time Systems Pascal #10
- 14M signal ETR-163
- 16-bit mode. See native mode
- 3.5 ROM IIc IIc #7
- 3.5" Disks Pascal #16
- 3.5" drive differences UniDisk 3.5 #5
- 320 graphics mode GST-22, GST-24, IIGS #4, PI-7, PI-80, PI-98, PI-99, PI-147 PI-100
- 3D0G IIe #3
- 40-column display IIc #2, CTR-5, CTR-50, CTR-86, CTR-91, CTR-92, CTR-94, CTR-259, CTR-358, GST-20, GST-46
 - addressing CTR-263
 - map CTR-107
 - memory CTR-261
 - switching to CTR-5
- 40-column text ETR-21, ETR-22
- 40-column text display GSH-58, GSH-59, GSH-67, GSH-75-76
 - display pages ETR-27-28
 - generation ETR-178-179
 - memory map ETR-33, ETR-177
 - with TV set ETR-16
- 400K disks UniDisk 3.5 #4
- 40COL IIGS #29
- 48K memory CTR-36-39
 - switches CTR-39
- 48K Run-Time System Pascal #10, #15
- 5.25-inch floppy disks GST-40, P16-46
- 50740A chip (Keyboard Microprocessor) GST-12
- 558 timer IIe #6
- 640 graphics mode GST-22-24, GST-61, IIGS #4, PI-7, PI-80, PI-98, PI-99, PI-102
- 64K Apple II GST-xiv
- 64K Run-Time Systems Pascal #10
- 6502 GSH-2, GSH-3, GSH-198
- 6502 emulation mode , See 65816
 - microprocessor, 6502 emulation mode
- 6502 microprocessor ETR-xx, ETR-6, GSF-8, P16-4, P16-9, P16-75, PI-x, PI-xi, PI-3, PI-9, PI-294-295
 - differences from 65C02 ETR-6, ETR-209-210
 - instruction set GST-4-5, GST-8
 - memory addressing GST-16-17
- 65C02 microprocessor GSH-198, CTR-13, CTR-75, CTR-237-241, CTR-297-307, ETR-xx, ETR-6, ETR-209-219
- addressing modes CTR-26, CTR-302, CTR-304
- block diagram CTR-237-238, CTR-299
- characteristics CTR-300-301
- data sheets CTR-298-307, ETR-210-219
- differences from 6502 ETR-6, ETR-209-210
- enhancements CTR-301
- instruction mnemonics CTR-302
- instruction set CTR-306
- interrupt handling CTR-333
- operational codes CTR-306-307
- pin configuration CTR-299
- pin function CTR-300
- programming model CTR-303
- ratings CTR-300
- registers CTR-18-19
- signal description CTR-305
- specifications CTR-239, ETR-161-163
- stack ETR-78
- timing CTR-239-241, CTR-302
- versus 6502 CTR-297-298
- timing ETR-162-163
- 65816 assembly language GSF-54 See assembly language, GST-8
- 65816 microprocessor PI-xiv, PI-3-5, PI-10, PI-65, PI-291, GSF-8-9, GSH-2, GSH-3, GSH-7, GSH-167, GSH-168, GSH-196-227
- 6502 emulation mode GST-5, GST-13-14, GST-75-76, GST-89, GSF-14, GSH-198, GSH-201
- Apple II program compatibility GST-96-97
- direct page location GST-83, GST-84
- disassembler support GST-50
- I/O shadowing GST-29
- mini-assembler support GST-50
- mixing program environments GST-88-89
- operating system overview GST-95
- program enhancement GST-97
- program environments summarized GST-89
- registers illustrated GST-14
- stack location GST-83, GST-84

- switching to GST-49
 - Text Tool Set GST-70
 - Apple Desktop Bus microcontroller GSF-186
 - APW Assembler GST-101-102
 - clock speed GST-14-15, GST-74-80
 - compared with 68000 GST-61
 - disassembler GST-50
 - execution speeds GSF-9
 - extended memory addressing GST-49
 - features GST-13
 - flags e, m, x GST-83
 - indexed instructions GSF-17
 - macro assembler GST-8
 - memory map GST-15
 - mini-assembler GST-50
 - modes GSF-9
 - native mode GST-13-14, GSH-198, GSH-201 See also native mode registers GST-14 specifications GST-3
 - 68000 microprocessor GST-5, GST-61
 - 6805 AppleMouse microprocessor card GSF-213
 - 74LS245 Iie #2
 - 8-bit Apple II
 - clock speed of programs written for GST-15
 - operating system GST-95
 - program environments GST-89-90, GST-113
 - program modification GST-97
 - See also Apple II family
 - See standard Apple
 - 8-bit mode. See emulation mode
 - 8-bit programs
 - bank register values GST-83
 - direct page location GST-84
 - stack location GST-84
 - 80-column card P16-34
 - Miscellaneous #1, #10, ProDOS #11, #15
 - 80-column display CTR-38,CTR-64,CTR-68,CTR-86,CTR-91,CTR-92,CTR-100,CTR-106,CTR-358
 - 640 graphics mode GST-23
 - addressing CTR-263
 - card position GST-28
 - Control Panel GST-46
 - dot patterns CTR-269
 - internal I/O routine GST-51-52
 - map CTR-108
 - on RGB monitor GST-20
 - switching to CTR-5
 - 80-column firmware ETR-xxi, ETR-49-50, Iie #8, GS/OS #2
 - activating ETR-50
 - control characters with ETR-272-275
 - 80-column screen dump
 - Miscellaneous #1
 - 80-column text ETR-21, ETR-22
 - 80-Column Text Card ETR-86, ETR-134, ETR-150, ETR-267-275
 - 80-column text display GSH-37, GSH-58, GSH-59, GSH-67, GSH-71, GSH-75-76, PI-6, PI-260
 - slot for PI-8
 - 80-column text
 - differences in Apple II family ETR-228
 - display pages ETR-27-28
 - generation ETR-178-179
 - map ETR-34
 - signals ETR-197-198
 - with Applesoft ETR-xxi
 - with Pascal ETR-xxi
 - with TV set ETR-16
 - 80/40 switch CTR-3,CTR-5
 - 800K disks UniDisk 3.5 #4
 - 80COL Iic #2, Iie #8
 - 80COL soft switch ETR-29
 - 80Col switch CTR-101,CTR-102,CTR-243
 - 80STORE Iie #3
 - 80STORE soft switch ETR-29, ETR-32, ETR-87, ETR-89, ETR-90, ETR-198, CTR-39,CTR-45,CTR-101,CTR-102,CTR-106,CTR-241
 - 9-pin connectors ETR-8, ETR-40
- A**
- A register CTR-18,CTR-43,CTR-84,CTR-113-115,CTR-192,CTR-213, ETR-146, GSF-18, GSF-35, GSTR-2-5, GSTR-2-7
 - changing GSF-60
 - system interrupt handler GSF-181
 - See accumulator
 - A/D Converter register GSH-103
 - A1 ETR-92
 - A2 ETR-92
 - A4 ETR-92
 - ABORT GSF-179, GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 - Abort command GSF-188
 - abortMgr GSTR-14-67
 - ABORTMGRV GSF-265
 - "About HodgePodge" dialog box PI-39
 - "About..." dialog boxes PI-31, PI-142-144
 - absClamps GSTR-14-66
 - AbsOff GSTR-3-13
 - absolute addresses, disassembler GST-50
 - absolute clamp GSTR-7-27, GSTR-14-21, GSTR-14-37, GSTR-14-38
 - absolute code P16-188, PI-24, PI-196, PI-226-227, PI-295
 - vs. relocatable code PI-24, PI-227
 - absolute device GSTR-3-13, GSTR-3-15, GSTR-3-16, GSTR-3-23, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-37, GSTR-14-38
 - Absolute flag GSTR-3-4
 - absolute segment. See segment(s)
 - AbsOn GSTR-3-13
 - access attribute P16-14, P16-21, P16-258, P16-260, P16-264, P16-277
 - backup bit P16-134, P16-277
 - write-enable bit P16-137
 - access byte PI-215
 - accessing files PI-162-165
 - accessing. See device(s); disks
 - accumulator CTR-18,CTR-64,CTR-69,CTR-84,CTR-90,115, ETR-138, ETR-148, GSF-35, GSH-200, P16-77-78, P16-104, P16-209, P16-213, PI-4, PI-66, PI-294
 - 65816 registers GST-14
 - input routines GST-53
 - Monitor firmware routines GST-54
 - size of GST-89
 - accumulator mode GSF-62
 - ACIA (Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter) GST-39, ETR-286
 - block diagram CTR-276
 - command register CTR-280
 - control register CTR-278-279
 - register locations for port-1 CTR-159
 - register locations for port-2 CTR-173
 - status register CTR-130,CTR-281
 - transmit/receive register CTR-282
 - See asynchronous communications interface adapter
 - aciabuf Iic #6
 - acoustic coupler CTR-177
 - action code
 - MessageCenter GSTR-24-15
 - new desk accessory GSTR-5-7
 - action procedure GSTR-4-83-84
 - dialog scroll bar GSTR-6-15
 - action routine (NDA) PI-265
 - activate event GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-5, GSTR-7-14, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-16, GSTR-10-20, GSTR-25-24,

GSTR-25-78, GSTR-25-92, PI-68,
 PI-69, PI-72, PI-73
 activateEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50,
 GSTR-25-120, PI-69
 activating PI-73
 activator GSH-139
 active control GSTR-4-7
 active controls PI-128, PI-129
 active window GSTR-25-8, GSTR-25-
 11, GSTR-25-24, GSTR-25-50,
 GSTR-25-92
 active windows PI-114-116
 activeFlag GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-10,
 GSTR-7-51
 activeMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 ADB Change Address When Activated
 handler GSTR-3-4
 ADB commands GSTR-3-1, GSTR-3-
 2, GSTR-3-14, GSTR-3-27
 ADB microcontroller. See Apple
 DeskTop Bus microcontroller
 ADBBootInit GSTR-3-10
 adbBusy GSTR-3-14, GSTR-3-26,
 GSTR-3-27, GSTR-3-29, GSTR-
 B-4
 adbDataInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
 adbDisable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 adbEnable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 adbRBHnd GSTR-14-68
 ADBReset GSTR-3-5, GSTR-3-12
 ADBShutDown GSTR-3-5, GSTR-3-11
 adbSRQHnd GSTR-14-68
 ADBStartUp GSTR-3-5, GSTR-3-10
 ADBStatus GSTR-3-12
 ADBVersion GSTR-3-11
 ADC (analog-to-digital converter)
 GST-25
 AddFamily GSTR-8-19, GSTR-8-23,
 GSTR-8-25, GSTR-8-26
 AddFontVar GSTR-8-1, GSTR-8-15,
 GSTR-8-19, GSTR-8-23, GSTR-8-
 24-25
 addition GSF-32-bit
 addMessage GSTR-24-15, GSTR-24-
 26
 AddPt GSTR-16-68
 address : opcode operands GST-50
 address bus ETR-161-162
 and expansion cards GST-28
 Apple II slots GST-30
 on expansion slot GST-29
 specifications GST-3
 address field, mini-assembler GST-50
 Address Pointer registers GSH-98,
 GSH-100, GSH-101
 address transformation ETR-177
 address wrapping GSH-27
 addresses
 Applesoft BASIC interpreter CTR-
 326
 display CTR-259-261
 firmware CTR-322-327
 hardware CTR-316-321, CTR-353-
 356
 I/O link CTR-56-58
 memory CTR-20
 mouse port CTR-325
 port CTR-323-325
 RAM CTR-22, CTR-351
 ROM CTR-22-23, CTR-250, CTR-
 351-352
 serial port CTR-323-324
 video display CTR-101
 video firmware CTR-324
 See memory; direct page and stack
 addressing
 display pages ETR-31-37, ETR-174-
 179
 I/O locations ETR-138-139
 indirect ETR-77
 RAM ETR-139, ETR-169-171
 relative ETR-121, ETR-126, ETR-
 137
 ROM ETR-168-169
 addressing modes CTR-26, CTR-226,
 GSH-197
 24-bit GST-13-14
 disassembler and mini- assembler
 GST-50
 extended memory addressing GST-
 49
 65C02 CTR-302, CTR-304
 AddToMenu PI-55, PI-59, PI-120, PI-
 154, PI-305, PI-306
 AdjWind PI-57, PI-59, PI-155
 ADV.DISK.UTIL GS/OS #1
 ADVANCE GSF-240
 advanced linker (APW) PI-223, PI-
 235, PI-236
 Alert GSTR-6-19-22, GSTR-6-31-34,
 IIGS #48
 alert box GSTR-6-6, PI-135
 default button PI-135
 template for creating PI-140
 alert mechanism GSTR-6-1
 alert sound GSTR-6-6, GSTR-6-21-22,
 GSTR-6-47
 alert stage GSTR-6-20-21, GSTR-6-33,
 GSTR-6-49, GSTR-6-76
 alert template GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-
 19-20, GSTR-6-31, GSTR-6-32
 alert window GSTR-6-7, GSTR-25-6
 color table GSTR-25-17
 alert windows PI-110, PI-111, PI-116,
 PI-136
 alertDrawn GSTR-6-89
 alerts GST-67, PI-135-136
 Caution Alert PI-135
 Note Alert PI-135
 programming techniques PI-141
 sound in PI-135
 Stop Alert PI-135
 AlertWindow IIGS #48
 ALIGN segment header field P16-186,
 P16-299. See also headers;
 segment(s)
 alignment factor P16-299. See also
 segment(s)
 ALLOC INTERRUPT PI-272
 allocateErr GSTR-25-83, GSTR-25-
 144, GSTR-B-4
 allocation of memory GSTR-12-1,
 GSTR-12-35
 allocation of private memory GSTR-
 12-10-11, GSTR-12-14
 ALLOC_INTERRUPT call P16-48,
 P16-80, P16-94, P16-288
 description of P16-175-176
 alreadyInitialized GSTR-16-64, GSTR-
 16-278, GSTR-B-3
 ALTCHAR soft switch ETR-29, CTR-
 102, CTR-243, CTR-360
 alternate character set CTR-69, CTR-
 70, CTR-88, CTR-92, CTR-360,
 ETR-19-20, ETR-228
 Mouse #6
 on original Iie ETR-20
 Alternate Display Mode GST-47,
 GST-68, GSTR-5-3, PI-157
 alternate-display-mode desk
 accessory GSTR-5-24
 alternative pointing device GSTR-7-
 21-25, GSTR-7-27, GSTR-7-34,
 GSTR-14-5
 ALTZP soft switch ETR-84, ETR-89-
 90, CTR-28, CTR-242
 AMPERV GSF-259
 AN3 Iie #3
 analog I/O impedance IIGS #9
 analog inputs CTR-200, ETR-42-43,
 GST-41
 (PDL0 through PDL3) GSH-157-158
 analog RGB See RGB video
 analog-to-digital converter (ADC)
 GST-25
 animation ETR-231
 Lo-Res graphics GST-47
 annunciator memory locations GSH-
 267
 annunciator outputs (AN0 through
 AN3) GSH-157
 annunciators ETR-40-41, ETR-43
 any-key-down (AKD) CTR-78, CTR-
 243, CTR-255

- any-key-down flag ETR-13
- anyFamBit GSTR-8-11, GSTR-8-50
- anySizeBit GSTR-8-11, GSTR-8-50
- anyStyleBit GSTR-8-11, GSTR-8-50
- APDA (Apple Programmer's and Developer's Association) PI-xix, PI-35, PI-224, PI-278, GSTR-xxvii
- apFamBit GSTR-8-9, GSTR-8-12, GSTR-8-50
- apostrophe (') GSF-40, GSF-64
- app1Evt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50
- app1Mask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
- app2Evt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50
- app2Mask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
- app3Evt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50
- app3Mask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
- app4Evt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50
- app4Mask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
- application windows PI-111
- Apple /// emulation
 - Miscellaneous #2
- Apple 3.5 disk drive GSF-117, GSF-133, GSF-135
 - SmartPort calls GSF-138-141
- Apple 3.5 Drive UniDisk 3.5 #5, GST-39-40
- Apple Certified Developer PI-278-279
- Apple computers P16-xx, P16-4. See also specific computer
- Apple Desktop Bus GSH-3, GSH-6, GSH-43, GSH-116-117, GSH-156, GSH-236, GSTR-3-1, GSTR-7-24, PI-2, PI-8, PI-21, PI-174
 - See DeskTop Bus connector GSF-8
 - input devices GSF-10
 - microcontroller GSF-6, GSF-183, GSF-185-196
 - microcontroller, commands GSF-188-195
 - microcontroller, status byte GSF-196
- Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-5, GSTR-3-1-29, GSTR-7-24, PI-21, PI-174
 - constants GSTR-3-28-29
 - data structures GSTR-3-29
 - error codes GSTR-3-29
 - shutdown routine GSTR-3-11
 - startup routine GSTR-3-10
 - status routine GSTR-3-12
 - using GSTR-3-5-7
 - version number routine GSTR-3-11
- addresses GSH-130, GSH-137-138
- broadcast signals GSH-131-132
- collision detection GSH-138-139
- Command/Data register GSH-122-123
- commands GSH-129-131, GSH-133
- commands GSTR-3-2
- device handlers GSH-136-137
- device registers GSH-133-136
- error conditions GSH-133
- General Logic Unit GSH-121-127
- Keyboard Data register GSH-123
- microcontroller GSH-121
- Modifier Key register GSH-123-124
- Mouse Data register GSH-125
- moving addresses GSH-137
- peripheral devices GSH-133-139
- polling GSTR-3-3
- service request GSH-139
- Status register GSH-126-127
- Apple Desktop Interface P16-90-91
- Apple II PI-13, PI-21
 - See also Apple II, standard
- Apple II compatibility with Apple Iie ETR-48-50
- Apple II computers, interrupts CTR-332
- Apple II family differences ETR-227-232
- Apple II family
 - animated display GST-47
 - Apple IIGS compatibility GST-4-5
 - architecture GST-74-76
 - binary load files GST-8
 - defined GST-xiii-xiv
 - disassembler GST-50
 - disk storage GST-40
 - display memory GST-86, GST-88
 - display pages GST-16
 - graphic display features GST-20-21
 - graphics specifications GST-3
 - I/O expansion slots GST-28
 - memory, main and auxiliary GST-16-17
 - Monitor I/O firmware GST-51
 - Monitor programs GST-47-48
 - programs GST-13, GST-76, GST-96-97
 - See also 8-bit Apple II
 - serial ports GST-33-37
 - slot memory GST-29-33
 - sound output GST-24
 - UCSD Pascal GST-17
 - video modes GST-19
- Apple II operating systems P16-281-288. See also operating system(s) or specific operating system
- Apple II Plus PI-xxi, PI-8, PI-9, PI-290, xiii, GST-16-17, GST-28
- Apple II SCSI Interface Card SmartPort #5
- Apple II series differences CTR-348-365
- Apple II series disk I/O CTR-361
- Apple II series hardware CTR-365
- Apple II series I/O CTR-357
- Apple II series keyboard CTR-357-359
- Apple II series machine identification CTR-350
- Apple II series memory structure CTR-351-356
- Apple II series video display CTR-359-360
- Apple II
 - defined PI-xxi
 - definition of P16-xx
 - operating systems P16-281-288
 - standard P16-182
 - standard, definition of P16-xx
 - standard, software for P16-34
 - zero page P16-75, P16-88
- Apple Iic GSF-11, GSH-2, GST-xiii, P16-34
 - block diagram CTR-235-236
 - interrupt differences ETR-156
 - schematic diagrams CTR-291-296
- Apple IIGS compatibility GST-4-5
 - graphic display features GST-20-21
 - interrupt support GST-54
 - memory, main and auxiliary GST-16-17
 - Monitor I/O firmware GST-51
 - mouse support GST-42-43
 - no expansion slots GST-28
 - ports GST-74
 - program compatibility GST-39, GST-96-97
- Protocol Converter software GST-40
 - serial ports GST-33-37
 - serial-port firmware emulation GST-33
 - terminal emulation GST-37
- Apple Iie GSH-2, GSH-119, GST-xiii, P16-34
 - 80-Column Text Card ETR-86, 134, ETR-267-275
 - Extended 80-Column Text Card ETR-86, ETR-134, ETR-267-275
- Apple Iie Plus GSF-222
- Apple Iie
 - 128K RAM GST-78
 - Apple IIGS compatibility GST-4-5
 - Apple IIGS Upgrade keyboard support GST-42, GST-43
 - AppleMouse card GST-42-43
 - ASCII input mode ETR-107
 - COU1 subroutine ETR-56

- differences between original and enhanced ETR-xix-xxiii
- game I/O connectors GST-41
- interrupt support ETR-132, ETR-148-149
- interrupt support GST-54
- memory, main and auxiliary GST-16-17
- microprocessor ETR-6
- Mini-Assembler ETR-123-125
- mini-assembler GST-50
- Monitor I/O firmware GST-51
- Monitor Search command ETR-110
- MouseText ETR-12, ETR-20
- program compatibility GST-96-97
- slot 3 ETR-144
- slots GST-74
- tabbing in Applesoft ETR-271-272
- using Caps Lock ETR-49
- Apple IIGS See also ProDOS 8; ProDOS 16; programming techniques
- Apple IIGS Debugger PI-224, PI-248-253
- Apple IIGS Disk II
 - firmware GSF-5
 - I/O port characteristics GSF-111
 - SmartPort interactions GSF-158
 - support GSF-109-112
- Apple IIGS firmware SmartPort #6
- Apple IIGS font definition GSTR-16-42-43
- Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop
 - P16-xx, P16-xviii, P16-70, P16-89-90. See also programming, GST-8, PI-xviii, PI-26-27, PI-65, PI-205, PI-22-225, PI-296
 - advanced linker PI-223, PI-235, PI-236, PI-238
 - Assembler GST-8, GST-101-102, PI-xviii, PI-222
 - C compiler GST-102, PI-xviii, PI-222
 - Debugger GST-105
 - Editor GST-104, PI-222
 - language considerations PI-225
 - Linker GST-104, PI-222
 - parameter-passing PI-225
 - program descriptions PI-221-224
 - program development GST-103-105
 - reference manual GST-110
 - Shell GST-103-104, PI-199, PI-221-222, PI-259, PI-261
 - standard linker PI-223, PI-235, PI-238
 - utilities GST-105, PI-223
 - Compact PI-223
 - Crunch PI-223
 - DumpOBJ PI-223
 - Equal PI-224
 - Files PI-224
 - Init PI-224
 - MacGen PI-224
 - MakeLib PI-224, PI-238
 - Search PI-224
 - File Type utility P16-89
 - Linker P16-70, P16-89
 - Shell P16-82, P16-89, P16-208
- Apple IIGS ProgrammerUs Workshop. See APW
- Apple IIGS Toolbox P16-xix, P16-6, P16-9, PI-xviii, PI-17-22, PI-42, PI-62-106, PI-108-144, PI-146-183. See also tool sets or specific routine/tool set
 - calls (typographic convention for) PI-xxii, PI-36
 - compared to Macintosh PI-284-289
 - constants PI-38
 - data structures PI-38
 - errors PI-65, PI-66, PI-67
 - macros PI-65
 - memory requirements PI-5
 - keyboard support GST-42, GST-43
- Apple IIGS Workshop C GSTR-2-6
- Apple IIGS
 - 40-column display GSF-71
 - 80-column display GSF-71
 - Alternate Display Mode GST-47, GST-68
- Apple II family compatibility GST-4-5
 - architecture GST-74-80
 - boot/scan sequence GSF-17
 - built-in I/O PI-8-9
 - clock speeds PI-4
 - clock-calendar PI-9
 - compatibility with standard Apple II PI-9-10, PI-291-292
 - Control Panel GST-46-47, PI-9
 - default operating system P16-13
 - description of P16-4
 - DeskTop Bus GST-41-43
 - detached keyboard GSF-10
 - disassembler GST-50
 - disk port GST-39-41, PI-8
 - display features GST-19-24
 - execution modes PI-4
 - features GST-2-4
 - firmware GSF-2-6, PI-xviii
 - game I/O connectors GST-41, PI-2, PI-8
 - general PI-xiii-xxii, PI-2-27
 - hardware PI-xvii
 - I/O expansion slots GSF-11, GST-28-33
 - I/O ports GSF-11
 - interrupt support GST-54-55
 - interrupts GSF-16
 - keyboard PI-2, PI-8
 - large-scale ICs used GST-12
 - logical diagram of P16-6
 - Macintosh comparison GST-5-6
 - memory GST-15-18, GST-77-78, P16-9, P16-32-40. See also memory, PI-2, PI-4, PI-5-6
 - memory addresses GSF-21
 - memory space GSF-9
 - microprocessor GSF-8-9, microprocessor PI-2, PI-3-5
 - mini-assembler GST-50
 - Monitor I/O firmware GST-51-54
 - Monitor program GST-47, GST-49
 - Monitor. See system Monitor
 - operating systems GST-82
 - program environments
 - summarized GST-113
 - program operation levels GSF-4
 - programming (general) PI-xvii
 - programming levels in P16-5-7
 - real-time clock GST-26
 - registers PI-4
 - resident desk accessories GST-46
 - serial I/O ports GST-33, GST-37-39, PI-2, PI-8, PI-9
 - slots PI-2, PI-6, PI-8-9
 - sound PI-2, PI-8, PI-174
 - sound capabilities GST-24-25
 - sound system GSF-10
 - startup GSF-112
 - Super Hi-Res display GSF-9-10
 - system disks P16-52-55. See also system disks
 - technical manuals GSF-216-221, GST-106-111
 - Toolbox GSF-2, GSF-218, GSF-310
 - Toolbox compared with Macintosh GST-59-63
 - video PI-2, PI-6-7
 - See also ProDOS 8; ProDOS 16; manuals or specific topic
- Apple IIc xxi, PI-7, PI-8, PI-13, PI-290
- Apple IIe xxi, PI-7-9, PI-13, PI-174, PI-290
- Apple Integer BASIC CTR-308, CTR-330, CTR-348, CTR-356, CTR-388
- Apple keys ETR-11-14
 - differences in Apple II family ETR-228
- Apple Language Card CTR-351

- Apple logo GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-15, GSTR-13-56
- Apple Logo II CTR-330
- Apple Menu GSTR-5-8, GSTR-5-15, GSTR-5-20, GSTR-13-4, GSTR-13-5, GSTR-13-15, PI-31, PI-47, PI-75, PI-147
- Apple Programmer's and Developer's Association (APDA) PI-xix, PI-35, PI-224, PI-278, GST-111, See APDA
- Apple standard detached keyboard GST-42
- Apple Super Serial Card (SSC) GSF-82
- Apple User Interface Guidelines GST-67
- Apple-Left Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
- Apple-period GSTR-15-24
- Apple-Right Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
- AppleColor 100 monitor GST-19
- APPLEII GSF-237
- appleKey GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-51
- AppleMouse GST-42-43, Mouse #2
- AppleShare AppleTalk #1, #2, ProDOS #21
- AppleSoft IIe #3
- Applesoft BASIC CTR-169, CTR-308, CTR-329, CTR-388, ETR-xxi, ETR-12, ETR-105, ETR-235, GSF-2, GSF-43, GSF-74, GSF-87, GSF-112, GSF-178, GSH-2, GST-9, Miscellaneous #9, #11
- Applesoft BASIC interpreter CTR-14, CTR-23, CTR-36, CTR-51, CTR-52, CTR-59, CTR-63, CTR-204, CTR-214, CTR-250, CTR-352
 - interpreter addresses CTR-326
 - mouse and CTR-195-196
 - 80-column support ETR-xxi
 - accessing terminal mode GST-37
 - and lowercase ETR-xxii
 - and uppercase ETR-48-49
 - graphic display routines GST-21
 - I/O links GST-52
 - in Apple II family GST-5
 - interpreter GST-46
 - invoking the Monitor GST-48
 - PR# command GST-38
 - program compatibility GST-39
 - protocol address locations GST-36
 - ROM GST-4
 - tabbing with original Apple IIe ETR-271-272
 - use of page 3 ETR-78
 - use of page zero ETR-77, ETR-79-81
- AppleTalk GSF-3, GSF-8, GSF-15, GSF-17, GSF-82, GSF-98, GSF-173, GSH-43, GSH-150, GSH-173, GST-4, GST-33, GST-38, GSTR-15-5, PI-2, PI-8, PI-9, PI-167
- AppleTalk Personal Network P16-65
 - interrupts GSF-180
- applEvt PI-69
- AppleWorks GST-39, GST-68, Miscellaneous #4, #5
- AppleWorks file formats Miscellaneous #5
- application event GSTR-7-4
- application prefix PI-209
- application programs
 - 65816 flags GST-83
 - Apple II program compatibility GST-96-97
- Apple IIGS Toolbox GST-94
 - buffering (I/O) GST-38
 - desk accessories GST-67
 - development GST-100-105, GST-108
 - enhancing existing programs GST-97
 - event-driven GST-59, GST-62
 - firmware access GST-93-94
 - incompatibility GST-93
 - interrupt support GST-54-55
 - low-numbered bank access GST-78
 - memory GST-76, GST-78, GST-80
 - Menu Manager GST-66
 - Monitor I/O routines GST-47, GST-51
 - mouse operation GST-43
 - program environments summarized GST-113
 - program operation levels GST-92-94
 - Scrap Manager GST-71
 - screen-hole locations GST-32
 - serial-port compatibility GST-39
 - SmartPort calls GST-41
 - standard I/O links GST-51-52
 - system hardware control GST-92-93
 - System Loader GST-96
 - Window Manager GST-66
- Application Shutdown call (System Loader) P16-77
- application system disk PI-300-301
- application system disks. See system disks
- application window GSTR-25-8, GSTR-25-66, GSTR-25-70, GSTR-25-122
- application(s) P16-58, P16-74-75
- Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop and P16-89
- as controlling programs P16-184, P16-208. See also controlling programs
- definition of P16-74
- dormant P16-185, P16-225, P16-233, P16-246. See also System Loader
- event-driven and segmented P16-xix
- loading P16-5, P16-71, P16-82-83, P16-89. See also System Loader
- memory and P16-33, P16-39-40. See also memory
- prefixes. See pathname prefixes
- programming requirements for P16-74-75
- quitting P16-59-65. See also PQUIT; QUIT call
- reloading P16-71, P16-168
- restarting P16-62, P16-71, P16-77, P16-168, P16-209-210, P16-233, P16-240, P16-245, See also Restart call; System Loader
- revising ProDOS 8 for ProDOS 16 P16-86-89
- shell P16-208
- shutting down P16-209-210
- starting P16-62, P16-64, P16-58-65, P16-167, P16-222
- starting, machine configuration at launch P16-64, P16-81
- application-defined event GSTR-7-14, PI-69, PI-73
- applications PI-256-259
 - hybrid PI-292-293
 - programming techniques PI-26, PI-228-229, PI-256-259
 - restartable PI-259
 - self-booting PI-257-258
- apVarBit GSTR-8-9, GSTR-8-10, GSTR-8-50
- APW GSTR-xGSTR-xvii, GSTR-2-5, IIGS #20, #31, See Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop (APW)
- APW assembler IIGS #33
- APW C IIGS #31
- APW MacGen utility GSTR-2-5
- arbitrary mode GSTR-11-12
- arc GSTR-16-24, GSTR-16-88, GSTR-16-94, GSTR-16-101, GSTR-16-164, PI-87, PI-91
- arc tangent GSTR-9-13
- architecture, Apple IIGS GST-74-80
- arcRot GSTR-16-109, GSTR-16-212
- arithmetic, hexadecimal CTR-215, ETR-116

arrow cursor GSTR-16-38, GSTR-16-160
 arrow keys CTR-4, ETR-61, ETR-63-64, GSF-72
 ascent GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-45, GSTR-16-48, GSTR-16-62
 ascent/ascent line PI-93, GSTR-16-45
 ASCII GSF-25, GSF-26, GSF-29, GSF-51, GSF-67, GSF-86, GSF-123, GSF-152, GSH-59, GSH-74, GSH-123, GSH-251-255, GSTR-9-8, GSTR-9-9, GSTR-9-25, GSTR-9-26, GSTR-9-29, GSTR-9-30, GSTR-9-31, GSTR-9-33, GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-16
 ASCII character set CTR-3, CTR-70, CTR-78, CTR-80-81, CTR-381-382, CTR-391-395, P16-292-293
 entry from keyboard GST-49
 ASCII codes CTR-58, CTR-78, CTR-80-81, CTR-89, CTR-164, CTR-368, ETR-14-16
 ASCII input mode CTR-209, ETR-106-107, GSF-30
 filters GSF-31
 flip GSF-30, GSF-64
 literal GSF-30, GSF-64
 AskUser PI-59, PI-121, PI-163, PI-211, PI-306
 ASMFORMAT.TEXT Pascal #12
 aspect ratios GST-61
 Assembler (APW) P16-89, CTR-220, PI-xviii, PI-222
 assemblers ETR-121, GST-8, GST-100
 APW Assembler GST-101-102
 calls to Toolbox GST-63
 EdAsm GST-62, GST-102
 for Apple II computers GST-62
 macro libraries and P16-xv
 mini-assembler GST-50
 object files GST-101
 programming suggestions GST-62
 reference manual GST-110
 assembling P16-89
 assembly language ETR-234, IIGS #33, P16-xv, P16-xviii, PI-xiv, PI-4, PI-65, PI-225, PI-234
 calling routines from GSTR-2-5
 HodgePodge and PI-65-66, PI-190, PI-202, PI-311-376
 labels, typographic convention for P16-xxi
 mouse and CTR-195-196
 mouse routines GSF-202, GSF-211-213
 Pascal protocol GSF-93-94
 programming examples PI-190, PI-193, PI-239-246, PI-263, PI-265, PI-311-376
 programming techniques PI-4, PI-283-284, PI-290
 typographic convention for PI-xxii
 assembly-language programs
 debugging CTR-221
 assigning load segments with PI-236
 asterisk (*) CTR-59, CTR-204
 asterisk (*) as prompt character ETR-62
 AsyncADBReceive GSTR-3-3, GSTR-3-7-8, GSTR-3-14, GSTR-3-27, GSTR-7-24
 Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA) GST-39, CTR-130, GSH-151, GSH-171
 asynchronous key event GSTR-7-15-18
 at sign (@) CTR-113, GSF-226
 atAlertID GSTR-6-20, GSTR-6-32, GSTR-6-89
 aTalkIntHnd GSTR-14-67
 aTalkNodeNo GSTR-14-66
 atBoundsRect GSTR-6-20, GSTR-6-32, GSTR-6-89
 athens GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 atItemList GSTR-6-89
 ATLK ROM AppleTalk #1, #2
 atStage1 GSTR-6-20, GSTR-6-32, GSTR-6-89
 atStage2 GSTR-6-20, GSTR-6-32, GSTR-6-89
 atStage3 GSTR-6-20, GSTR-6-32, GSTR-6-89
 atStage4 GSTR-6-20, GSTR-6-32, GSTR-6-89
 att rAddr PI-187
 att rBank PI-187
 ATTACH.DATA Pascal #16
 ATTACH.DRIVERS Pascal #16
 Attention/Sync signal (ADB) GSH-131
 attrAddr GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-49
 attrBank GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-49
 attrErr GSTR-12-42, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-B-2
 attrFixed GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-49, PI-187
 attrHandle GSTR-12-47
 attributes word PI-188, word GSTR-12-12, GSTR-12-32, GSTR-12-39
 attrLocked GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47, PI-187
 attrNoCross GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47, PI-187
 attrNoPurge GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47
 attrNoSpec GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47, PI-187
 attrPage GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47, PI-187
 attrPurge GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47, PI-187
 attrPurge1 GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47
 attrPurge2 GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47
 attrPurge3 GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-47
 attrSystem GSTR-12-47
 AUD CTR-256, CTR-365
 audio amplifier GST-25
 audio output jack CTR-8, CTR-256
 auto-boot UniDisk 3.5 #2
 auto-key event GSTR-6-39, GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-13, PI-69, PI-71-72
 autoKeyEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50, GSTR-25-120, PI-69
 autoKeyMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 automatic carriage return, I/O command GST-35
 automatic linefeed, I/O command GST-35
 automatic repeat CTR-3, CTR-358
 Autostart ROM CTR-356
 autoTrack GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-36, GSTR-4-83, GSTR-4-86
 auxFileType GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-32
 auxID GSTR-12-10-11, GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-15, GSTR-14-58, IIGS #17, See User ID
 auxiliary firmware ETR-86-93
 auxiliary Hi-Res pages GST-86
 auxiliary memory CTR-42-44, CTR-74, CTR-106, CTR-160-161, CTR-175, CTR-269, ETR-86-93, GSH-36-41, GSH-60, GST-16-17, Ile #3
 screen holes CTR-315
 bank GSH-14
 differences in Apple II family ETR-229
 map ETR-87
 moving data to ETR-92
 select switches GSH-258
 soft switches ETR-89
 subroutines ETR-91
 auxiliary RAM CTR-22, CTR-184, ETR-86-88
 auxiliary slot ETR-7, ETR-49
 differences in Apple II family ETR-229
 signals ETR-197-200

auxiliary type IIGS #27, ProDOS #19,
P16-279-280
auxiliary type field (ProDOS) PI-217
auxiliary type file attributes PI-217,
PI-218
auxlD field PI-192-194
AUXMOVE GSF-260, Ile #3
AUXMOVE subroutine ETR-91-92
auxtype ProDOS #19
available font GSTR-8-1, GSTR-8-25,
GSTR-8-36
axisParam GSTR-4-33-34, GSTR-4-88

B

B register GSF-18, GSF-35
native mode GST-13
Back Arrow key GSF-75
back panel CTR-9-10
background GSTR-16-52
background color GSTR-16-26,
GSTR-16-54, GSTR-16-57, GSTR-
16-110, GSTR-16-213, GSTR-16-
226
background colors GSH-57, GSH-77,
GST-3, GST-20, GST-46, PI-92
background pattern GSTR-16-18,
GSTR-16-111, GSTR-16-214,
GSTR-16-251, PI-85
background pixel GSTR-16-28, GSTR-
16-30, GSTR-16-52
background pixels PI-93
background printing GSF-97-98, GST-
33, GST-38, IIGS #16
background procedure GSTR-15-24,
GSTR-15-41, PI-173
BackGroundRgn GSTR-25-42, GSTR-
25-139
backslash (\) CTR-59, CTR-63, GSF-
75, GSTR-5-8, GSTR-13-14
backspace CTR-63, CTR-114, GSTR-
10-2, GSTR-10-29
Backspace key GSF-70, GSF-75
backspacing ETR-63
backup bit P16-134, P16-277, PI-215
BADBLOCK GSF-156, Ile #5
BadBlock \$2D error CTR-151
BADCMD GSF-156
BadCmd \$01 error CTR-150
badColorNum GSTR-16-115, GSTR-
16-220, GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
BADCTL GSF-156, SmartPort #7
BadCtl \$21 error CTR-150
BADCTLPARM GSF-156,
SmartPort #7
BadCtlParm \$22 error CTR-150
badDevNum GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-
47, GSTR-B-4, GSTR-23-15,

GSTR-23-28, GSTR-23-33, GSTR-
23-35, GSTR-23-38, GSTR-23-47,
GSTR-B-4
badFile GSTR-23-47
badFormat GSTR-23-16, GSTR-23-47,
GSTR-B-4
badInputErr GSTR-14-19, GSTR-14-
57, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
badItemType GSTR-6-56, GSTR-6-57,
GSTR-6-69, GSTR-6-84, GSTR-6-
90, GSTR-B-5
badLaserPrep GSTR-15-36, GSTR-15-
42, GSTR-15-49, GSTR-B-5
badLPFile GSTR-15-36, GSTR-15-42,
GSTR-15-49, GSTR-B-5
badMode GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47,
GSTR-B-4
BADPCNT GSF-156
BadPCnt \$04 error CTR-150
badRect GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
badScanLine GSTR-16-250, GSTR-16-
278, GSTR-B-3
badScrapType GSTR-20-10, GSTR-
20-12, GSTR-20-14, GSTR-20-19,
GSTR-B-5
badTableNum GSTR-16-115, GSTR-
16-116, GSTR-16-220, GSTR-16-
221, GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
badTitle GSTR-23-15, GSTR-B-4
BADUNIT GSF-156
BadUnit \$11 error CTR-150
bank \$00 GSF-12, GSF-15, GSH-44,
GST-16, GST-61
8-bit programs GST-83
Alternate Display Mode GST-47,
GST-68
and text display GST-70
direct page location GST-83
display memory GST-86
firmware entry points GSF-224-257
bank \$00
I/O links GST-52
interrupts GST-54
language-card switches GST-48
memory map GST-79
memory shadowing GST-29, GST-
77-78
page 3 routines GSF-260-261
page 3 vectors GSF-259
page Fx vectors GSF-262-263
ba running a program in GSF-49,
GSF-65
stack location GST-83
bank \$01 GSH-44, GST-16, GST-61
display memory GST-86
interrupts GST-54
language-card switches GST-48
memory map GST-79

memory shadowing GST-29, GST-
77-78
Super Hi-Res display GST-87
bank \$02 GST-18, GST-79
bank \$7F, memory map GST-78
bank \$E, vectors GSF-264-265
bank \$E0 GSF-308-310, GSH-41-43,
GST-29, GST-47, GST-77-78,
GST-86
bank \$E1 GSF-308-310, GSH-41-43,
GST-77-79, GST-86-87
bank \$FE, system ROM GST-78
bank \$FF GST-48, GST-54, GST-78
bank register values GST-82, GST-83
bank selector switches CTR-27-35
bank switches ETR-83-85
reading ETR-86
bank switching GSH-32, GST-17
auxiliary memory GSH-39
bank zero PI-4, PI-6, PI-192, PI-203,
PI-248, PI-267-270, PI-293-296
bank-boundry limited PI-187
bank-switched memory CTR-24-35,
ETR-82-86, ETR-87, ETR-229,
Ile #3
map ETR-82
See memory
bank/address GSF-21, GSF-22, GSF-
26, GSF-29, GSF-32, GSF-64
Bank2 switch CTR-241
banks, memory. See memory banks
BANKSIZE segment header field P16-
186, P16-299. See also headers;
segment(s)
barArrowBack GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-
87, GSTR-11-7
barInactive GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-87,
GSTR-11-7
barNorArrow GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-87,
GSTR-11-7
barNorThumb GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-
87, GSTR-11-7
barOutline GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-87,
GSTR-11-7
barPageRgn GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-87,
GSTR-11-7
barSelArrow GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-87,
GSTR-11-7
barSelThumb GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-
87, GSTR-11-7
BASICALC GSF-239
base family GSTR-8-7, GSTR-8-12,
GSTR-8-13
base line GSTR-10-7, GSTR-16-26,
GSTR-16-45, PI-93
baseOnlyBit GSTR-8-8, GSTR-8-50

BASIC GSF-48, GSF-51, GSF-74, GSF-75, GSF-82, GSF-83, GSF-86, GSF-87, GSF-90, GSF-112
 BASIC Miscellaneous #9
 BASIC command CTR-228
 BASIC device driver GSTR-23-3
 BASIC interpreter (BASIC.SYSTEM) P16-25, P16-34
 BASIC Monitor command ETR-115
 Applesoft See Applesoft BASIC
 command GSF-43
 compiler for GST-103
 Integer See Integer BASIC
 interface GSF-93
 mouse programs GSF-206-208
 mouse routines GSF-203
 BASIC.SYSTEM
 ProDOS #2, #6, #9, #17
 BASICIN GSF-70-73
 BASICIN subroutine ETR-58, ETR-220
 BASICIN subroutine, address in I/O link ETR-53
 BASICINPUT GSF-209
 BASICOUT GSF-70, GSF-73, GSF-76-78, GSF-80
 BASICOUT subroutine ETR-65, ETR-220
 BASICOUT subroutine, address in I/O link ETR-53
 BASICOUTPUT GSF-209
 basicType GSTR-23-46
 batch mode PI-13
 Battery RAM GSF-299, GSF-306, GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-9, GSTR-14-10, GSTR-14-11, GSTR-14-13, GSTR-14-16
 Battery RAM routines PI-181
 Battery RAM
 parameter reference numbers GSTR-14-12
 baud rate GSF-88, GSH-152, GST-35, GST-46
 baud rate for SSC ETR-279
 baud rate serial port 1 CTR-163
 baud rate serial port 2 CTR-177-178
 BD command GSF-96, GSF-97, GSF-183
 BeginUpdate GSTR-4-54, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-46, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-35, GSTR-25-47, GSTR-25-116, GSTR-25-119, PI-115, PI-118, PI-134
 BEL character ETR-53
 bell CTR-114
 BELL GSF-253
 bell character CTR-115
 Bell routine CTR-84
 BELL subroutine ETR-221
 BELL1 GSF-239, GSTR-14-53
 Bell1 routine CTR-84
 BELL1 subroutine ETR-39, ETR-221
 BELL1.2 GSF-239
 BELL2 GSF-240
 BELLVECTOR GSF-270
 bellVector GSTR-14-68
 bellVolume GSTR-14-65
 best-fit font algorithm GSTR-8-6, GSTR-8-16-17, GSTR-8-44
 Better Color option GSTR-15-8
 Better Text option GSTR-15-8
 bFileVers GSTR-15-14, GSTR-15-15, GSTR-15-48
 bgColor GSTR-16-110, GSTR-16-213
 binary file (ProDOS 8) P16-12, P16-224, P16-283
 binary files GST-8, GST-95
 BINITENTRY GSF-209
 bit cell (ADB) GSH-127
 bit definition ETR-236
 bit images PI-286
 bit map, volume. See volume bit map
 bit mapping of graphics ETR-23-26
 bit plane GSTR-16-31
 bit planes PI-98
 bit-mapped memory GST-95
 bits CTR-384-386, GSH-244-245
 bJDocLoop GSTR-15-14, GSTR-15-15, GSTR-15-37, GSTR-15-48
 black GSTR-16-274
 black and white drawing, QuickDraw II PI-103
 blanking intervals CTR-257
 blink interval GSTR-10-26
 blinking caret GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-26
 blinking menu item GSTR-13-76
 block GSTR-12-1. See also memory block
 block device formatting ProDOS #5
 block device I/O firmware, entry points CTR-23
 block devices P16-9, P16-14, P16-42-43, P16-84. See also device(s)
 block I/O device support GST-40
 block
 fixed GSTR-12-7
 locked movable GSTR-12-7
 locking GSTR-12-31
 purging GSTR-12-8, GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40
 unlocking GSTR-12-32, GSTR-12-33
 block-storage device (/RAM5) GST-40, GST-79
 block-type devices CTR-120
 BlockMove GSTR-12-21
 blocks. See call blocks; file blocks; file control block; memory blocks; parameter blocks; volume control blocks
 blue GSTR-16-274
 blueMask GSTR-16-274
 boldMask GSTR-16-276
 BOOLEAN GSTR-xxx
 boot initialization. See system startup
 boot prefix P16-65, P16-67, P16-167, PI-209
 boot-failure screen GSF-17
 boot/scan sequence GSF-17
 booting ETR-267-268, GST-40, GST-95
 bootstrap errors. See errors
 BOOTTRACKS.DATA Pascal #12
 Border Color register GSH-77, GSH-159
 border colors GSH-57, GSH-77-78, GST-3, GST-46
 bottleneck procedure IIGS #34
 bottom scroll bar GSTR-25-6, PI-110
 bottomMost GSTR-25-139
 boundary rectangle GSTR-16-13-17, GSTR-16-232, PI-80-84, PI-103
 boundRect GSTR-4-33-34, GSTR-4-88
 boundsRect GSTR-16-13, IIGS #34, PI-80
 boxNor GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
 boxReserved GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
 boxSel GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
 boxTitle GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
 BREAK GSF-233
 Break (BRK) GSF-36, GSF-183
 break character, I/O command GST-36
 break instruction GST-55
 break instructions ETR-155
 BREAK signal CTR-163
 breakpoints, (debugging) PI-250-251, GST-105
 BREAKVECTOR GSF-270, IIGS #1, GSTR-14-68
 BringToFront GSTR-25-36
 BRK (\$00) instructions CTR-212, CTR-221, CTR-334, GSF-179
 BRK (\$00) instructions handling CTR-337-338
 BRK handler ETR-155, IIGS #1
 BRK instruction ETR-155
 BRK vector ETR-148
 BRKV GSF-259
 brkVar GSTR-14-66
 broadcast signals (ADB) GSH-131-132
 brown320 GSTR-16-274
 BS GSF-241

BS character ETR-53
 btn0State GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-10,
 GSTR-7-51
 btn1State GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-10,
 GSTR-7-51
 btnIntrpt GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
 btnIntrptVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
 btnNorBack GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-87
 btnNorText GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-87
 btnOrMove GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-
 67
 btnOrMoveVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-
 14-67
 btnOutline GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-87
 btnSelBack GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-87
 btnSelText GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-87
 BufDimRec GSTR-16-206, GSTR-16-
 276
 buffer management ProDOS #9
 Buffer Too Small) ProDOS #21
 buffer-sizing record GSTR-16-205,
 GSTR-16-206-207
 buffering IIC #6, IIGS #13
 Buffering Enable GSF-83
 buffering, I/O GST-37-38
 buffers display CTR-38, CTR-99
 buffers input CTR-36, CTR-38
 buffers serial I/O CTR-343-345, CTR-
 362
 buffers, display P16-33
 buffers, I/O P16-14, P16-21-22, P16-
 24-25, P16-137. See also
 input/output
 bufferSize GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-37
 bug IIC #8, IIGS #13, #32, #44, #45,
 ImageWriter #1,
 Miscellaneous #3, Mouse #4,
 SmartPort #6, UniDisk 3.5 #3
 built-in CDA name GSTR-5-16,
 GSTR-5-23
 built-in I/O PI-2, PI-8-9
 built-in I/O ports See disk port; serial
 I/O ports
 built-in interrupt handler PI-267
 built-in keyboard (Apple IIe) GST-42,
 GST-43
 built-in RAM GST-80
 built-in ROM GST-80
 bus contention IIGS #32
 bus residents GSF-157
 bus. See Apple Desktop Bus
 BUSERR GSF-156
 BusErr \$06 error CTR-150
 busy error. See errors
 busy flag GSTR-5-3, GSTR-19-1,
 GSTR-19-3, GSTR-A-1, P16-36,
 P16-96, PI-157, PI-182, PI-183
 Busy word (Scheduler) P16-71, P16-
 96
 Busy word flag GST-70
 button GSTR-4-3, GSTR-4-14, GSTR-
 7-14, GSTR-7-31, GSTR-7-47
 button 1 status GSF-204-205
 button inputs, D-type connector
 GST-41
 button interrupt mode CTR-188
 button
 bold outline GSTR-4-14, GSTR-4-85
 cancel GSTR-6-4, GSTR-6-5, GSTR-
 6-18, GSTR-6-58
 default GSTR-6-5, GSTR-6-11,
 GSTR-6-37
 disk GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-31
 mouse GSTR-4-46
 OK GSTR-6-4, GSTR-6-5, GSTR-6-
 18, GSTR-6-58
 radio GSTR-4-4
 buttonItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-88
 buttons PI-125, PI-128, PI-132-135
 byte definition ETR-237
 byte(s)
 locating in files P16-274-275
 size of P16-33
 bytes CTR-384-386, GSH-244-245

C
 C IIGS #31
 C command CTR-156, CTR-170
 C Compiler (APW) P16-89, PI-xviii,
 PI-222
 c flag GSTR-2-5, GSTR-2-7, GSTR-B-
 1, PI-66
 C language GST-62, PI-xiv, PI-xviii,
 PI-65, PI-202, PI-225, PI-230,
 PI-234, PI-259
 Apple IIGS support GST-8
 compiler GST-102
 HodgePodge and PI-377-412
 programming examples PI-190, PI-
 377-4 PI-12
 reference manual GST-110
 Toolbox tool call libraries GST-63
 GSF-18, GSF-35
 GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-41
 PI-92, PI-287
 C, calling routines from GSTR-2-6
 C3COUT1 GSF-64, GSF-70, GSF-76-
 78, GST-53, GST-51, CTR-
 56, CTR-61, CTR-62, CTR-65-
 67, CTR-68, CTR-70
 C3KeyIn GST-51, GST-53, CTR-
 56, CTR-58, CTR-61, CTR-62
 cachePriority GS/OS #3
 Caching GS/OS #3
 cairo GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 calcCRect GSTR-4-25
 CalcMenuSize GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-
 19, GSTR-13-33, GSTR-13-37,
 GSTR-13-41, GSTR-13-58,
 IIGS #43, PI-154, PI-155, PI-165
 calcRect GSTR-4-86
 calculators GST-67
 calendars GST-67
 call blocks P16-89, P16-100-101,
 P16-213
 call macro GST-63
 Call statement GSF-20
 CALL -151 to invoke Monitor GST-48,
 CTR-223
 calling program (caller) P16-100,
 P16-213
 calling tool set routines
 assembly language GSTR-2-5
 C GSTR-2-6
 calls. See Exerciser; Memory
 Manager; parameter(s); ProDOS
 8; registers; system calls; tool
 calls or specific call
 CAN character ETR-54
 Canadian keyboard CTR-375
 cancel GSTR-6-89
 cancel button GSTR-6-4, GSTR-6-5,
 GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-21, GSTR-6-
 58, GSTR-8-14, PI-132, PI-133,
 PI-139
 cancel line CTR-63
 cancelDefault GSTR-6-89
 canceling lines ETR-63
 cannotReset GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
 cantSync GSTR-3-29, GSTR-B-4
 capitalization P16-18
 Caps Lock CTR-5, CTR-81, CTR-
 358, CTR-360, ETR-11, GSTR-7-
 9, GSTR-7-51, GSTR-7-9, GSTR-
 7-51
 for older software compatibility
 ETR-49
 card dimensions IIGS #28
 card driver IIGS #36
 cards See peripheral cards; See 80-
 column card; language card
 caret GSTR-7-36, GSTR-10-8, GSTR-
 10-9, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-20,
 GSTR-10-34, GSTR-10-38, GSTR-
 10-46
 caret (^) CTR-225, ETR-122, ETR-
 125, GSF-53, GSF-55
 caret, blinking GSTR-10-10, GSTR-
 10-26
 carriage return GSF-59, GSF-75, GSF-
 83

carriage return (CR) CTR-63,CTR-114,CTR-164,CTR-179
 carriage return character GSTR-10-40, GSTR-10-42
 carriage returns with SSC ETR-281
 carry bit CTR-43, See c flag
 carry flag. See c flag
 cassette I/O CTR-364, ETR-39-40, ETR-188
 commands ETR-111-114
 soft switches ETR-39
 Catalog routine ProDOS #17
 cataloging disks P16-xv, P16-26, P16-278-279
 Caution alert GSTR-6-6, PI-135, GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-35
 caution icon GSTR-6-35
 CDA header section GSTR-5-18
 CDA menu GSTR-5-3, GSTR-5-12, GSTR-5-21
 CDA name GSTR-5-16, GSTR-5-23
 CDA. See classic desk accessory
 central processing unit (CPU) ETR-4-6
 See also ETR-65C02 microprocessor
 Centronics IIe #7
 Certified Developer PI-278-279
 CH (cursor horizontal) CTR-64, ETR-52
 CH, changing memory contents ETR-105-110
 Change Address command GSTR-3-4
 change flag byte GSTR-10-43
 CHANGE PATH call PI-214, P16-11-12, P16-21, P16-257, P16-260, P16-262, P16-286
 description of P16-117-118
 changeFlag GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-10, GSTR-7-51
 channel-generator type word GSTR-21-16
 character GSTR-16-26
 character bounds rectangle GSTR-16-28, GSTR-16-52, GSTR-16-69, GSTR-16-76, GSTR-16-269
 character bounds width GSTR-16-52
 character code ETR-12
 character device driver GSTR-1-4, GSTR-23-1, GSTR-23-3
 character devices P16-9, P16-43. See also device(s), PI-173
 character echo-flag word GSTR-23-29
 character generator CTR-14,CTR-263, GSH-241-243
 control signals CTR-266
 character generator ROM ETR-178
 character I/O P16-6. See also input/output
 character image GSTR-16-26, PI-93
 character image width GSTR-16-44
 character origin GSTR-16-26-27, GSTR-16-45, PI-93
 character output switch (CSW) CTR-57,CTR-64,CTR-71,CTR-84,CTR-101,CTR-113,CTR-115, GST-52
 character position GSTR-10-7
 character rectangle GSTR-16-44
 character sets CTR-358-360, GSH-74-76
 alternate CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88,CTR-92,CTR-360
 ASCII CTR-3,CTR-70,CTR-78,CTR-80-81,CTR-381-382,CTR-391-395, GSH-59, GSH-74
 display CTR-89, GSH-262
 MouseText CTR-91
 primary CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88,CTR-359
 screen CTR-6
 text CTR-88-89, ETR-19-20
 character sets, text, differences among Apple II models ETR-228
 character width GSTR-16-26-27, GSTR-16-44, GSTR-16-45, GSTR-16-51, GSTR-16-70, GSTR-16-77, GSTR-16-267, GSTR-16-270, PI-93
 character, dead GSTR-16-45
 character, missing GSTR-16-48-49
 characters PI-92, PI-93-94
 characters at sign (@) CTR-113
 characters command CTR-155,CTR-205
 characters control CTR-4,CTR-5,CTR-60,CTR-65-67,CTR-70,CTR-114,CTR-165,CTR-392
 characters
 flashing CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88-89
 inverse CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88-89
 lowercase CTR-395
 normal CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88-89
 prompt CTR-59
 special CTR-393
 uppercase CTR-394
 CharBounds GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-69
 CHARGEN signal ETR-185
 CharWidth GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-70
 check box GSTR-4-3, GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-16
 control record GSTR-4-16-18, PI-125, PI-128
 checkBox GSTR-4-86
 CheckDiskError PI-136, PI-140, PI-308-310
 CheckFrontW PI-50, PI-116
 CheckHandle GSTR-12-22
 checkItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-88
 CheckMItem GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-34
 checkProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
 CheckToolError PI-46, PI-306-307
 CheckUpdate GSTR-25-37
 chExtra GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-51, GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-59, GSTR-16-60, GSTR-16-112, GSTR-16-217
 Choose Printer command (File menu) PI-32, PI-166, PI-289
 Choose Printer dialog box GSTR-15-1, GSTR-15-4-5
 ChooseCDA GSTR-5-12
 ChooseFont GSTR-8-13, GSTR-8-14, GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-26-27, GSTR-C-5, PI-97
 Chooser PI-167, PI-289
 chunky pixel GSTR-16-31
 chunky pixel organization PI-98
 cINTERSEG records P16-187, P16-298
 circles PI-90
 circuit board ETR-4-7
 connectors ETR-7
 clamp value GSTR-2-2, GSTR-7-27, GSTR-14-30, GSTR-14-31
 clamp
 absolute GSTR-14-21
 absolute device GSTR-14-37, GSTR-14-38
 clamping Mouse #7
 CLAMP MOUSE GSF-209, GSF-213
 ClampMouse GSTR-7-27, GSTR-14-30, Mouse #1, #3, CTR-194
 Claris Miscellaneous #4
 classic desk accessories GST-68, GST-89
 classic desk accessory (CDA) PI-156, PI-247, PI-262, PI-300, GSTR-5-1. See also desk accessories; new desk accessory
 supporting PI-1 PI-57
 writing PI-263
 classic desk accessory
 programming examples PI-263
 Cleanup call (System Loader) P16-227, P16-231, P16-245
 description of P16-249-250
 clear GSTR-5-30
 CLEAR BACKUP BIT PI-215

Clear command GSTR-6-43
 Clear command (Edit menu) PI-32
 Clear Modes command GSF-189
 clear-strobe switch ETR-12
 clearAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
 clearing screen GST-54
 clearModes GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 CLEARMOUSE GSF-209, GSF-212
 ClearMouse GSTR-14-31, Mouse #3,
 CTR-193
 ClearScreen GSTR-16-71
 ClearSRQTable GSTR-3-15
 CLEAR_BACKUP_BIT call P16-12,
 P16-260, P16-264, P16-277
 description of P16-134
 CLEOLZ GSF-79, CTR-112, CTR-113,
 ETR-50, ETR-69, ETR-219
 clicking (mouse) PI-14, PI-15, PI-48,
 PI-110
 Clipboard GST-71, GSTR-20-1,
 GSTR-20-5, GSTR-20-17, PI-32,
 PI-92, PI-159, PI-160, PI-161
 clipping PI-77, PI-81-82, PI-83, PI-
 105, PI-136
 clipping region GSTR-16-14-15,
 GSTR-16-17, GSTR-16-72, GSTR-
 16-113, GSTR-16-114, GSTR-16-
 187, GSTR-16-197, GSTR-16-208,
 GSTR-16-218, GSTR-17-10, PI-
 81, PI-82, PI-84
 ClipRect GSTR-6-7, GSTR-16-40,
 GSTR-16-72
 clipRgn GSTR-16-15, GSTR-16-219,
 GSTR-25-23, GSTR-25-28, PI-32
 clock GSF-306
 clock See real-time clock
 clock (microprocessor) PI-9
 clock (real-time) PI-9
 clock card ProDOS #1, #11
 clock chip interrupts GSF-180, GST-
 55
 clock driver routine ProDOS #10
 clock rate CTR-237, ETR-161
 clock routines PI-181
 clock signals CTR-239-241, ETR-162
 clock speed GST-3, GST-14-15, GST-
 84-85, PI-4, PI-269, PI-271, PI-
 290
 clock-calendar PI-9
 clockFormat GSTR-14-65
 clocks GSH-3, GSH-138
 clocks, real-time GSH-3, GSH-54,
 GSH-77, GSH-159-160
 clocks, signals GSH-185
 Close GSTR-5-14
 CLOSE PI-210, PI-211, PI-213
 close box GSTR-25-6, GSTR-25-8,
 GSTR-25-49, PI-48, PI-110, PI-
 111, PI-114
 CLOSE call CTR-127, CTR-141-142,
 GSF-5, GSF-131-132, P16-21,
 P16-24-25, P16-151-152, P16-
 264, P16-277
 description of P16-145
 Close command (File menu) PI-32
 close routine (NDA) PI-265
 CloseAllNDAs GSTR-5-12
 CloseDialog GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-36,
 PI-134, PI-144
 CloseNDA GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-13, PI-
 158
 CloseNDAbyWinPtr GSTR-5-6,
 GSTR-5-14, GSTR-25-122, PI-57,
 PI-158
 ClosePicture GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-9
 ClosePoly GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-72
 ClosePort GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-73,
 PI-97
 CloseRgn GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-74
 CloseWindow GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-68,
 GSTR-11-11, GSTR-11-16, GSTR-
 25-11, GSTR-25-29, GSTR-25-38,
 GSTR-25-127, PI-57, PI-114
 closing files PI-210, See file(s)
 CLREOL GSF-79, GSF-243
 ClrEOL routine CTR-112, CTR-113
 CLREOL subroutine ETR-50, ETR-64,
 ETR-221
 CLREOLZ GSF-243
 CLREOP GSF-79, GSF-242
 ClrEOP routine CTR-112, CTR-113
 CLREOP subroutine ETR-50, ETR-64,
 ETR-221
 ClrHeartBeat GSTR-14-53
 CLRSCR GSF-79, GSF-226
 ClrScr routine CTR-112, CTR-113
 CLRSCR subroutine ETR-64, ETR-221
 CLRTOP GSF-79, GSF-227
 ClrTop routine CTR-112, CTR-113
 CLRTOP subroutine ETR-64, ETR-221
 CLRVBINT IIGS #49
 CmdNum CTR-125
 cmdndIncomplete GSTR-3-14, GSTR-
 3-17, GSTR-3-18, GSTR-3-19,
 GSTR-3-25, GSTR-3-26, GSTR-3-
 27, GSTR-3-29, GSTR-B-4
 CMOS (Complementary Metal Oxide
 Semiconductor) design GST-13,
 CTR-237
 co-resident applications GST-64
 Cobol GST-103
 code conversions CTR-391
 cold start CTR-51, CTR-121-122,
 GSF-65, GSF-112, GSF-178, GSF-
 234
 cold-start reset ETR-95, GST-55,
 GST-97
 Collision Detect handler GSTR-3-4-5
 collision detection (ADB) GSH-138-
 139
 colon (:) CTR-216, CTR-224, GSF-28,
 GSF-29, GSF-40, GSF-51, GSF-
 52, GSF-64
 colon (:) as Monitor command ETR-
 105
 color box GSTR-15-8
 color fringing GSH-58
 color graphics GSF-10, GST-3, GST-
 21-24
 color graphics with black-and-white
 monitors ETR-16
 color in text mode GST-20
 color palette PI-7, PI-99-100, See
 palette
 color printing GSTR-15-8, GSTR-15-
 15-18
 color subcarrier and expansion slots
 GST-28
 color table GSTR-11-10, GSTR-13-43,
 GSTR-16-31-33, GSTR-16-115,
 GSTR-16-116, GSTR-16-158,
 GSTR-16-220, GSTR-16-221
 alert window GSTR-25-17
 document window GSTR-25-17
 standard GSTR-16-159
 window GSTR-25-142
 color tables PI-7, PI-99-100
 color tables (palettes) GST-22, GST-
 65
 color
 background GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-
 213
 foreground GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-
 228
 list GSTR-11-10
 window frame GSTR-25-18, GSTR-
 25-57, GSTR-25-99
 window information bar GSTR-25-
 20
 window size box GSTR-25-19
 window title GSTR-25-18
 window title bar GSTR-25-19
 colorMItemHilite GSTR-13-78,
 GSTR-13-87
 colorReplace GSTR-13-72, GSTR-13-
 87
 colors PI-98-103
 colors, dithered PI-101-103
 colors, double high-resolution
 graphics CTR-99

colors, double-high-resolution graphics ETR-25-26, ETR-185
 colors, high-resolution CTR-97,CTR-268
 colors, high-resolution graphics ETR-23-25,183-184
 colors, low-resolution CTR-94,CTR-266
 colors, low-resolution graphics ETR-21-22,182
 colors, QuickDraw PI-98-103
 colors, Super Hi-Res PI-7, PI-98
 colors, window frame PI-111
 colorTable GSTR-16-275
 column-address strobe (CAS) CTR-252
 comma tabbing with original Apple IIe ETR-271
 command character CTR-155,CTR-205
 command characters GSF-87
 command characters GST-37
 communications mode GSF-87
 Monitor ETR-101
 printer mode GSF-87
 terminal mode GSF-91-92
 command number CTR-125,CTR-127
 command numbers GST-50
 command packets, SmartPort GSF-159, GSF-166-167
 command register, ACIA CTR-280
 command strings GSF-87
 command-line interface PI-13
 Command/Data register GSH-122-123
 commands. See specific command
 comment GSTR-17-15
 communication ports P16-9, P16-43
 Communications Card IIe #7
 communications mode GSF-83
 command character GSF-87
 commands GSF-91-92
 communications programs P16-83
 Compact utility (APW) PI-223
 compaction P16-38, PI-188
 compaction of memory GSTR-12-5, GSTR-12-6-7, GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-22
 CompactMem GSTR-12-22
 comparison routine GSTR-11-24
 compatibility GSH-2, GSH-143, GSH-167
 compatibility (Apple II) PI-9-10
 software P16-4, P16-10-11. See also ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16
 compiler PI-xviii, PI-222, See C Compiler
 compilers GST-8, GST-100-103
 compiling P16-89
 complementary decimal values ETR-12
 Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor (CMOS) design GST-13
 complete system disk PI-298-300
 completion routine GSTR-3-7-9, GSTR-3-25
 AsyncADBReceive GSTR-3-8
 SRQ list GSTR-3-9
 composite (NTSC) video GST-3, GST-19-21
 composite video connector GSH-6
 conditional assembly GST-102
 Configuration register GST-85
 configuration, hardware, ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16 P16-87
 configuration, setting initial P16-64, P16-81. See also programming
 connector ETR-8, ETR-186
 connector specification GSTR-xGSTR-xvi
 connectors CTR-9-10
 connectors GSH-5-6
 9-pin ETR-8, ETR-40
 Apple Desktop Bus GSH-3, GSH-6
 back panel ETR-8
 cassette I/O ETR-8, ETR-39
 composite video GSH-6, GSH-66
 D-type ETR-8, ETR-40
 disk drive CTR-274, GSH-6
 disk-port GSH-143-144
 external power CTR-234
 game GSH-6, GSH-155
 game I/O ETR-7, ETR-13
 hand control ETR-8, ETR-40-43
 hand controller CTR-199-200, CTR-287
 keyboard CTR-254
 mouse CTR-187, CTR-284
 phone jacks ETR-8, ETR-39
 power ETR-160, GSH-193
 RCA-type jack ETR-8
 RGB video GSH-6, CTR-154, CTR-278, GSH-5
 video expansion CTR-270
 video monitor ETR-8, ETR-186
 video output CTR-270
 constants
 Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-28-29
 Control Manager GSTR-4-85-86
 Desk Manager GSTR-5-30
 Dialog Manager GSTR-6-88-89
 event codes PI-69
 Event Manager GSTR-7-50-51
 Font Manager GSTR-8-50-51
 Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-42
 LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-47
 List Manager GSTR-11-25
 Memory Manager GSTR-12-47
 memory-block attributes PI-187
 Menu Manager GSTR-13-87
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-64-68
 Print Manager GSTR-15-47
 QuickDraw II GSTR-16-274-76
 Scrap Manager GSTR-20-19
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-36-37
 Standard File Operations Tool Set GSTR-22-32
 task codes PI-74
 Text Tool Set GSTR-23-46
 Tool Locator GSTR-24-26
 toolbox-defined PI-38, PI-50
 Window Manager GSTR-25-139-141
 constructing menus PI-149-152
 conTable320 GSTR-16-107
 conTable640 GSTR-16-107
 content height, maximum GSTR-25-87
 content region GSTR-4-8, GSTR-25-9, GSTR-25-12, GSTR-25-35, GSTR-25-51, GSTR-25-53, GSTR-25-60, GSTR-25-62, GSTR-25-64, GSTR-25-83, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-92, GSTR-25-94, GSTR-25-96, GSTR-25-103, GSTR-25-105, GSTR-25-106, GSTR-25-131, GSTR-25-132, PI-112, PI-114, PI-129
 content width, maximum GSTR-25-87
 CONTINUE BASIC command CTR-228, GSF-43
 Control CTR-5, CTR-81, CTR-255, CTR-358, ETR-11, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-4-1
 CONTROL SmartPort #5, #6
 control action procedure PI-118
 control blocks. See file control blocks; volume control blocks
 CONTROL call CTR-127, CTR-136-139, GSF-129-130
 control characters CTR-4, CTR-5, CTR-60, CTR-65-67, CTR-70, CTR-114, CTR-165, CTR-392, ETR-244, ETR-248, GSF-73, GSF-76-78
 suppressing GSF-90
 with 80-column firmware 273-274
 with BASICOUT ETR-53-55
 with COUT1 ETR-53-55
 with Pascal I/O protocol ETR-70-71
 control code GSTR-23-15

- control definition procedure GSTR-4-24, GSTR-4-46, GSTR-4-73, GSTR-11-1, GSTR-11-11, PI-130
- control flag GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-72
 - checkbox GSTR-4-18
 - radio button GSTR-4-14
 - scroll bar GSTR-4-22
 - simple button GSTR-4-16
 - size box GSTR-4-20
- control list CTR-137,CTR-138, GSTR-25-68
- Control Manager GST-59, GST-66-67, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-5, GSTR-4-1-88, GSTR-6-28, GSTR-25-9, PI-20, PI-64, PI-71, PI-117, PI-124-131, PI-158, PI-264, PI-288
- Control Manager IIGS #4, #38
 - constants GSTR-4-85-86
 - data structures GSTR-4-87-88
 - error codes GSTR-4-88
 - icon font GSTR-4-11
 - part codes GSTR-4-8
 - shutdown routine GSTR-4-43
 - startup routine GSTR-4-42
 - status routine GSTR-4-44
 - using GSTR-4-9-10
 - version number routine GSTR-4-43
- control manipulation (HodgePodge) PI-130
- Control Panel GSF-3, GSF-40, GSF-75, GSF-82, GSF-83, GSF-86, GSF-90, GSF-93, GSF-97, GSF-110, GSF-112, GSF-117, GSF-130, GSF-299-307, GSH-3, GST-3, GST-46-47, GSTR-3-1, GSTR-5-3, GSTR-5-22, GSTR-6-21, GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-36, GSTR-7-37, GSTR-10-26, GSTR-13-76, PI-9, PI-157, PI-174
- Control Panel settings P16-46
- Control Panel
 - ADB Tool Set GST-70
 - Alternate Display Mode GST-47, GST-68
 - AppleTalk GST-38
 - boot device location GST-40
 - changing clock speed GST-77, GST-85, GST-97
 - desk accessories GST-68
 - I/O buffering GST-38
 - I/O slot assignments GST-97
 - monochrome monitors GST-19
 - serial-port configuration GST-34
 - sound volume GST-24
 - time and date setting GST-26
- control record GSTR-4-11-24
 - checkbox GSTR-4-16-18
 - radio button GSTR-4-18-20
 - scroll bar GSTR-4-20-22
 - simple button GSTR-4-14-16
 - size box GSTR-4-23-24
- control register CTR-ACIA,CTR-278-279, GSH-159, GST-85
- control signals and expansion slots GST-28
- control
 - active GSTR-4-7
 - custom GSTR-4-24
 - defining GSTR-4-24-40
 - highlighted GSTR-4-7
 - inactive GSTR-4-7
 - standard GSTR-4-3-4
 - window GSTR-4-8, GSTR-25-6-7
- Control-A CTR-169,CTR-171,CTR-172,CTR-179,CTR-362, GSF-87
- Control-A I CTR-181,CTR-184
- Control-A Q CTR-184
- Control-A T CTR-180-182,CTR-184
- Control-Apple-Escape PI-73
- Control-B CTR-214,CTR-228, GSF-43, GSF-65
- Control-B Monitor command ETR-115
- Control-C CTR-67,CTR-204,CTR-214,CTR-228,CTR-341, GSF-43, GSF-65
- Control-C Monitor command ETR-115
- Control-D CTR-155,CTR-169
- Control-E CTR-213,CTR-228, GSF-60, GSF-77
- Control-E Monitor command ETR-111
- Control-F GSF-77, GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
- Control-G CTR-65,CTR-66,CTR-84, GSF-77
- Control-H CTR-63,CTR-65,CTR-66, GSF-77
- Control-I CTR-155,CTR-158,CTR-165,CTR-362, GSF-87
- Control-J CTR-65,CTR-66, GSF-77
- Control-K CTR-57,CTR-66,CTR-228, GSF-64, GSF-77, GST-52
- Control-K Monitor command ETR-115
- Control-L CTR-66, GSF-77
- Control-M CTR-65,CTR-66,CTR-118, GSF-77
- Control-N CTR-66, GSF-77
- Control-O CTR-66,CTR-90, GSF-77
- Control-P CTR-57,CTR-90,CTR-215,CTR-228, GSF-40, GSF-64, GST-52
- Control-P Monitor command ETR-115
- Control-Q CTR-66, GSF-77
- Control-R CTR-66,CTR-172,CTR-181,CTR-184, GSF-66, GSF-77
- control-related events
 - programming techniques PI-129
- Control-Reset CTR-4,CTR-49,CTR-51,CTR-52,CTR-81,CTR-121,CTR-123,CTR-162,CTR-171,CTR-176,CTR-204,CTR-218, GSF-43, GSF-46, GSF-112, GST-36, GST-48, P16-25
- Control-S CTR-66,CTR-67,CTR-341, GSF-77
- Control-T CTR-171, GSF-64
- Control-U CTR-63,CTR-66,CTR-82, ETR-50, GSF-77
- Control-V CTR-66,CTR-158,CTR-172, GSF-77
- Control-W CTR-66,CTR-158, GSF-77, GSF-87
- Control-X CTR-60,CTR-63,CTR-67,CTR-82, ETR-63, GSF-58, GSF-75, GSF-77, GSF-247, GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
- Control-Y CTR-67,CTR-218,CTR-228, GSF-47, GSF-65, GSF-77, GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
- Control-Y Monitor command ETR-119
- Control-Z CTR-67
- Control-I CTR-67, GSF-77
- Control-\ CTR-67, GSF-77
- Control-J CTR-67, GSF-77
- Control-^ GSF-64, GSF-77
- Control-_ CTR-67, GSF-77
- controlKey GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-51
- controlling programs P16-71, P16-82,184, P16-204, P16-207-210, P16-213, P16-222, P16-224-225, P16-240, P16-244, P16-249. See also application(s); System Loader, PI-197, PI-199, PI-259-260
 - designing P16-207-209
 - controlling user access to files PI-218
- controls PI-20, PI-116, PI-117, PI-124-131
 - active PI-128, PI-129
 - custom PI-130
 - events and PI-129-130
 - frame PI-129
 - highlighting PI-128
 - inactive PI-128
 - invisible PI-128
 - types of PI-124-125
 - value PI-125, PI-128, PI-130

windows and PI-129
 conventions
 boldface GSTR-xxGSTR-xi
 Courier GSTR-xxGSTR-xi
 italic GSTR-xxGSTR-xi
 converting programs. See ProDOS 8
 and ProDOS 16
 coordinate plane GSTR-16-9-14, PI-
 76, PI-77-79, PI-80
 locations on PI-78
 size of PI-77
 coordinates
 global PI-70, PI-77,82-84
 local PI-77, PI-82-84, PI-103, PI-
 105, PI-117-118
 COP GSF-36, GSF-179
 copies GSTR-15-8
 copMgr GSTR-14-67
 COPMGRV GSF-265
 copy GSTR-5-30
 Copy command GSTR-6-41, GSTR-
 20-1, GSTR-20-6
 Copy command (Edit menu) PI-32,
 PI-141, PI-159, PI-160
 COPY mode PI-87
 copy protection UniDisk 3.5 #1
 copy-protection engineer (CPE) tools
 GSF-144-145
 copyAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
 copying, files P16-84-85
 copying, sparse files P16-30, P16-86
 CopyPixels GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-10,
 PI-103
 CopyRgn GSTR-16-75
 COPYRIGHT GSF-209
 cosine GSTR-9-20
 count word GSTR-14-49
 CountFamilies GSTR-8-28
 CountFonts GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-29-
 30
 CountMItems GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-
 35
 Courier GSTR-xxGSTR-xi, GSTR-8-4,
 GSTR-8-51
 COUT GSF-70, GSF-71, GSF-75, GSF-
 76, GSF-79, GSF-249, IIc #2,
 IIe #8, Miscellaneous #1,
 Mouse #6
 COut routine CTR-63,CTR-64,CTR-
 90,CTR-112,CTR-113,CTR-214,
 GST-53
 COUT subroutine ETR-50-52, ETR-
 64, ETR-221, GSF-39
 deactivating 80-column firmware
 ETR-50
 COUT1 GSF-64, GSF-70, GSF-74,
 GSF-76-80, GSF-249, GST-32,
 GST-51, GST-53, ProDOS #4
 21, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-59,
 GSTR-4-74, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-13-17
 CtlBootInit GSTR-4-41
 ctlColor GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-
 17, GSTR-4-19, GSTR-4-21,
 GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-11-10, GSTR-13-17
 ctlData GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-63, GSTR-4-78, GSTR-4-
 87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-13-17
 ctlFlag GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlHilite GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlInVis GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-18,
 GSTR-4-20, GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-
 24, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-80,
 GSTR-4-85
 ctlList GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlListBar GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlMemDraw GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlMemHeight GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-
 26
 ctlMemSize GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 CtlNewRes GSTR-4-45
 CtlNewRes IIGS #4
 ctlNext GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlOwner GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlProc GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlRect GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlRefcon GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 21, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-59,
 GSTR-4-74, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-13-17
 CtlBootInit GSTR-4-41
 ctlColor GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-
 17, GSTR-4-19, GSTR-4-21,
 GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-11-10, GSTR-13-17
 ctlData GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-63, GSTR-4-78, GSTR-4-
 87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-13-17
 ctlFlag GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlHilite GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlInVis GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-18,
 GSTR-4-20, GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-
 24, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-80,
 GSTR-4-85
 ctlList GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlListBar GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlMemDraw GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlMemHeight GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-
 26
 ctlMemSize GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 CtlNewRes GSTR-4-45
 CtlNewRes IIGS #4
 ctlNext GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlOwner GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlProc GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlRect GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlRefcon GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 21, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-59,
 GSTR-4-74, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-13-17
 COut1 routine CTR-56,CTR-60,CTR-
 65,CTR-67,CTR-68,CTR-
 70,CTR-112,CTR-114
 COUT1 subroutine ETR-51-53, ETR-
 64, ETR-136,222
 address in I/O link ETR-51
 on original Apple IIe ETR-56
 COUTZ GSF-249
 cover ETR-2
 CP/M CTR-328, ETR-234
 starting up with ETR-268
 CPE (copy-protection engineer) tools
 GSF-144-145
 CPU CTR-13, ETR-4-6
 CPU See 65816 microprocessor, See
 also 65C02 microprocessor
 CR CTR-See carriage return, GSF-242
 CR character ETR-53
 CREATE PI-210, PI-213, UniDisk
 3.5 #3, P16-21, P16-85, P16-
 103, P16-277, P16-287
 description of P16-111-114
 CreateControl GSTR-11-10
 CreateList GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-11,
 GSTR-11-16, GSTR-11-23
 creating files. See file(s)
 creation date and time P16-14, P16-
 21, P16-84-86, P16-119, P16-
 258, P16-260, P16-263, P16-
 276. See also modification date
 and time; programming
 creation field P16-276
 cRELOC records P16-187, P16-297
 CROUT GSF-79, GSF-248
 CROut routine CTR-112,CTR-114
 CROUT subroutine ETR-64, ETR-222
 CROUT1 GSF-247
 CROut1 routine CTR-112,CTR-114
 CROUT1 subroutine ETR-64, ETR-222
 CROW0 IIGS #21
 CROW1 IIGS #21
 crsrUpdtHnd GSTR-14-68
 Crunch utility (APW) GST-105, PI-223
 crWidth GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13
 cString GSTR-11-25
 CStringBounds GSTR-16-29, GSTR-
 16-58, GSTR-16-76
 CStringWidth GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-
 58, GSTR-16-77
 CSW (character output switch) CTR-
 57,CTR-64,CTR-71,CTR-
 84,CTR-101,CTR-113,CTR-155,
 GST-52
 CSW link ETR-140-141
 CSWH CTR-57
 CSWL CTR-57
 ctlAction GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-19, GSTR-4-
 21, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-59,
 GSTR-4-74, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-13-17
 CtlBootInit GSTR-4-41
 ctlColor GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-
 17, GSTR-4-19, GSTR-4-21,
 GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-11-10, GSTR-13-17
 ctlData GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-63, GSTR-4-78, GSTR-4-
 87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-13-17
 ctlFlag GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlHilite GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlInVis GSTR-4-16, GSTR-4-18,
 GSTR-4-20, GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-
 24, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-80,
 GSTR-4-85
 ctlList GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlListBar GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlMemDraw GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 ctlMemHeight GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-
 26
 ctlMemSize GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 CtlNewRes GSTR-4-45
 CtlNewRes IIGS #4
 ctlNext GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlOwner GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlProc GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlRect GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-
 13-17
 ctlRefcon GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-14,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 21, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-59,
 GSTR-4-74, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-
 11-6, GSTR-13-17

19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-62, GSTR-4-77, GSTR-4-
 87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-13-17
 CtlReset GSTR-4-44
 CtlShutDown GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-43
 CtlShutdown PI-58
 CtlStartUp GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-42, PI-
 45
 CtlStatus GSTR-4-44
 CtlTextDev GSTR-23-15-16
 ctlValue GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13,
 GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-
 19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-64, GSTR-4-79, GSTR-4-
 87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-13-17
 CtlVersion GSTR-4-43
 ctlYVector GSTR-14-68, GSF-274
 CUPDATE GSF-269
 current font GSTR-8-8, GSTR-16-26,
 GSTR-16-119, GSTR-16-224
 current icon font GSTR-25-109
 current, supply ETR-159-160
 cursor GSF-71, GSTR-16-37-38,
 GSTR-16-156, GSTR-16-160,
 GSTR-16-182, GSTR-16-222,
 GSTR-16-230, GSTR-16-264,
 GSTR-17-16, GSTR-25-46, PI-116
 blinking question mark CTR-
 169, CTR-179
 blinking underscore CTR-179
 changing GSF-41, GSF-64
 control GSF-72
 keys GSF-10
 mouse CTR-187
 movement keys CTR-4, CTR-62
 cursor keys PI-8
 cursor motion in escape mode ETR-
 60-61
 cursor position ETR-52-58, GST-53
 cursor record GSTR-16-37, GSTR-16-
 117, GSTR-16-222
 cursor-control keys ETR-11
 cursorAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
 custom control GSTR-4-24, PI-130
 custom debugger IIGS #1
 custom defProc IIGS #42
 custom fonts ImageWriter #1
 custom IC's ETR-164-168
 custom menu GSTR-13-6, PI-149,
 GSTR-13-72, GSTR-13-87
 custom windows IIGS #42, PI-111
 cut GSTR-5-30
 cut and paste GST-67, GST-71
 Cut command (Edit menu) PI-32, PI-
 141, PI-159, PI-160, GSTR-6-42,
 GSTR-20-1, GSTR-20-6
 cutAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
 cutting and pasting PI-159-161

internally PI-160
 large amounts of data PI-161
 private scrap PI-161
 programming techniques PI-160-
 161
 publicly PI-160
 CV (cursor vertical) CTR-64, ETR-52
 cycle stealing ETR-170

D

D register GSF-11, GSF-35
 changing GSF-60
 See direct register
 D-type connector ETR-8, GST-41
 daisy chains, interrupt and DMA
 ETR-193-195, ETR-208
 daisy-chain drive connection GST-39
 daNotFound GSTR-5-14, GSTR-5-20,
 GSTR-5-30, GSTR-B-3
 darkGray320 GSTR-16-274
 darkGreen320 GSTR-16-274
 data area GSTR-25-9-10, GSTR-25-54,
 GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-96, GSTR-
 25-97, PI-105, PI-112, PI-117
 data bank GSTR-25-43
 data bank register GSF-13, GSF-16,
 GSF-35, GSF-92, GSH-200, P16-
 104, PI-294, PI-295
 , changing GSF-61
 system interrupt handler GSF-181
 data bank registers GST-13, GST-14,
 GST-83
 data bits, settings GST-34, GST-35
 data blocks. See file blocks
 data buffer pointer GSF-126-127
 data bus ETR-161
 data bus and expansion slots GST-28
 data byte encoding table GSF-164
 Data Carrier Detect CTR-281
 data carrier detect (DCD) GSF-84
 data format GSF-88
 serial port 1 CTR-163
 serial port 2 CTR-177-178
 data format for SSC ETR-279
 data inputs CTR-23
 data overruns GST-38
 data registers, 16-bit GST-61
 Data Set Ready (DSR) CTR-281
 data set ready (DSR) GSF-84-85, GSF-
 95
 data structures PI-277
 Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-
 3-29
 Control Manager GSTR-4-87-88
 Dialog Manager GSTR-6-89-90
 Event Manager GSTR-7-51
 Font Manager GSTR-8-51

initializing (HodgePodge) PI-38-41
 LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-47
 List Manager GSTR-11-25-26
 Menu Manager GSTR-13-88
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-69
 Print Manager GSTR-15-47-48
 QuickDraw II GSTR-16-276-278
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-37
 Standard File Operations Tool Set
 GSTR-22-32
 toolbox-defined PI-38
 Window Manager GSTR-25-142-143
 Data Terminal Ready (DTR) CTR-
 280, GSF-84-85, GSF-95
 data transfer CTR-42-43
 data transmission rate GST-34, GST-
 46
 date
 changing GSF-64
 displaying GSF-40, GSF-63
 setting GST-26
 dateFormat GSTR-14-65
 dates. See creation date and time;
 modification date and time
 DB register. See data bank register
 dbl hi-res Ile #3
 dbIClkTime GSTR-14-65
 DBR register GSF-11, GSF-13, GSF-35
 DC1 character ETR-54
 DC2 character ETR-54
 DC3 character ETR-54
 DCB (device control block) GSF-
 123, 130
 DCD (data carrier detect) GSF-84
 DCD handshaking GST-34
 dead character GSTR-16-45
 deallocation of memory GSTR-12-1,
 GSTR-12-23, GSTR-12-24
 DEALLOC_INTERRUPT PI-272,
 ProDOS #12, P16-48, P16-95,
 P16-177
 description of P16-175
 Debugger (APW) GST-8, GST-105
 debuggers P16-61, P16-89, CTR-
 212, CTR-221
 debugging GSF-48, PI-246-254
 with Apple IIGS Debugger PI-248-
 253
 with desk accessories PI-246-247
 with Monitor program PI-247-248
 debugging stub IIGS #1
 Dec2Int GSTR-9-8
 Dec2Long GSTR-9-9
 decBsyFlag GSTR-14-68
 DECBUSYFLG GSF-270
 decimal CTR-387-388
 decimal number conversion GST-49
 decimal numbers GSH-246-248

decimal numbers, converting GSF-41,65
 decimal values ETR-12
 converting to hexadecimal ETR-238-239
 negative ETR-239-240
 decimal, negative CTR-388-389
 default button GSTR-6-5, GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-21, GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-37, GSTR-6-51, GSTR-6-80
 alert box PI-135
 dialog boxes PI-139
 default prefix PI-208, PI-209
 default properties (windows) PI-108
 DefaultFilter GSTR-6-37
 definition procedures PI-51, PI-109, PI-130, PI-136, PI-149
 defProc IIGS #42
 defProcParm GSTR-6-90
 delay Miscellaneous #12
 Delete CTR-4, CTR-358
 delete PI-141
 Delete key GSF-75
 DeleteID GSTR-14-59
 DeleteMenu GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-36, GSTR-13-39
 deleteMessage GSTR-24-15, GSTR-24-26
 DeleteMItem GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-37, PI-154
 deleting files. See file(s)
 deleting text GST-67
 DelHeartBeat GSTR-7-25, GSTR-14-52
 delta GSF-199
 delta flag byte GSTR-10-43
 demultiplexer GSH-113-114
 dependencies GSTR-C-1-5
 Deref PI-190
 dereference GSTR-12-5
 dereferencing PI-189, PI-190, See memory handles
 descender GSTR-16-45
 descent GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-45, GSTR-16-48, GSTR-16-62
 descent line GSTR-16-45, PI-93
 design guidelines IIGS #28
 desk accessories GSH-43, GST-3, GST-46, GST-67, GST-89, P16-52-54, P16-170, PI-21, PI-47, PI-75, PI-156-158, PI-182. See also classic desk accessory; new desk accessory
 Apple menu and PI-31
 debugging with PI-246-247
 files P16-53-54
 HodgePodge and PI-158
 Macintosh PI-156, PI-289
 programming techniques PI-262-265
 supporting PI-156-158
 TaskMaster and PI-158
 User ID and PI-6-71
 writing PI-262-265
 desk accessory GSTR-1-3, GSTR-5-1
 alternate-display-mode GSTR-5-24
 classic GSTR-5-1
 event GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-14
 new GSTR-5-1
 Desk Accessory menu GSTR-13-GSTR-4-5
 Desk Manager GSF-180, GST-59, GST-67-68, GST-89, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-5, GSTR-5-1-30, PI-21, PI-47, PI-64, PI-71, PI-156-158, PI-182, PI-262-265
 constants GSTR-5-30
 error codes GSTR-5-30
 GetNextEvent and GSTR-7-40
 shutdown routine GSTR-5-10
 startup routine GSTR-5-9
 status routine GSTR-5-11
 version number routine GSTR-5-10
 desk scrap GST-71, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-23, GSTR-10-45, GSTR-20-1, GSTR-20-3, GSTR-20-5-6, PI-21, PI-141, PI-159
 data types GSTR-20-3-4
 data types PI-160
 on disk PI-160
 desk-accessory event PI-69
 DESK.ACCS subdirectory GSTR-5-3, GSTR-5-6
 deskAccEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50, PI-69
 deskAccHnd GSTR-14-68
 deskAccMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 DeskBootInit GSTR-5-9
 DeskReset GSTR-5-11
 DeskShutDown GSTR-5-4, GSTR-5-5, GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-10, PI-58, PI-158
 DeskStartUp GSTR-5-4, GSTR-5-5, GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-9, PI-45, 158
 DeskStatus GSTR-5-11
 desktop GSTR-25-1, GSTR-25-39, GSTR-25-91, GSTR-25-39-43
 desktop applications PI-10, PI-13, PI-124
 DeskTop Bus GST-12
 ADB microcontroller GST-42-43, GST-70
 detached keyboard support GST-42
 firmware GST-43
 interface GST-3-4, GST-41-42
 interrupts GST-55
 mouse support GST-42-43
 Tool Set GST-70
 desktop features, supporting PI-156-161
 desktop interface PI-xviii, PI-xix-xx, PI-10-13, PI-20-21, PI-257
 desktop pattern GSTR-25-43
 desktop tools GST-66-68
 desktop user interface GSH-233, GST-3, GST-48, GST-58, GST-110, GSTR-xGSTR-xvi
 desktop, programming techniques PI-10
 desktop-interface tool sets PI-20-21
 DeskVersion GSTR-5-10
 destination rectangle GSTR-10-4, GSTR-10-6-7, GSTR-10-36
 DESTROY PI-210, PI-213, P16-21, P16-115-116
 destroying files PI-210
 detached keyboard GST-42-43
 Deutsche Industrie Normal GST-42
 devcnt ProDOS #20
 Developer Technical Support PI-279
 development environment GSTR-xGSTR-xvii, See Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop
 devErr GSTR-23-16, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
 device addresses (ADB) GSH-137-138
 device assignment, peripheral card ETR-145
 device calls. See system calls
 device control block (DCB) CTR-130, CTR-138, GSF-123, 130
 device driver GSTR-3-3, GSTR-7-21
 device driver entry point GSTR-23-3
 device driver event GSTR-7-4
 device driver, installing GSTR-7-23-24
 device driver, removing GSTR-7-25
 device driver, writing GSTR-7-21-23
 device drivers P16-43, P16-254, PI-69, PI-166, PI-173
 standard I/O links GST-51-52
 device handlers (ADB) GSH-136-137
 device identification ETR-145
 device independence PI-12
 Device Information Block (DIB) ProDOS #21, SmartPort #4, #7, CTR-131
 device mapping GSF-117-119
 device registers GSH-133-136
 device search at system startup P16-45-46. See also system startup

DEVICE SELECT Iie #2, #4
 device select signal GST-30
 DEVICE SELECT ϕ signal ETR-133
 device(s) P16-8, P16-42-46. See also
 interrupt(s); system calls or
 specific device
 accessing P16-43-45, P16-84. See
 also programming
 block P16-9, P16-14, P16-42-43,
 P16-84
 block read and block write P16-44-
 45
 character P16-9, P16-43
 definition of P16-42
 formatting disks. See disks
 input P16-42-43
 input/output P16-42
 interrupt-handling and P16-47-
 49. See also interrupt handlers
 last-accessed P16-44
 named P16-7, 10, P16-43-46, P16-
 84, P16-128
 numbers P16-45, P16-155
 online, number supported P16-45
 output P16-42-43
 sequential-access P16-43
 volume control blocks and P16-
 47. See also volume(s)
 device-driver entry point
 ProDOS #21
 device-driver events PI-69, PI-73
 device-driver table ProDOS #20
 device-independence P16-91
 device-interface tool sets PI-21
 devices ProDOS #20
 devlst ProDOS #20
 devNotAtAddr GSTR-3-25, GSTR-3-
 29, GSTR-B-4
 DEVSPEC GSF-156
 DevSpec \$30-\$3F error CTR-151
 DHIREs soft switch ETR-30
 DHiRes switch CTR-46, CTR-
 102, CTR-103
 DIAGMOUSE GSF-209
 diagnostic routines GSF-3, GST-70
 Diagnostics ROM ETR-168
 dial GSTR-4-4
 dialog box GSTR-1-3, GSTR-6-1,
 GSTR-6-4-6, IIGS #38
 modal GSTR-6-5
 modeless GSTR-6-5
 standard GSTR-22-3
 dialog boxes PI-21, PI-131-136
 default button PI-139
 message PI-135
 modal PI-133, PI-139
 modeless PI-133, PI-136
 dialog item type GSTR-6-10-11
 dialog items PI-137-140
 defining with a template PI-140, PI-
 285
 disabling PI-138
 display rectangle PI-137, PI-139
 inactive controls as PI-138
 invisible PI-138
 item ID PI-137, PI-139
 item type PI-137, PI-138
 Dialog Manager GST-59, GST-67,
 GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-6, GSTR-6-1-
 90, GSTR-24-21, IIGS #38, PI-21,
 PI-116, PI-131-144, PI-308
 constants GSTR-6-88-89
 data structures GSTR-6-89-90
 error codes GSTR-6-90
 shutdown routines GSTR-6-29
 startup routines GSTR-6-28
 status routines GSTR-6-30
 using GSTR-6-23-24
 version number routines GSTR-6-29
 dialog pointer GSTR-6-19
 dialog record GSTR-6-19, PI-137
 dialog scroll bar action procedure
 GSTR-6-15
 dialog template GSTR-6-60, GSTR-
 22-4-12, GSTR-22-26, GSTR-22-
 29
 dialog window GSTR-6-7, PI-116, PI-
 136
 DIALOG.ASM PI-353-360
 DIALOG.CC PI-400-404
 DIALOG.PAS PI-429-433
 DialogBootInit GSTR-6-27
 DialogReset GSTR-6-30
 dialogs, programming techniques PI-
 141
 DialogSelect GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-38-
 39
 DialogShutDown GSTR-6-23, GSTR-
 6-29, PI-58
 DialogStartUp GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-
 28, PI-45
 DialogStatus GSTR-6-30
 DialogVersion GSTR-6-29
 dials PI-125
 DIB ProDOS #21, SmartPort #4, #7
 dictionaries See relocation
 dictionaries
 differences among Apple II models
 ETR-227-232
 differences between original and
 enhanced Apple Iie ETR-xix-
 xxii
 ASCII input mode ETR-106-107
 COUT1 subroutine ETR-56
 interrupt support ETR-132, ETR-
 148-149
 microprocessor ETR-6
 Mini-Assembler ETR-123
 differences between original and
 enhanced Apple Iie, Monitor
 Search command ETR-110
 MouseText ETR-17, ETR-20
 slot 3 ETR-144
 tabbing in Applesoft ETR-269
 using Caps Lock ETR-49
 DiffRgn GSTR-16-78
 DIG GSF-256
 Digital Oscillator Chip (DOC) GSF-
 10, GSH-7, GSH-101-112, GST-
 3, GST-24-25, GST-55, GST-62,
 GST-69, GSTR-21-3, PI-8, PI-175
 A/D Converter register GSH-103
 Frequency High and Frequency Low
 registers GSH-106
 Oscillator Control registers GSH-
 104-106
 Oscillator Data registers GSH-106
 Oscillator Enable register GSH-103
 Oscillator Interrupt register GSH-
 102
 register addresses GSH-265
 Volume registers GSH-106
 Wavetable Pointer registers GSH-
 108-109
 Wavetable Size registers GSH-107
 digital samples GST-24, GST-25
 digital-to-analog converter GSH-110
 dimmed menu item GSTR-13-6,
 GSTR-13-38, GSTR-13-60
 DIN connectors GST-42
 DIP socket, game connector GST-41
 direct memory access GSH-13, GSH-
 167, GSH-188
 cards GSH-168
 daisy chain GSH-171, GSH-183-184
 direct page GSF-12, GSF-15, GSH-28,
 GSH-38, GSH-44, GST-13, GST-
 82, GST-84, GST-89, GST-113,
 GSTR-6-28, GSTR-25-43, PI-4,
 PI-202, PI-203, PI-283
 direct page and stack P16-64, P16-75-
 79, P16-200-201. See also stack(s)
 addresses P16-75, P16-77, P16-
 200-201
 allocation at run time P16-77-78
 automatic allocation of P16-75-76
 default allocation P16-78
 definition during program
 development P16-76
 direct register P16-70, P16-77-79,
 P16-104
 direct-page/stack segments P16-76,
 P16-78, P16-186, P16-224. See
 also segment(s)

hardware stack P16-75
 introduction to P16-75-79
 manual allocation of P16-78-79
 ProDOS 16 default P16-78
 direct page
 definition of P16-75. See also zero page
 SANE GSTR-18-6, GSTR-18-9
 Direct register GSH-203, GST-14, P16-70, P16-77-79, P16-194. See also registers, PI-4, PI-203, PI-262, PI-293, PI-294
 system interrupt handler GSF-181
 direct-page register GSF-13
 direct-page space GSTR-2-2, GSTR-4-42, GSTR-7-27, GSTR-10-13, GSTR-12-13, GSTR-13-30, GSTR-15-26, GSTR-16-64, GSTR-18-12, GSTR-21-8, GSTR-22-16
 direct-page/stack segment PI-202-207, PI-260, PI-262, ProDOS 16 default PI-206
 direct-page/stack space PI-192, PI-203, PI-260, PI-296
 for tool sets PI-42
 location and arrangement PI-204
 directories See directory files; file directory entry; subdirectories; volume(s)
 directory files P16-26-27, P16-255-266
 format and organization of P16-26-27, P16-255-266
 format and organization of, file entries P16-261-264
 format and organization of, pointer fields P16-256
 format and organization of, subdirectory headers P16-259-261
 format and organization of, volume directory headers P16-256
 reading P16-265-266
 directory headers, volume P16-256-259. See also volume(s)
 Disable Device SRQ command GSF-195
 disable increment GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-35
 disabled menu item GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-38
 DisableDItem GSTR-6-40, GSTR-6-82
 disableInc GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 disableItem GSTR-13-78, GSTR-13-87
 disableMenu GSTR-13-72, GSTR-13-87
 DisableMItem GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-38
 disableSRQ GSTR-3-21, GSTR-3-28
 disabling, dialog items PI-138
 disabling, interrupts PI-293
 disabling, menus and menu items PI-116, PI-148
 disassembler CTR-220, GSF-55-56, GST-50
 opcodes GSF-293-298
 disassemblers ETR-121
 disassembling PI-248
 disassembling, watching while running PI-249
 disk GSH-173
 Disk button GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-31
 disk caching GS/OS #3
 disk controller card position GST-28
 disk controller unit CTR-15, CTR-247-248, CTR-273, CTR-365
 disk device ProDOS #16
 disk drive CTR-8-9
 connector CTR-274
 connector signals CTR-274
 I/O CTR-120-121, CTR-273-274, CTR-361
 I/O port CTR-120-121
 disk drives P16-43, P16-46, P16-56. See also device(s)
 recommended number of P16-xviii
 type and location of P16-7
 disk formats, ProDOS operating systems GST-95
 Disk Formatter Pascal #12
 Disk II P16-43, P16-46
 Disk II controller card GST-39-40, GST-76, GST-85
 Disk II drive GST-39
 Disk II firmware GSF-5
 slot for PI-9
 disk port GST-4, GST-5, GST-39-41, P16-xix, P16-45, PI-8
 disk
 Disk II GSH-21
 disk-port connector GSH-143-144
 Handshake register GSH-149-150
 Interface register GSH-144-145
 Mode register GSH-147-148
 port GSH-6, GSH-142, GSH-143-150
 read/write Data register GSH-150
 Status register GSH-148-149
 disk-use light CTR-3, CTR-7
 disks P16-7-8, P16-52-55. See also system disks, PI-14, PI-298-301
 accessing P16-5
 cataloging P16-xv, P16-26, P16-278-279
 DOS 3.3, reading P16-284
 formatting P16-14, P16-45. See also FORMAT call
 integrity, damaging P16-25
 partitioned P16-111
 RAM P16-43
 DISKSW GSF-156
 disk-switched errors. See errors
 dispatch address GSF-115
 DISPATCH1 GSF-264
 DISPATCH2 GSF-264
 Dispatcher conventions ProDOS #14
 dispatcher. See interrupt dispatcher
 dispCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-30, GSTR-4-86
 DispFontWindow PI-53
 display GSF-302
 display addresses
 mapping CTR-259-261
 transformation CTR-260
 high-resolution CTR-96
 display buffers GSH-16, GSH-19, GSH-42-43, GST-61, GST-77, GST-79, P16-33. See also buffers
 Double Hi-Res graphics GSH-85
 Super Hi-Res graphics GSH-85-86
 display character sets CTR-89
 display features GST-19-24
 display formats
 inverse CTR-214
 normal CTR-214
 display memory
 addressing CTR-258, CTR-260
 switches CTR-44-46
 display mode switching GSH-68-70
 display modes CTR-104, CTR-261-269, CTR-360
 switching CTR-101-105
 display pages CTR-99-101, GSH-67-73, GST-61, GST-76, GST-82
 Hi-Res GSH-71
 HRP1 CTR-38
 HRP1X CTR-38
 HRP2 CTR-39, CTR-269
 HRP2X CTR-39, CTR-269
 maps CTR-105-111
 text GSH-44
 TLP1 CTR-36
 TLP1X CTR-38
 TLP2 CTR-38
 TLP2X CTR-38
 display rectangle GSTR-6-17, GSTR-6-52, GSTR-6-81
 display rectangle dialog items PI-137, PI-139
 display shadowing GST-47, GST-78, GST-82, GST-86
 display soft switches CTR-50, CTR-101-105

display
 high-resolution. See high-resolution display
 video ETR-16-37
 40-column text ETR-179
 80-column text ETR-179
 address transformation ETR-175-176
 double-high-resolution graphics ETR-184-185
 formats ETR-18, ETR-57
 generation ETR-173-185, ETR-231
 high-resolution graphics ETR-183-184
 low-resolution graphics ETR-181-182
 memory addressing ETR-174-178
 modes ETR-17, ETR-19-26, ETR-28-31, ETR-178-185
 pages ETR-23, ETR-25, ETR-27-28, ETR-31-37, ETR-78-79
 refreshing ETR-170-171
 specifications ETR-17
 text ETR-178-181
 displayMode word GSTR-17-4
 displaySelect GSTR-22-22, GSTR-22-32
 DisposeAll GSTR-12-11, GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-23, IIGS #17, PI-193, PI-194
 DisposeControl GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-45, GSTR-11-11
 DisposeHandle call (Memory Manager) GSTR-12-23, GSTR-12-24, PI-57, PI-190, PI-16-79
 DisposeMenu GSTR-13-36, GSTR-13-39, GSTR-13-67
 DisposeMenuBar IIGS #3
 DisposeRgn GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-79, IIGS #10
 DisposeWindow GSTR-25-29
 disposing of memory handles PI-194, PI-277, See memory blocks
 DisVbl switch CTR-190
 DisXY switch CTR-189
 dithered colors PI-101-103
 dithering GSH-91-92, GST-23, GSTR-4-52, GSTR-16-35, GSTR-25-104
 divByZeroErr GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
 dividing line GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-15-16
 dividing line (menus) PI-148
 division, 32-bit GSF-42
 DlgCopy GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-41
 DlgCut GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-42
 DlgDelete GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-43
 DlgPaste GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-44
 DMA IIC #2, #5, IIGS #21
 DMA daisy chain ETR-193-195, ETR-208
 DMA transfers CTR-357
 DoAbout Item PI-55, PI-142
 DOC (Digital Oscillator Chip) GSF-10, GST-3, GST-24-25, GST-55, GST-62, GST-69, PI-8, PI-175
 DOC RAM GSTR-21-4, GSTR-21-24, GSTR-21-28, GSTR-21-31, GSTR-21-32, IIGS #11, #23, #37
 DOC registers GSTR-21-4, GSTR-21-29, GSTR-21-30
 DOC volume register GSTR-21-21
 DOC. See Digital Oscillator Chip
 docAddrRngErr GSTR-21-24, GSTR-21-28, GSTR-21-37, GSTR-B-3
 docBuffer GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-37
 DoChooseFont PI-97, PI-121, PI-305
 DoChooserItem PI-56, PI-167
 DoCloseItem PI-56, PI-57
 DOCMode byte IIGS #19
 document coordinates PI-83
 document window GSTR-25-6, PI-110, PI-111, PI-133
 color table GSTR-25-17
 dollar sign (\$) CTR-225, GSF-54, GST-15
 DoMenu PI-54, PI-153
 dontScaleBit GSTR-8-44, GSTR-8-50
 DoOpenItem PI-55, PI-120, PI-163, PI-305
 DoPrint Item PI-56, PI-170
 DoQuit Item PI-56
 dormant PI-200, PI-259
 dormant state. See application(s); System Loader
 DOS CTR-51, CTR-57, CTR-58, CTR-155, CTR-169, CTR-204, CTR-214, CTR-312, CTR-328, CTR-332, GSF-70, GSF-110
 DOS 3.3 ETR-xx, ETR-140, ETR-233, GSF-43, GST-54, GST-86, GST-90, GST-94, ProDOS #3
 and uppercase ETR-48-49
 starting up with ETR-268
 use of page 3 ETR-78
 use of page zero ETR-81
 DOS 3.3 disks, reading P16-284
 DOS
 file system P16-284
 filing calls P16-286
 history of P16-281-282
 I/O P16-285
 interrupt support P16-288
 memory management P16-287
 DOS. See also operating system(s)
 DoSaveItem PI-56, PI-164, PI-213
 DOSCMD vector ProDOS #2
 DoSetMono PI-56
 DoSetupItem PI-168, PI-56
 dot operator GSTR-2-6
 DoTheOpem PI-121, PI-211, PI-305
 Double Hi-Res graphics PI-7, GST-20-21
 in Apple II family GST-5
 linear mapping option
 incompatible GST-87
 specifications GST-3
 Double high-resolution IIC #2, IIC #3, ProDOS #13
 Double Lo-Res graphics GST-20-21
 double-clicking (mouse) PI-71
 double-high-resolution graphics ETR-17, ETR-18, ETR-25-26
 colors ETR-26
 display pages ETR-27
 generation ETR-184-185
 map ETR-37
 memory pages ETR-25
 Page 1 ETR-79
 DoWindow PI-56
 DoWindows GSTR-7-12, GSTR-7-32
 Down Arrow CTR-4, PI-126, GSTR-4-86
 downFlag GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-85
 Download GSF-143
 Draft option GSTR-15-8
 draft printing GSTR-15-14-15, GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-23, GSTR-15-37, PI-171
 drag area/dragging PI-71, PI-110, PI-114
 drag region GSTR-25-9, GSTR-25-44, GSTR-25-49
 DragControl GSTR-4-46-47, GSTR-11-11
 dragCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-35, GSTR-4-86
 dragPatt GSTR-4-33-34, GSTR-4-88
 DragRect GSTR-4-48-49
 parameters GSTR-4-50-53
 DragWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-44-46, GSTR-25-124, PI-114, PI-115
 DrawChar GSTR-16-54, GSTR-16-57, GSTR-16-80
 DrawControls GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-54, GSTR-11-11
 DrawCString GSTR-16-57, GSTR-16-81
 drawCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-26, GSTR-4-86
 DrawDialog GSTR-6-45, PI-134

DrawIcon GSTR-17-4, GSTR-17-5,
 GSTR-17-11
 drawing contents of windows PI-115-
 116
 drawing mask GSTR-16-18, PI-85
 drawing on the screen GSTR-16-12
 drawing routines GST-64
 drawing space GSTR-16-10, GSTR-16-
 57
 DrawMember GSTR-11-8, GSTR-11-
 17, GSTR-11-23, GSTR-13-9,
 GSTR-13-30, GSTR-13-36, GSTR-
 13-40, GSTR-13-57, GSTR-13-72
 DrawMenuBar PI-47, PI-154,155
 DrawOneCtl GSTR-4-55, GSTR-11-11
 DrawPicture GSTR-15-38, GSTR-16-
 25, GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-12,
 IIGS #46, data format IIGS #46
 DrawString GSTR-16-54, GSTR-16-57,
 GSTR-16-82, GSTR-25-23, PI-44,
 PI-94, PI-106, PI-143
 DrawText GSTR-16-57, GSTR-16-83,
 GSTR-25-23
 DrawTopWindow PI-170
 DrawVerb IIGS #34
 driverEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50, PI-
 69
 driverMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 DRIVERS IIGS #35
 DRIVERS subdirectory GSTR-15-23,
 GSTR-15-24
 drivers, device. See device drivers
 drivers. See device drivers
 DS records P16-187, P16-297
 DSK IIC #4
 dsp40or80 GSTR-14-64
 dspBckColor GSTR-14-64
 dspBrdColor GSTR-14-64
 dspColMono GSTR-14-64
 dspTxtColor GSTR-14-64
 DSR (data set ready) GSF-84-85, GSF-
 95
 DSR/DTR handshaking GST-34
 DTACK IIC #4
 dtBoundsRect GSTR-6-60, GSTR-6-90
 dtItemList GSTR-6-60, GSTR-6-90
 DTR (data terminal ready) GSF-84-
 85,95
 dtRefCon GSTR-6-60, GSTR-6-90
 dtVisible GSTR-6-60, GSTR-6-90
 dualSpeed GSTR-14-65
 DumpOBJ utility (APW) GST-105, PI-
 223
 DuoDisk GSF-110, GSH-143, GST-39
 dupFile GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47,
 GSTR-B-4
 duty-cycle modulation (ADB) GSH-
 127
 Dvorak keyboard CTR-6-7,CTR-
 358,CTR-370, IIC #4
 support GST-42
 dynamic segments GST-96, GST-101,
 GST-104, IIGS #22, PI-23, PI-25,
 PI-195, PI-196, PI-200, PI-232
 programming examples PI-245
 unloading PI-246
 See segment(s)
 DYNCHK IIGS #22

E
 e flag GSF-37, P16-64
 EABORT GSF-177, GSF-263
 EBRKIRQ GSF-263
 echo GSF-91, GSTR-23-46
 echo output, I/O command GST-35
 echo-flag word GSTR-23-29, GSTR-
 23-40
 ECOP GSF-177, GSF-263
 ED command GSF-91
 EdAsm assembler GST-62, GST-102,
 PI-296
 Edit menu PI-32, PI-133
 Clear command PI-32
 Copy command PI-32, PI-141, PI-
 159, PI-160
 Cut command PI-32, PI-141, PI-
 159, PI-160
 Paste command PI-32, PI-141, PI-
 159, PI-161
 Undo command PI-32, PI-277
 edit record GSTR-10-4-5, GSTR-10-
 10-11
 allocating GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-30
 disposing GSTR-10-22
 handle GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-24
 text length GSTR-10-25
 editable text PI-138
 editing with GETLN ETR-63-64, CTR-
 63
 editLine GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-11,
 GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-17, GSTR-6-
 39, GSTR-6-88
 Editor (APW) GST-8, GST-104, P16-
 89, PI-222
 EE command GSF-91
 Eject GSF-138, GSF-142,
 SmartPort #2, #5
 Elems function IIGS #8
 EM character ETR-55
 emBadBttnNoErr GSTR-7-31, GSTR-
 7-49, GSTR-7-52, GSTR-B-3
 emBadEvtCodeErr GSTR-7-44,
 GSTR-7-52, GSTR-B-3
 emBadEvtQErr GSTR-7-52, GSTR-B-
 3
 emBadQHndlErr GSTR-7-52, GSTR-
 B-3
 embedded changes GSTR-10-43-44
 EMBootInit GSTR-7-26
 emDupStrtUpErr GSTR-7-28, GSTR-
 7-52, GSTR-B-3
 emNoMemQueueErr GSTR-7-28,
 GSTR-7-52, GSTR-B-3
 emNotActErr GSTR-7-52, GSTR-B-3
 empty handle GSTR-12-8
 empty rectangle GSTR-16-182
 emptyErr GSTR-12-28, GSTR-12-29,
 GSTR-12-38, GSTR-12-43, GSTR-
 12-47, GSTR-B-2
 EmptyRgn GSTR-16-84
 emQSiz2LrgErr GSTR-7-28, GSTR-7-
 52, GSTR-B-3
 EMReset GSTR-7-30, GSTR-7-30,
 GSTR-7-52, GSTR-B-3
 EMShutDown GSTR-7-12, GSTR-7-
 29, PI-58
 EMStartUp GSTR-2-2, GSTR-7-12,
 GSTR-7-27-28, PI-43
 EMStatus GSTR-7-30
 emulation mode GSF-9, GSF-14,
 GSF-37-38, GSF-56,120, GSH-
 28, GSH-198, GSH-201, GSTR-1-
 2, P16-4, P16-9, P16-47, P16-
 100. See also programming, PI-4,
 PI-9, PI-173, PI-269, PI-291, PI-
 293, See 65816 microprocessor,
 6502 emulation mode
 accumulator GSF-18
 changing GSF-62
 code GSF-15
 stack GSF-13
 emulation-mode entry point GSTR-
 14-5, GSTR-14-17
 EMULSTACK GSF-13
 EMVersion GSTR-7-29
 EN80¢ signal ETR-198
 Enable Device SRQ command GSF-
 194
 enable line formatting GSF-89
 EnabledItem GSTR-6-46, GSTR-6-82
 enableItem GSTR-13-78, GSTR-13-87
 enableMenu GSTR-13-72, GSTR-13-
 87
 EnableMItem GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-
 40
 enableSRQ GSTR-3-21, GSTR-3-28
 EnbXY switch CTR-189
 end of file. See EOF
 END record P16-298
 EndInfoDrawing GSTR-25-47, GSTR-
 25-117, IIGS #3
 EndOfPicture IIGS #46

EndUpdate GSTR-4-54, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-46, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-35, GSTR-25-47, GSTR-25-116, GSTR-25-119, PI-115, PI-134
 English keyboard CTR-372
 enhanced Apple IIe See differences between original and enhanced Apple IIe
 enhanced QUIT call (ProDOS 8) P16-60-61
 enhanced video firmware CTR-249-250
 ENKBD ϕ signal ETR-187
 EnlCRAM switch CTR-242
 ENMI GSF-263
 Ensoniq 5503 IIGS #9
 Ensoniq chip interrupts GSF-180
 Ensoniq digital sound chip See Digital Oscillator Chip (DOC)
 Ensoniq DOC IIGS #11, #19, #37
 Ensoniq RAM IIGS #23
 entry points P16-xxi, P16-35, P16-100, P16-213, P16-300
 entry points for I/O routines ETR-145-146
 firmware CTR-23
 memory expansion card CTR-122
 Monitor CTR-322, CTR-326-327
 ports CTR-71
 UniDisk 3.5 I/O CTR-122
 entry, file. See file directory entry
 ENTRY2 ProDOS #5
 EnVbl switch CTR-190
 environment GSF-8, GSF-36
 environment calls. See system calls
 firmware routines GSF-11-16
 resetting GSF-66
 restoring GSF-14
 system interrupt handler GSF-181
 environmental specifications CTR-232
 EOF (end of file) P16-21-24, P16-26, P16-30, P16-143, P16-147-150, P16-263, P16-269, P16-272-273. PI-214, See also file(s)
 maximum value P16-269
 sparse files P16-273
 equal sign (=) GSF-37
 Equal utility (APW) PI-224
 EqualPt GSTR-16-85
 EqualRect GSTR-16-86
 EqualRgn GSTR-16-87
 equate file GSTR-2-5
 EraseArc GSTR-16-88
 EraseControl GSTR-4-56, GSTR-11-11
 EraseOval GSTR-16-89
 ErasePoly GSTR-16-90, GSTR-16-103
 EraseRect GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-40, GSTR-10-42, GSTR-10-46, GSTR-16-91
 EraseRgn GSTR-16-92
 EraseRRect GSTR-16-93
 erasing GSTR-16-18, GSTR-16-20
 erasing (QuickDraw II) PI-87, PI-91
 ERESET GSF-263
 error GSTR-2-5
 error codes GSTR-2-5
 Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-29
 Control Manager GSTR-4-88
 Desk Manager GSTR-5-30
 Dialog Manager GSTR-6-90
 Event Manager GSTR-7-52
 Font Manager GSTR-8-52
 Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-42
 LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-48
 Memory Manager GSTR-12-47
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-70
 Print Manager GSTR-15-34, GSTR-15-44, GSTR-15-49
 QuickDraw II GSTR-16-278
 Scrap Manager GSTR-20-19
 SmartPort GSF-156
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-37
 system failure GSTR-14-5 GSTR-5-56
 Text Tool Set GSTR-23-47
 Tool Locator GSTR-24-26
 tool set GSTR-B-GSTR-1-5
 Window Manager GSTR-25-144
 error handling (HodgePodge) PI-306-310
 error output text device GSTR-23-17, GSTR-23-18, GSTR-23-19, GSTR-23-20, GSTR-23-21, GSTR-23-22, GSTR-23-23, GSTR-23-32, GSTR-23-33
 error status register GSF-95
 ERRORDEATH IIGS #33
 errorOutput GSTR-23-46
 errors P16-302-311
 "ProDOS is busy" P16-83, P16-96
 Apple IIGS Toolbox PI-65, PI-66, PI-67
 bootstrap (ProDOS 16) P16-309
 disk-switched P16-304
 fatal P16-307-308; P16-311
 nonfatal P16-302-307; P16-310
 printing PI-172
 testing for PI-277
 ErrorSound GSTR-6-47
 ErrWriteBlock GSTR-23-17
 ErrWriteChar GSTR-23-18
 ErrWriteCString GSTR-23-7, GSTR-23-19
 ErrWriteLine GSTR-23-20
 ErrWriteString GSTR-23-21
 Esc 4 GSF-73
 Esc 8 GSF-73
 Esc @ GSF-73
 Esc A GSF-73
 Esc B GSF-73
 Esc C GSF-73
 ESC character ETR-55
 Esc D GSF-73
 Esc E GSF-73
 Esc F GSF-73
 Esc I GSF-73
 Esc J GSF-73
 Esc K GSF-73
 Esc M GSF-73
 Esc-Control-D GSF-73
 Esc-Control-E GSF-73
 Esc-Control-Q GSF-73
 Escape CTR-5, CTR-60-62, CTR-358
 escape codes CTR-60-62, CTR-82, ETR-60-61
 escape codes GSF-72, GSF-73
 Escape Control-Q CTR-215, CTR-228
 Escape key GSF-72
 escape mode ETR-60-61, GSF-71, GSF-72
 ETB character ETR-54
 event GSTR-7-1
 event code GSTR-7-7, PI-69, PI-73
 event handling PI-15-16, PI-67-75, PI-51-57
 event loop. See main event loop
 Event Manager GSF-75, GSF-183, GST-59, GST-65, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-6-7, GSTR-2-2, GSTR-7-1-52, GSTR-14-5, PI-16, PI-20, PI-48, PI-63, PI-67-75
 constants GSTR-7-50-51
 data structures GSTR-7-51
 error codes GSTR-7-52
 high-level GSTR-7-3
 low-level GSTR-7-3
 shutdown routines GSTR-7-29
 startup routines GSTR-7-27-28
 status routines GSTR-7-30
 using GSTR-7-12-15
 version number routines GSTR-7-29
 event mask GSTR-7-10-11, GSTR-7-39, GSTR-7-41, GSTR-7-42
 event mask PI-70, PI-74, PI-265
 system GSTR-7-10, GSTR-7-45
 event message GSTR-7-8
 event priority GSTR-7-4-5, GSTR-7-40
 event queue GST-65, GSTR-2-2, GSTR-7-5, GSTR-7-27, GSTR-7-

35, GSTR-7-39, GSTR-7-45, PI-68-70
 event record GSTR-7-6, GSTR-25-45, GSTR-25-48, PI-67, PI-70
 modifier flags GSTR-7-8-10
 event
 activate GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-5, GSTR-7-14, GSTR-10-16, GSTR-10-20, GSTR-25-24
 application GSTR-7-4
 application-defined GSTR-7-14
 asynchronous GSTR-7-15-18
 auto-key GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-13
 desk accessory GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-14
 device driver GSTR-7-4
 key-down GSTR-6-39, GSTR-6-66, GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-13
 keyboard GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-13
 mouse-down GSTR-6-39, GSTR-6-64, GSTR-6-66, GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-13, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-48-49, GSTR-25-127, GSTR-25-129-130
 mouse-up GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-13
 priority GSTR-7-4-5, GSTR-7-40
 switch GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-5, GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-46
 types GSTR-7-3-4
 update GSTR-10-46, GSTR-25-52, GSTR-25-94, GSTR-25-95, GSTR-25-96
 window GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-14
 event-driven application GSTR-xGSTR-xv, GSTR-2-2, GSTR-7-1
 event-driven programming P16-xix
 event-driven programming techniques PI-13-16, PI-51
 EVENT.ASM PI-330-336
 EVENT.CC PI-385-389
 EVENT.PAS PI-422-424
 eventAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
 EventAvail GSTR-7-5, GSTR-7-33
 events PI-48. See also specific event compared to interrupts PI-67 controls and PI-129-130 defined PI-14, PI-67 handling P16-7 types of PI-68-70, PI-74
 everyEvent GSTR-7-50
 evMgrData GSTR-14-66
 EXAMINE command CTR-213, CTR-228
 EXAMINE command ETR-110-111
 Examine instruction GSF-37
 examining memory ETR-102
 exclamation point (!) GSF-52

Exec files, APW Shell support GST-104
 Execute GSF-142
 execution modes. See emulation mode; native mode
 execution speed GST-3, GST-14-15, GST-84-85
 Exerciser (ProDOS 16) PI-253-254 ProDOS 16 P16-xviii, P16-54, P16-106, P16-289-294
 calls and P16-106
 commands P16-291-294. See also specific command starting P16-289 system calls and P16-290
 Exit to Monitor command (Exerciser) P16-293-294
 expandable IIC IIC #5
 expansion card ROM. See ROM
 expansion memory PI-6, See memory
 expansion of memory GSTR-12-3
 expansion RAM GST-75, GST-79-80, GST-90, GST-113, IIGS #21
 expansion ROM GST-79, GST-80
 expansion ROM space CTR-74, ETR-133-135
 expansion slot 3 ETR-49-50
 expansion slots CTR-357, ETR-7, ETR-132-144, GST-4, GST-5, GST-28-33, P16-45-46
 signals ETR-191-197
 extended 80-column card. See 80-column card
 Extended 80-Column Text Card CTR-351, CTR-354, CTR-360, ETR-86, ETR-134, ETR-267-275
 extended keyboard Apple IIe ETR-xxiii
 extended memory addressing GST-49
 extended task event record PI-54, PI-74, PI-153
 extended type PI-179
 extended value GSTR-xxx, GSTR-9-1
 external commands ProDOS #6
 external devices. See device(s)
 external references PI-197 APW Linker GST-104
 EXTINT CTR-276, CTR-342
 extVCGHnd GSTR-14-68
 extVGCInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
 extVCGDisable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 extVCGEnable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67

F

F command CTR-156, CTR-170
 FakeMouse GSTR-7-23, GSTR-7-34
 fAlert GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 fAllocated GSTR-25-141
 family GSTR-16-43, GSTR-4-85
 family name GSTR-8-3, GSTR-8-32, GSTR-8-41, GSTR-8-42
 family number GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-32, GSTR-8-41, GSTR-8-42, GSTR-8-45, GSTR-8-6, GSTR-8-51
 FamNum2ItemID GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-36
 FamSpecBits GSTR-8-11-12
 FamStatBits GSTR-8-12
 Fast Processor Interface GSH-7, GSH-10, GSH-12, GSH-167, IIGS #21
 Fast Processor Interface (FPI) GST-12, GST-13, GST-75, GST-77
 fast RAM GST-75, GST-78
 fast ROM GST-75
 fatal errors. See errors
 fbrExtent GSTR-16-43, GSTR-16-53-54, GSTR-16-59, GSTR-16-216
 fBScroll GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 FCB. See file control block
 fClose GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 fCulTie GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-120, GSTR-25-141
 FD command GSF-90
 FD10 GSF-245
 feed GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13, GSTR-15-48
 feedback P16-90
 FF character ETR-54
 FFGeneratorStatus GSTR-21-11-12, IIGS #37
 fFlex GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 FFSoundDoneStatus GSTR-21-13
 FFSoundStatus GSTR-21-14
 FFStartSound GSTR-21-15-17, IIGS #11, #37
 FFStopSound GSTR-21-18-20, IIGS #26, #37
 ffSynth GSTR-21-37
 ffSynthMode GSTR-21-36
 fgColor GSTR-16-125
 fgFbrExtent GSTR-16-62
 fgFontID GSTR-16-62
 fGrow GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 fgSize GSTR-16-62
 fgStyle GSTR-16-62
 fgVersion GSTR-16-62
 fgWidMax GSTR-16-62
 fHilited GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 fields within records PI-36
 fields

- directory header P16-275-280
- file entry P16-275-280
- pointer (directory files) P16-256
- segment header P16-186, P16-275-280, P16-299
- size in parameter blocks P16-105
- See also specific field name
- file access calls P16-136-152. See also specific call
- file attributes PI-214
 - access PI-215
 - auxiliary type PI-217
 - creation and last-modification date and time PI-215
- file blocks P16-26-29
 - block read and block write P16-44
 - data P16-28, P16-267, P16-270-271, P16-274
 - index P16-28, P16-267, P16-270, P16-271
 - key P16-254-255, P16-270, P16-272
 - master index P16-28, P16-260, P16-271
 - organization of directory files P16-28
 - size of P16-33
 - sparse files and P16-30
- file control block P16-22, P16-24, P16-145
- file directory entry P16-7, P16-25-26, P16-84, P16-261-264, P16-266
- file entry field. See fields
- file format GSTR-xGSTR-xvii, ProDOS #19
- file housekeeping calls P16-110-134. See also specific call
- File Mark. See Mark
- File menu PI-32, PI-133, PI-166
 - Choose Printer command PI-32, PI-166, PI-289
 - Close command PI-32
 - Open command PI-32
 - Page Setup command PI-32
 - Print command PI-32
 - Quit command PI-32, PI-58
 - Save As command PI-32
 - Save command PI-50
- file operations GST-71
- file system(s)
 - guest P16-102
 - ID P16-45
 - version number P16-263, P16-305
 - See also specific operating system
- file type GSTR-22-23, IIGS #27, ProDOS #19, PI-215-217, PI-256
- file type attribute field P16-263, P16-278-279
- File Type utility (APW) P16-89
- file types P16-263, P16-278-279
 - \$04 PI-218
 - \$06 PI-218, P16-12, P16-224
 - \$B3 PI-256-259, PI-261, PI-297, P16-58, P16-64, P16-74, P16-81, P16-89
 - \$B4 P16-230
 - \$B5 PI-256, PI-261-262, P16-64, P16-209
 - \$B6 PI-256, PI-266, PI-300, P16-54, P16-56
 - \$B7 PI-256, PI-266, PI-300, P16-54, P16-56
 - \$B8 PI-256, PI-265, PI-300, P16-54, P16-56
 - \$B9 PI-256, PI-263, PI-300, P16-54, P16-56
 - \$BA PI-256, PI-300
 - \$BO PI-218
 - \$CI PI-215, PI-218
 - \$B3-\$BE P16-12, P16-83, P16-224, P16-229
 - \$FF P16-12, P16-56, P16-58, P16-83, P16-224
- file types, listing of P16-278-279
- file(s) P16-7-8, P16-22, P16-18-30, P16-253-280
 - access and manipulation of P16-14
 - altering contents of P16-85
 - binary (ProDOS 8) P16-12, P16-224, P16-283
 - blocks. See file blocks; file control blocks
 - characteristics of P16-22
 - closing P16-24-25, P16-85, P16-167
 - compatibility P16-283-284
 - control block. See file control blocks
 - copying P16-84-85
 - creating P16-21, P16-85
 - creation date and time P16-14, P16-21, P16-84-86, P16-119, P16-258, P16-260, P16-263
 - definition of P16-7
 - deleting P16-21, P16-85
 - desk accessory P16-53-54
 - directory entry. See file directory entry
 - directory. See directory files
 - end of (EOF) P16-21-24, P16-26, P16-30, P16-143, P16-147-150, P16-263, P16-269, P16-272-273
 - end of (EOF), introduction to P16-22-23
 - flushing P16-24-25, P16-146
 - format of P16-21, P16-26-30, P16-253
- hierarchical relationships among P16-26
- I/O buffer P16-21-22, P16-24, P16-137, P16-145. See also input/output
- initialization P16-53-54
- introduction to P16-18-30
- levels. See system file level
- load. See load files
- locating bytes in P16-274-275
- Mark P16-21-24, P16-26, P16-30, P16-143, P16-201-202, P16-273-274
- Mark, introduction to P16-22-23
- modification date and time P16-84-86, P16-264
- names. See filenames
- object P16-89
- open, maximum number of P16-22, P16-137
- opening P16-21-22, P16-133-138
- organization P16-26-30, P16-253-280. See also fields; headers
- pathnames. See pathname(s)
- PRODOS P16-53, P16-55, P16-56-58
- reading P16-21-22, P16-24, P16-272
- reading, directory files P16-256-266
- reference numbers P16-21, P16-24-25, P16-137, P16-265
- reference numbers, of zero P16-145, P16-152
- relationship among (hierarchical) P16-8
- renaming P16-21, P16-85
- run-time library P16-193, P16-199, P16-200, P16-230
- sapling P16-29, P16-262, P16-268, P16-270-271
- seedling P16-29, P16-262, P16-268, P16-270
- size of P16-14, P16-24, P16-269
- source P16-75, P16-89
- sparse P16-xv, P16-14, P16-30, P16-86, P16-253, P16-273-274
- standard P16-26-27, P16-254, P16-267, P16-270
- standard, format and organization of P16-267
- standard, locating a byte in a file P16-274-275
- standard, reading P16-141-142, P16-272
- START P16-58, P16-61-62
- structure of P16-20, P16-26
- subdirectory. See subdirectories

system P16-10, P16-12, P16-14, P16-18
 TOOL.SETUP P16-53, P16-56
 transferring data to and from P16-21
 tree P16-29, P16-262, P16-271-272
 tree, growing P16-267-269
 types. See file types
 using P16-18-25
 volume directory. See volume(s)
 file(s), writing P16-24, P16-143-144
 fileInfoType GSTR-24-26
 filename GSTR-22-20, GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-32, PI-208
 filenames
 extensions P16-58, P16-74
 number of characters in P16-14
 requirements of P16-18
 typographic convention for P16-xxi
 files PI-215
 Files utility (APW) PI-224
 files
 accessing PI-162-165
 closing PI-210
 controlling user access to PI-218
 creating PI-210
 destroying PI-210
 flushing PI-210
 HodgePodge and PI-33, PI-34
 I/O buffer PI-210
 opening PI-162, PI-210
 reading PI-211-214
 saving PI-164
 writing PI-211-2 PI-14
 fileType GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-32
 filing calls, Apple II operating systems P16-286-287
 filing calls, ProDOS 16. See system calls or specific call
 FIListSessions ProDOS #21
 Fill Memory command GSF-59
 fill mode GSTR-16-34, PI-100
 FillArc GSTR-16-94
 filling GSTR-16-20
 filling (QuickDraw II) PI-87, PI-91
 FillOval GSTR-16-95
 FillPoly GSTR-16-96, GSTR-16-103
 FillRect GSTR-16-97
 FillRgn GSTR-16-98
 FillRRect GSTR-16-99
 filter mask, changing GSF-63
 filter procedure GSTR-6-22, GSTR-6-25-26, GSTR-6-33, GSTR-6-37, GSTR-6-66, GSTR-22-22
 filter procedure, standard GSTR-6-25
 FilterProc IIGS #38
 flmaging GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 FindControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-5GSTR-7-58, PI-1 PI-29
 FindDItem GSTR-6-48
 finder P16-207-208
 FindFamily GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-32-33
 FindFontStats GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-34-35
 FindHandle call (Memory Manager) P16-79, GSTR-12-25
 FindMaxWidth PI-105
 FindWindow GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-58, GSTR-5-26, GSTR-13-12, GSTR-13-66, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-48-49, GSTR-25-123, GSTR-25-124, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-126, PI-74, PI-114, PI-115, PI-129, PI-152
 flInfo GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 firmTaskErr GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
 firmware
 CTR-13, GSH-43, GSH-233, P16-6, P16-70-72, PI-xviii, PI-294
 firmware routines,
 Monitor CTR-112-115
 mouse CTR-193-194
 video CTR-116-118
 firmware
 80-column ETR-xxi, ETR-49-50
 addresses CTR-322-327
 Alternate Display Mode GST-47, GST-68
 application program access to GST-93-94
 auxiliary ETR-86-93
 background printing GST-38
 bypassing application programs GST-92-93
 clock rate GST-84
 control of shadowing GST-86
 DeskTop Bus GST-43
 disk I/O CTR-120
 disk-port GST-40
 display mode CTR-104
 display subroutines GST-32
 enhanced video CTR-249-250
 entry points CTR-23, GSF-224-257
 features GST-46
 I/O CTR-71-73, ETR-46-71
 I/O routines GSF-11-16, GSF-79
 ID bytes GSF-222-223
 interrupt support GST-54-55
 memory use GST-18
 Monitor I/O firmware GST-51-54
 Monitor programs GST-47
 Monitor subroutines ETR-46-71
 mouse CTR-191-196
 Pascal 1.1 protocol ETR-68-71, ETR-145-146
 protocols CTR-72-73
 Read routine GST-38
 reference manual GST-109
 resident desk accessories GST-46
 ROM available GST-46
 serial port 1 CTR-160
 serial port 2 CTR-174
 serial ports GST-33-39
 setting of direct page location GST-79
 setting of stack location GST-79
 slot ETR-69
 Smartport CTR-124
 SmartPort routines GST-40-41
 See also specific type
 firstItem GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-20, GSTR-13-88
 Fix2Frac GSTR-9-10
 Fix2Long GSTR-9-11
 Fix2X GSTR-9-12
 FixAppleMenu GSTR-5-5, GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-8, GSTR-5-15, GSTR-5-20, PI-47, PI-158
 FixATan2 GSTR-9-13
 FixDiv GSTR-9-14
 fixed (memory-block attribute) PI-187, PI-189, PI-195
 fixed address (memory-block attribute) PI-187
 fixed bank (memory-block attribute) PI-187
 fixed block GSTR-12-7
 fixed type (Integer Math) PI-179
 fixed value GSTR-xxx, GSTR-9-1
 fixed-width font GSTR-16-226
 FixFontMenu GSTR-8-14, GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-36-37, GSTR-8-45, GSTR-C-5
 FixMenuBar GSTR-13-8, GSTR-13-9, GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-33, GSTR-13-41, IIGS #43, PI-47
 FixMul GSTR-9-15
 FixRatio GSTR-9-16, GSTR-16-217, GSTR-16-253
 FixRound GSTR-9-17
 flag GSTR-2-7
 flag inputs CTR-23
 flag word P16-168, P16-245
 flag word (QUIT) PI-202
 any-key-down ETR-13
 flag-modification commands GSF-38
 flags GSF-8, GSF-12, GSF-14, GSF-16, GSF-35-38
 flags e, m, x GST-83
 busy P16-36, P16-96
 e-, m-, and x-flags P16-64

examining and changing GSF-36-38
 inverse CTR-69,CTR-70
 Jump-Table-Loaded P16-201, P16-235
 keyboard CTR-78
 quit P16-245
 restoring GSF-66
 return P16-61, P16-82, P16-168
 FLASH command ETR-270-271
 flash320 GSTR-16-275
 flashing characters CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88-89
 flashing format ETR-19-20, ETR-57-58
 flashing text GSF-78
 FlashMenuBar GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-41
 flashRate GSTR-14-65
 flip ASCII GSF-30, GSF-64
 floating-point numerics (SANE) GST-59, GST-68, GST-111
 flshBufHnd GSTR-14-68
 FLUSH PI-210, P16-24-25, P16-146
 Flush command GSF-6, GSF-180, GSH-131
 Flush Device Buffer command GSF-195
 Flush Keyboard Buffer command GSF-188
 flushADBDevBuf GSTR-3-21, GSTR-3-28
 FlushEvents GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-35, GSTR-7-39
 flushing files P16-24-25, P16-146, PI-210
 FlushInQueue GSF-102
 flushKbd GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 FlushOutQueue GSF-102
 fMapTrshdErr GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
 fmBadFamNumErr GSTR-8-23, GSTR-8-26, GSTR-8-29, GSTR-8-35, GSTR-8-40, GSTR-8-41, GSTR-8-43, GSTR-8-46, GSTR-8-49, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fmBadNameErr GSTR-8-23, GSTR-8-42, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fmBadSizeErr GSTR-8-26, GSTR-8-29, GSTR-8-35, GSTR-8-40, GSTR-8-43, GSTR-8-46, GSTR-8-49, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 FMBootInit GSTR-8-18
 fmDupStartUpErr GSTR-8-20, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fmFamNotFndErr GSTR-8-24, GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-45, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fmFontMemErr GSTR-8-49, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fmFontNtFndErr GSTR-8-40, GSTR-8-49, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 FMGetCurFID GSTR-8-38
 FMGetSysFID GSTR-8-39
 fmMenuErr GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-45, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fmNotActiveErr GSTR-8-21, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fMove GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 FMReset GSTR-8-22
 fmResetErr GSTR-8-22, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 fmScaleSizeErr GSTR-8-43, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5, IIGS #15
 FMSetSysFont GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-19, GSTR-8-40
 FMShutDown GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-21, PI-58
 FMStartUp GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-19-20, PI-46
 FMStatus GSTR-8-22
 fmSysFontErr GSTR-8-49, GSTR-8-52, GSTR-B-5
 FMVersion GSTR-8-21
 font GSTR-6-79, GSTR-8-1, GSTR-16-26
 font bounds rectangle GSTR-16-53-54
 font definition GSTR-16-41-44
 font families PI-95
 font family GSTR-8-3, GSTR-8-28
 font family numbers IIGS #41
 font flags GSTR-16-120, GSTR-16-225-226, GSTR-16-274
 font globals record GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-118, GSTR-16-121, GSTR-16-276
 font height PI-93
 font ID GSTR-2-6, GSTR-8-6, GSTR-8-16, GSTR-16-122, GSTR-16-224, GSTR-16-277
 font info record GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-163, GSTR-16-226, GSTR-16-276
 Font Manager GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-7, GSTR-8-GSTR-1-52, GSTR-10-45, GSTR-16-227
 Font Manager IIGS #15, #38, #41
 Font Manager PI-21, PI-64, PI-92, PI-94%
 constants GSTR-8-50-51
 data structures GSTR-8-51
 error codes GSTR-8-52
 shutdown routine GSTR-8-21
 startup routine GSTR-8-19-20
 status routine GSTR-8-22
 using GSTR-8-14-16
 version number routine GSTR-8-21
 font name PI-95
 font number PI-95
 font record GSTR-16-41-44, GSTR-16-276
 font rectangle GSTR-16-47-48, GSTR-16-51
 font scaling GSTR-8-7-8, GSTR-8-44
 font size GSTR-8-4, PI-95
 font strike GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-41, GSTR-16-44, GSTR-16-48-49, PI-94
 font style GSTR-8-5, PI-96
 font substitution PI-167, GSTR-15-7
 font windows, HodgePodge and PI-34, PI-53, PI-104-106, PI-305
 font
 available GSTR-8-1, GSTR-8-25
 best-fit algorithm GSTR-8-16, GSTR-8-43
 Control Manager icon GSTR-4-11, GSTR-8-16
 current GSTR-8-8, GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-119, GSTR-16-224
 current icon GSTR-25-109
 icon GSTR-25-15, GSTR-25-109
 real GSTR-8-7
 system GSTR-8-8, GSTR-8-39, GSTR-8-40, GSTR-8-48, GSTR-16-147, GSTR-16-256
 unreal GSTR-8-7
 FONT.ASM PI-361-366
 FONT.CC PI-405-408
 FONT.LISTS GS/OS #1
 FONT.PAS PI-434-436
 fontFlags GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-277
 fontHandle GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-277
 fonts IIGS #41, P16-52, PI-21, PI-34, PI-92, PI-94-97
 Fonts menu PI-33
 FONTS subdirectory GSTR-8-1, GSTR-8-7, GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-19, GSTR-8-42
 fonts, where stored on disk PI-96
 fontSize GSTR-8-6, GSTR-8-51
 FontSpecBits GSTR-8-8, GSTR-8-11
 FontStatBits GSTR-8-8-10, GSTR-8-35
 FontStatRec GSTR-8-10, GSTR-8-34, GSTR-8-51
 fontStyle GSTR-8-6, GSTR-8-51
 fontWidth GSTR-16-61, GSTR-16-206, GSTR-16-276
 ForceBufDims GSTR-16-58-60, GSTR-16-100
 forced cold-start reset CTR-50,CTR-52, ETR-96

foreground color GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-54, GSTR-16-57, GSTR-16-125, GSTR-16-226, GSTR-16-228
 foreground color , foreground pixel GSTR-16-27, GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-52
 foreground pixels PI-93
 foreign language keyboards Ilc #3
 Format GSF-5, GSF-128, GSF-139, GSF-147
 format ProDOS #19
 FORMAT ProDOS #16,
 SmartPort #5, CTR-127,CTR-135-136, P16-12, P16-14, P16-42, P16-44-45, P16-155, P16-290, description of P16-160-161
 FORMATTER ProDOS #5, #16
 FORMATTER.CODE Pascal #12
 FORMATTER.DATA Pascal #12
 FORMATTER.TEXT Pascal #12
 formatting ProDOS #16
 formatting of text display GST-67
 formatting. See disks; FORMAT call; volume(s)
 FORMDISK.TEXT Pascal #12
 Fortran CTR-330, ETR-235, GST-103
 fPgDirty GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 FPI GST-12, GST-13, GST-75, GST-77, IIGS #21
 FPT. See function pointer table
 fQContent GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-124, GSTR-25-141
 frac type (Integer Math) PI-179
 frac value GSTR-xxx, GSTR-9-1
 Frac2Fix GSTR-9-18
 Frac2X GSTR-9-19
 FracCos GSTR-9-20
 FracDiv GSTR-9-21
 FracMul GSTR-9-22
 FracSin GSTR-9-23
 FracSqrt GSTR-9-24
 fragmentation of memory GSTR-12-6-8
 frame PI-81
 frame color GSTR-25-99
 frame region GSTR-25-9
 frame type GSTR-25-69
 frame,
 alert window PI-110
 colors PI-111
 controls PI-129, PI-130
 document window PI-110
 region PI-112
 scroll bars PI-117, PI-129, PI-288, PI-289
 window PI-109
 FrameArc GSTR-16-101
 frameColor GSTR-25-18, GSTR-25-142
 FrameOval GSTR-16-102
 FramePoly GSTR-16-103
 FrameRect GSTR-16-104
 FrameRgn GSTR-16-105
 FrameRRect GSTR-16-106
 framing GSTR-16-20
 framing (QuickDraw II) PI-87, PI-91
 free space GSF-308, GSF-310
 Free-Form Sound Player (Macintosh) GST-60, GST-62
 Free-Form Synthesizer IIGS #37, PI-176
 Free-Form Synthesizer playing status GSTR-21-13
 FREEBUFR ProDOS #9
 FreeMem GSTR-12-26
 French keyboard CTR-373-374
 freqOffset GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-37
 Frequency High and Frequency Low registers (DOC) GSH-106
 FromDesk GSTR-25-40, GSTR-25-139
 FrontWindow GSTR-25-50, GSTR-25-56, PI-57, PI-154, PI-165, PI-170
 frScroll GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 FS character ETR-55
 FST GS/OS #1
 fstSpDelKey GSTR-14-65
 fTitle GSTR-25-141
 full native mode. See native mode
 full pathname PI-208
 full-duplex operation CTR-182-184
 fullPathname GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-32PI-208
 funcNotFoundErr GSTR-24-7, GSTR-24-26, GSTR-B-2
 function keys CTR-4
 function names, typographic convention for P16-xxi
 function number GSTR-A-, PI-66, PI-274
 function pointer table (FPT) GSTR-24-7, GSTR-24-8, GSTR-24-19, GSTR-A-2, GSTR-A-6
 fVis GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 FWEntry GSTR-6-22, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-17-18, PI-294
 fZoom GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
 fZoomed GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-112, GSTR-25-141

G
 game I/O connectors PI-2, PI-8
 game I/O GSH-155-158
 game I/O port GST-4, GST-41
 game I/O
 connectors ETR-13
 port GSH-155-158
 signals ETR-190-191
 game input CTR-198-201
 characteristics CTR-199
 game paddles CTR-198,CTR-287
 game paddles GST-41
 games P16-83
 GBASCALC GSF-227
 GCB. See generator control block
 gcbAddrTable GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 GCR CTR-247
 gen0off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen10off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen11off GSTR-21-36
 gen12off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen13off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen14off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen1off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen2off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen3off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen4off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen5off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen6off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen7off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 gen8off GSTR-21-36
 gen9off GSTR-21-19, GSTR-21-36
 genAvail GSTR-21-37
 genBusyErr GSTR-21-15, GSTR-21-37, GSTR-B-3
 General Logic Unit IIGS #37, CTR-15,CTR-245-246,CTR-365
 General Purpose Inteface Bus Ile #7
 generator GSTR-21-5
 generator control block (GCB) GSTR-21-6, GSTR-21-1, address table GSTR-21-22, GSTR-21-23
 generator status word GSTR-21-12
 generator table GSTR-21-22, GSTR-21-23
 generator-to-oscillator translation GSTR-21-29
 generators (sound) PI-176
 geneva GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 genTable GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 German keyboard CTR-376-377
 GET command ETR-269
 Get Load Segment Info call (System Loader) P16-206, P16-238-239
 Get Pathname call (System Loader) P16-242-243
 Get User ID call (System Loader) P16-240-241
 Get Version Number command GSF-192
 GET816LEN GSF-230

GetAbsClamp GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-38
 GetAbsScale GSTR-3-15
 GetAddr GSTR-7-22, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-19-21, IIGS #18
 parameter reference numbers
 GSTR-14-20
 GetAddress GSTR-16-107-108
 GetAlertStage GSTR-6-49
 GetArcRot GSTR-16-109
 GetBackColor GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-110
 GetBackPat GSTR-16-111
 GetBarColors GSTR-13-42-43
 GETBUFR ProDOS #9
 GetCaretTime GSTR-7-15, GSTR-7-36
 GetChar routine Miscellaneous #10
 GetCharExtra GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-112
 GetClip GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-113
 GetClipHandle GSTR-16-114
 GetColorEntry GSTR-16-115
 GetColorTable GSTR-16-116
 GetContentDraw GSTR-25-51
 GetContentOrgin GSTR-25-52
 GetContentRgn GSTR-25-53
 GetControlDItem GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-50
 GetCtlAction GSTR-4-59
 GetCtlDpage GSTR-4-60
 GetCtlParams GSTR-4-61
 GetCtlRefCon GSTR-4-62
 GetCtlTitle GSTR-4-63
 GetCtlValue GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-64
 GetCursorAdr GSTR-16-117
 GetDAStrPtr GSTR-5-16
 GetDataSize GSTR-25-54
 GetDblTime GSTR-7-13, GSTR-7-37
 GetDefButton GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-51
 GetDefProc GSTR-25-55
 GetDeskPat GSTR-25-41, GSTR-25-139
 GetDesktop GSTR-25-40, GSTR-25-139
 GetDItemBox GSTR-6-52
 GetDItemType GSTR-6-53
 GetDItemValue GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-54
 GetDTR GSF-105
 GetErrGlobals GSTR-23-22
 GetErrorDevice GSTR-23-23
 GetFamInfo GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-23, GSTR-8-41, PI-97, PI-105
 GetFamNum GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-23, GSTR-8-42, IIGS #41
 GetFGSize GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-118
 GetFGSizecalls GSTR-16-62
 GetFirstDItem GSTR-6-55
 GetFirstWindow GSTR-25-56
 GetFont GSTR-8-16, GSTR-16-119
 GetFontFlags GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-120, PI-105
 GetFontGlobals GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-121, GSTR-16-124, GSTR-16-150
 GetFontID GSTR-8-16, GSTR-16-122
 GetFontInfo GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-123, PI-105, PI-123
 GetFontLore GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-118, GSTR-16-121, GSTR-16-124, GSTR-16-150
 GetForeColor GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-125
 GetFrameColor GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-57, IIGS #45
 GetFuncPtr GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-7
 GetGrafProcs GSTR-16-126
 GetHandle GSTR-13-39
 GetHandleSize GSTR-12-27
 GetInBuffer GSF-101
 GetInfo AppleTalk #1, #2
 GetInfoDraw GSTR-25-58
 GetInfoRefCon GSTR-25-59
 GetInGlobals GSTR-23-24
 getInitTotal GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88
 getInitValue GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88, GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88
 GetInputDevice GSTR-23-25
 GetIntInfo GSF-96, GSF-105, GSF-184
 GetIRQEnable GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-23-24
 GetIText GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-56
 GetListDefProc GSTR-11-18
 GETLN GSF-21, GSF-71, GSF-74-75, GSF-79, GSF-246
 GETLN buffer ProDOS #1
 GetLn routine CTR-36, CTR-59-60, CTR-78, CTR-82, CTR-205, GST-53, escape codes CTR-60-62
 GETLN subroutine ETR-58, ETR-62-64, ETR-222
 editing with ETR-63-64
 input buffer ETR-78
 line length ETR-3
 used by Monitor ETR-101
 with 80-column card ETR-269
 GETLN0 GSF-247
 GETLN1 GSF-247
 GetLn1 routine CTR-82
 GETLN1 subroutine ETR-222
 GETLNZ GSF-246
 GetLnZ routine CTR-82
 GETLNZ subroutine ETR-222
 GetMasterSCB GSTR-16-127
 GetMaxGrow GSTR-25-60
 GetMenuBar GSTR-13-44
 GetMenuFlag GSTR-13-45
 GetMenuMgrPort GSTR-13-46
 GetMenuTitle GSTR-13-47
 getMessage GSTR-24-15, GSTR-24-26
 GetMHandle GSTR-13-39, GSTR-13-48
 GetMItem GSTR-13-16, GSTR-13-49
 GetMItemFlag GSTR-13-50
 GetMItemMark GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-51
 GetMItemStyle GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-52
 GetModeBits GSF-95, GSF-100
 GetMouse GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-38
 GetMouseClamp GSTR-14-31
 GetMouseClamp Mouse #7
 GetMTitleStart GSTR-13-53
 GetMTitleWidth GSTR-13-54
 GetNewDItem GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-57-58
 GetNewID GSTR-12-11, GSTR-12-35, GSTR-14-57-58
 GetNewModalDialog GSTR-6-7, GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-59-60, GSTR-22-4, IIGS #38, PI-134, PI-142
 GetNextDItem GSTR-6-61
 GetNextEvent GSTR-4-10, GSTR-5-3, GSTR-6-33, GSTR-6-63, GSTR-6-66, GSTR-7-5, GSTR-7-12, GSTR-7-33, GSTR-7-39-40, GSTR-13-11, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-12, GSTR-25-118, GSTR-25-119, IIGS #42, PI-48, PI-68, PI-70, PI-73, PI-74, PI-113, PI-114, PI-129, PI-152, PI-153, PI-286
 Desk Manager and GSTR-7-40
 GetNextWindow GSTR-25-56, GSTR-25-61
 GETNUM GSF-256
 GetNumNDAs GSTR-5-17
 GetOSEvent GSTR-7-41
 GetOutBuff IIGS #16
 GetOutBuffer GSF-97, GSF-98, GSF-101
 GetOutGlobals GSTR-23-26
 GetOutputDevice GSTR-23-27
 GetPage GSTR-25-62
 GetPen GSTR-16-128, PI-106
 GetPenMask GSTR-16-129
 GetPenMode GSTR-16-130
 GetPenPat GSTR-16-131
 GetPenSize GSTR-16-132
 GetPenState GSTR-16-133, IIGS #44
 GetPicSave GSTR-16-134
 GetPixel GSTR-16-135
 GetPolySave GSTR-16-136

GetPort GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-137,
 GSTR-25-21, PI-52, PI-53, PI-97,
 PI-134
 GetPortLoc GSTR-16-138
 GetPortRect GSTR-16-139
 GetPortStat GSF-104
 GetRectInfo GSTR-25-63
 GetRgnSave GSTR-16-140
 GetRomFont GSTR-16-141-142
 GetSCB GSTR-16-143
 GetSCC GSF-104
 GetScrap GSTR-20-5, GSTR-20-6,
 GSTR-20-10
 GetScrapCount GSTR-20-5, GSTR-20-
 11
 GetScrapHandle GSTR-20-12
 GetScrapPath GSTR-20-13
 GetScrapSize GSTR-20-14
 GetScrapState GSTR-20-15
 GetScroll GSTR-25-64
 GetSoundVolume GSTR-21-21
 GetSpaceExtra GSTR-16-55, GSTR-
 16-144
 GetStandardSCB GSTR-16-145
 GetStructRgn GSTR-25-65
 GetSysBar GSTR-13-55
 GetSysField GSTR-16-146
 GetSysFont GSTR-16-147
 GetSysWFlag GSTR-25-66
 GetTableAddress GSTR-21-6, GSTR-
 21-22-23
 GetTextFace GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-
 148
 GetTextMode GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-
 149
 GetTextSize GSTR-16-150
 GetTick GSTR-14-22, PI-181
 GetTSPtr GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-8
 GetUpdateRgn GSTR-25-67
 GetUserField GSTR-16-151
 GetVector GSTR-7-23, GSTR-14-5,
 GSTR-14-61, GSTR-14-63,
 IIGS #1, #18
 GetVisDesktop GSTR-25-41, GSTR-
 25-139
 GetVisHandle GSTR-16-152
 GetVisRgn GSTR-16-153
 GetWAP GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-9
 GetWControls GSTR-25-68
 GetWFrame GSTR-25-69
 GetWKind GSTR-25-70
 GetWMgrCon GSTR-25-72
 GetWMgrPort GSTR-25-71
 GetWRefCon PI-52, PI-53, PI-57, PI-
 154, PI-165, PI-171
 GetWTitle GSTR-25-73
 GetZoomRect GSTR-25-74
 GET_BOOT_VOL call P16-12, P16-
 67, P16-133
 description of P16-166
 GET_DEV_NUM call P16-12, P16-
 42, P16-44-45
 description of P16-155
 GET_EOF PI-214, P16-23, P16-286
 description of P16-150
 GET_FILE_INFO PI-214,
 ProDOS #5, UniDisk 3.5 #3,
 P16-21, P16-85-86, P16-123-127
 GET_LAST_DEV call P16-12, P16-
 42, P16-44
 description of P16-156
 GET_LEVEL PI-211, P16-12, P16-25,
 P16-80, P16-145
 description of P16-152
 GET_MARK PI-214, P16-23, P16-148
 GET_NAME call P16-12, P16-23,
 P16-67, P16-148
 description of P16-165
 GET_PREFIX PI-209, P16-20, P16-
 66, P16-165
 description of P16-133
 GET_VERSION call P16-12, P16-80,
 P16-258, P16-260, P16-264, P16-
 258
 description of P16-171
 ghost addresses GSH-49
 GL03ALS.PAS PI-152, PI-443-446
 GLoader GS/OS #1
 global coordinates GSTR-4-50,
 GSTR-16-9, GSTR-16-16, GSTR-
 16-39, GSTR-16-154, GSTR-16-
 173, GSTR-25-29, GSTR-25-47,
 PI-70, PI-77, PI-82-84
 global page GST-95
 global page (ProDOS 8) P16-10, P16-
 36, PI-292, PI-296
 Apple IIGS equivalents to P16-80
 global storage CTR-36
 global symbols PI-238
 global variables P16-79, P16-300. See
 also programming; System
 Loader
 GLOBALS.ASM PI-373-376
 GlobalToLocal GSTR-16-39, GSTR-
 16-154
 GLU IIGS #37 See Sound GLU
 GLU chip GSF-183, GSF-186, GSF-199
 GO GSF-252
 GO command CTR-219, ETR-120,
 GSF-36, GSF-49
 go-away box/area PI-110, PI-114
 go-away region GSTR-25-9, GSTR-25-
 127
 good GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-32
 GPIB IIGS #7
 GQuit GS/OS #1
 GR IIGS #29
 GrafOff GSTR-16-155
 GrafOn GSTR-16-155
 GrafPort GSTR-16-14-15, GSTR-16-
 39, GSTR-16-187, GSTR-16-241,
 GSTR-16-277, GSTR-25-17,
 IIGS #14, #35, PI-81-82, PI-103,
 PI-108, PI-136
 current GSTR-16-241
 printing PI-170
 relation to windows PI-108-109
 standard GSTR-16-187
 GrafPorts GST-65
 grafProcs GSTR-16-126, GSTR-16-
 229, GSTR-16-277
 graphic design P16-91
 graphic object GSTR-16-21
 graphic port GSTR-16-9, GSTR-16-14
 graphic ports PI-76, PI-81, PI-103
 graphics GSH-79-94
 graphics IIGS #3, IIGS #29
 graphics See double-high-resolution
 graphics; high-resolution
 graphics; low-resolution
 graphics
 graphics display modes GSF-10
 graphics display
 buffer CTR-38
 double high-resolution CTR-97-
 98, CTR-111, CTR-269
 high-resolution CTR-38-39, CTR-
 95-97, CTR-110, CTR-267-268
 low-resolution CTR-94-95, CTR-
 109, CTR-266-267
 mixed-mode CTR-98-99
 graphics displays GST-20-24, GST-64
 graphics environment GST-64-65
 graphics file formats IIGS #27
 graphics fill option GST-24
 graphics modes ETR-21-26, IIGS #4
 bit-mapping ETR-23-26
 graphics tablet GSTR-7-21, GSF-10,
 GST-41, GST-43, PI-8
 graphics
 Color-Fill GSH-84, GSH-86, GSH-
 93
 Double Hi-Res GSH-31, GSH-37,
 GSH-44, GSH-67, GSH-71,
 GSH-82-83, GSH-263
 Hi-Res GSH-18, GSH-31, GSH-44,
 GSH-67, GSH-80-82, GSH-263
 Lo-Res GSH-31, GSH-71, GSH-79-
 80, GSH-262
 monochrome GSH-80
 Super Hi-Res GSH-19, GSH-37,
 GSH-71, GSH-84-94
 gray scales GSTR-15-16, GSTR-15-17

greater than sign (>) as prompt
 character ETR-62
 green320 GSTR-16-274
 green640 GSTR-16-274
 greenMask GSTR-16-274
 grid values GSTR-25-45
 grow box/area PI-48, PI-114
 grow image GSTR-25-75-76
 grow region GSTR-25-9, GSTR-25-11
 growBox GSTR-4-86
 growColor GSTR-25-13, GSTR-25-142
 growNorBack GSTR-4-24
 growOutline GSTR-4-24
 growProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-23,
 GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
 GrowSize GSTR-4-65
 GrowWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-
 75-76, GSTR-25-125, PI-114
 GS character ETR-55

H

half-dot shift Iie #3
 half-duplex operation CTR-180-181
 halt mechanism GSTR-18-8
 halt vector GSTR-18-6, GSTR-18-8,
 GSTR-18-9
 HALT vector IIGS #7
 halting current program (Control-
 Reset) P16-25
 hand control connectors ETR-8,
 ETR-40-43
 hand controller CTR-198, circuits
 CTR-288
 connector CTR-287
 connector signals CTR-199-
 200, CTR-287
 input and output CTR-287-
 290, CTR-363-364
 signals CTR-289, CTR-364
 hand controllers GST-41
 hand controls GSH-6, GSH-155,
 GSH-156-158
 handle CTR-232, GSTR-xxx, GSTR-
 12-5-6
 handle, empty GSTR-12-8
 handleErr GSTR-12-22, GSTR-12-24,
 GSTR-12-27, GSTR-12-28, GSTR-
 12-29, GSTR-12-30, GSTR-12-32,
 GSTR-12-38, GSTR-12-40, GSTR-
 12-41, GSTR-12-42, GSTR-12-43,
 GSTR-12-44, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-
 B-2
 handlers, interrupt. See interrupt
 handlers
 handles PI-189, PI-190
 See memory handles
 Handshake register GSH-149-150

handshaking GSF-84-85
 handshaking, protocol GSF-89
 handshaking, settings GST-34
 HandToHand GSTR-12-28
 HandToPtr GSTR-12-29
 hard disk support GST-6
 hard disk with Pascal ETR-xxii
 hardware CTR-365
 hardware GST-11-26, GST-92-93,
 GST-109
 hardware IIGS #28
 hardware interrupt enable states
 GSTR-14-23
 addresses CTR-316-321, CTR-353-
 356
 configuration P16-87
 interrupts. See interrupt(s)
 registers P16-64
 requirements for ProDOS 16 P16-
 xviii-xix
 stack P16-75
 See Apple IIGS
 hAxisOnly GSTR-4-53, GSTR-4-86
 hbQueueBadErr GSTR-14-70, GSTR-
 B-2
 header fields. See fields; headers;
 segment(s)
 header section GSTR-5-3, GSTR-5-6
 headers
 directory P16-256-259. See also
 volume(s)
 segment P16-186, P16-299. See also
 segment(s)
 subdirectory P16-259-261. See also
 subdirectories
 headphone jack CTR-8, CTR-256
 HEADR GSF-244
 HeartBeat PI-181
 HeartBeat Interrupt Handler GSTR-
 14-22, GSTR-14-27, GSTR-14-49
 heartbeat interrupt queue GST-65
 HeartBeat Interrupt Task queue GSTR-
 14-5, GSTR-14-27, GSTR-14-48,
 GSTR-14-50, GSTR-14-52, GSTR-
 14-53
 HeartBeat Interrupt Task queue PI-181
 helvetica GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 Hewlett-Packard Interface Bus Iie #7
 Hex2Int GSTR-9-25
 Hex2Long GSTR-9-26
 hexadecimal CTR-387-389
 hexadecimal GSF-21, GSF-25, GSF-
 26, GSF-32, GSF-53, GSF-115,
 GSF-116
 hexadecimal arithmetic CTR-215
 hexadecimal arithmetic ETR-116
 hexadecimal notation CTR-225
 hexadecimal numbers GSH-246-248

hexadecimal numbers GST-15, GST-
 49
 hexadecimal values ETR-12
 hexadecimal values, converting to
 decimal ETR-238-239
 hexadecimal values, converting to
 negative decimal ETR-239-240
 hexadecimal, math GSF-42
 hexadecimal, numbers, converting
 GSF-41, GSF-65
 Hexit GSTR-9-27
 HFS UniDisk 3.5 #4
 HGR Iie #3
 hi-res Iie #3
 Hi-Res PI-7
 Hi-Res graphics GST-20-21
 in Apple II family GST-5
 linear mapping option
 incompatible GST-87
 shadow register GST-86
 shadowing GST-90, GST-113
 specifications GST-3
 Hi-Res video display PI-7
 HideControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-45,
 GSTR-4-66, GSTR-11-11 | GSTR-
 16-156
 HideDItem GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-62,
 GSTR-6-81, GSTR-6-85
 HidePen GSTR-16-156, GSTR-17-9,
 GSTR-17-14
 HidePleaseWait PI-46, PI-134
 HideWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-
 78, GSTR-25-99, GSTR-25-113,
 GSTR-25-114, PI-114
 hierarchical disk directories GST-6
 hierarchical file system P16-7, P16-
 283, PI-288
 high-level calls GST-65
 high-level Event Manager GSTR-7-3
 high-level languages PI-65 PI-282-
 283, PI-290
 high-order byte, of handles PI-190
 high-order word GSTR-9-28
 high-resolution Iie #3, IIGS #29
 high-resolution graphics CTR-38-
 39, CTR-95-97, CTR-267-268,
 ETR-17, ETR-18, ETR-23-25,
 addressing display pages ETR-
 31, ETR-36
 high-resolution graphics
 bit patterns ETR-241-242
 colors ETR-24-25, ETR-183-184
 display pages ETR-23, ETR-27
 double CTR-97-98, CTR-111, CTR-
 269
 generation ETR-183-184
 map CTR-110
 map ETR-36

ETR-23, ETR-27, ETR-79
 high-resolution Page 2 ETR-23, ETR-79
 highlighted control GSTR-4-7
 highlighting PI-72, PI-116, PI-128, PI-153
 high-resolution display, memory banks for P16-33
 HiliteControl GSTR-4-7, GSTR-4-67, GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-40, GSTR-11-11
 HiliteMenu GSTR-13-11, GSTR-13-12, GSTR-13-56, GSTR-13-66, GSTR-25-122, GSTR-25-123
 HiliteMenu PI-54
 HiliteWindow GSTR-25-36, GSTR-25-79
 hiMouseRes GSTR-14-65
 HIREs IIe #3, IIGS #29
 HIREs soft switch ETR-29, ETR-30, ETR-89
 HiRes switch CTR-45, CTR-103, CTR-241, CTR-243, 354
 HiWord GSTR-9-28, PI-54
 HLINE GSF-79, GSF-226, CTR-112, CTR-114
 HLINE subroutine ETR-67, ETR-222
 HLock GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-30, PI-104, PI-211
 HLockAll GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-31
 HodgePodge PI-30-60. See also specific subroutine, PI-35, PI-59-60, PI-303-304
 "About..." dialog box PI-142-144
 assembly language PI-65-66, PI-190, PI-202, PI-311-376
 auxiliary type PI-218
 C PI-377-412
 code-listing conventions PI-xxii, PI-36
 control manipulation PI-130
 desk accessory support PI-158
 differences between the languages PI-69, PI-74, IO5
 direct-page/stack space PI-206
 Edit menu disabled PI-161
 error handling PI-306-310
 event handling PI-51-57
 files PI-33, PI-34
 font windows PI-34, PI-53, PI-104-106, PI-305
 general description PI-xx
 languages PI-35
 Macintosh resource equivalents PI-285
 main event loop PI-48-50
 main program PI-36, PI-37
 memory-block attributes PI-188
 menus PI-31-33, PI-47, PI-153
 mouse events and PI-71
 organization of PI-35-36
 Pascal PI-36, PI-413-446
 picture files PI-215-217, PI-218
 picture windows PI-33, PI-52-53, PI-103-104, PI-305-306
 QuickDraw II coordinates and PI-82
 QUIT PI-202
 scrolling and PI-117
 shutting down PI-57, PI-58-59
 starting up PI-38-47, PI-64
 subroutines PI-35, PI-59-60, PI-302-304
 System loader and PI-195
 TaskMaster and PI-51-53, PI-75, PI-286
 update routine PI-116
 User ID use PI-193
 versions of PI-35
 windows PI-56-57, PI-72, PI-120-124
 HOME GSF-79, GSF-242, ETR-270-271, CTR-112, CTR-114, ETR-50, ETR-67, ETR-223
 HOMEMOUSE GSF-209, GSF-213, GSTR-14-32, CTR-194
 homing the cursor GST-54
 hook table GSF-145
 horizontal blanking PI-100
 horizontal resolution movement GSTR-25-45
 horizontal resolution
 AppleColor 100 monitor GST-19
 Super Hi-Res graphics GST-22
 horizontal-count bits CTR-259-260
 horScroll GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-85
 hot spot GSTR-16-37
 HP.ASM PI-312-314
 HP.CC PI-378-381
 HP.H PI-411-412
 HP.PAS PI-414-418
 HPIB IIe #7
 hPic GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 hPrint GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 HRP1 CTR-38
 HRP1X CTR-38
 HRP2 CTR-39, CTR-269
 HRP2X CTR-39, CTR-269
 hrtz50or60 GSTR-14-64
 HTAB command ETR-xxi
 HTAB command, with original Apple IIe ETR-271-272
 Human Interface Guidelines GSTR-xGSTR-xviii, GSTR-6-7, GSTR-6-8, GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-22, GSTR-6-25, GSTR-10-1, GSTR-13-1, GSTR-13-7, GSTR-13-9, GSTR-15-20, GSTR-25-79, P16-90-91. See also programming, PI-xix-xx, PI-11-13, PI-139, PI-146, PI-277
 humidity, operating ETR-158
 HUnlock GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-32, PI-104, PI-211
 HUnlockAll GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-33
 hybrid applications PI-292-293
 hybrid program design GST-89

I

I command CTR-156, CTR-170, CTR-228
 I/O See also slots, CTR-357, GSH-7, GSH-17, GSH-22, GSH-167-171
 I/O buffering GST-37-38
 I/O directing routines GSTR-23-3-4
 I/O expansion slots GSH-162-189
 cards for slot 3 GSH-183
 direct memory access GSH-168
 expansion ROM space GSH-175-176
 expansion slot signals GSH-165-166
 I/O cards GSH-168
 I/O memory space GSH-181-182
 loading GSH-171
 peripheral-card I/O space GSH-174-175
 peripheral-card RAM space GSH-177
 peripheral-card ROM space GSH-175
 RAM GSH-180
 slot number GSH-178-179
 I/O features GST-27-43
 I/O links GSF-70
 I/O links GST-51-52
 I/O memory space GST-61, GST-79
 I/O port 5 GSF-114
 I/O redirection ProDOS #3
 I/O SELECT IIe #2, #4
 I/O select signal GST-30
 I/O SELECT ϕ signal ETR-133-134
 I/O shadowing GST-29, GST-54, GST-78, GST-85, GST-90, GST-113
 I/O slot addresses GST-30
 I/O STROBE IIe #2, #4
 I/O strobe signal GST-31
 I/O subroutines IIGS #2
 I/O
 addressing ETR-138-139
 buffer files PI-210
 built-in PI-2, PI-8-9
 cassette CTR-364

circuits ETR-186-191
 devices, built-in ETR-9-43
 disk CTR-273-274, CTR-361
 disk drive CTR-120-121
 entry points ETR-145-146
 firmware, built-in ETR-45-71
 links CTR-56-58, ETR-51, ETR-78,
 ETR-140-141
 memory expansion card CTR-123
 memory for peripheral cards ETR-
 133
 memory locations GSH-267
 memory map ETR-142
 Pascal protocol ETR-68-76, ETR-
 144, ETR-145-146
 port CTR-71-74
 serial CTR-274-282, CTR-361-362
 serial ports PI-8
 Smartport CTR-123-124
 switching memory ETR-142-143
 See input/output
 icon GSTR-17-3, GSTR-17-11
 icon font GSTR-4-65, GSTR-4-75,
 GSTR-8-16, GSTR-25-15, GSTR-
 25-109
 icon record, QuickDraw II Auxiliary
 GSTR-17-3-4, GSTR-17-11
 icon, note GSTR-6-74
 icon, stop GSTR-6-86
 iconImage GSTR-6-90
 iconItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-88
 iconRect GSTR-6-90
 icons GST-61
 icons PI-10, PI-285, PI-286
 iCopies GSTR-15-14
 iCurBand GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 iCurCopy GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 iCurPage GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 ID bytes GST-97, IIC #5,
 Miscellaneous #7
 ID nibble ProDOS #21
 ID number GSTR-13-14, GSTR-13-16,
 GSTR-13-79
 ID
 file system. See file system(s)
 User. See User ID
 See item ID; menu ID; User ID
 identification byte ETR-xx, ETR-231,
 CTR-73, Miscellaneous #7
 identification routines
 Miscellaneous #2
 idErr GSTR-12-17, GSTR-12-23,
 GSTR-12-31, GSTR-12-33, GSTR-
 12-36, GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-41,
 GSTR-12-45, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-
 B-2
 iDev GSTR-15-11, GSTR-15-47
 IDROUTINE GSF-250
 IDS.CODE Pascal #14
 IDSEARCH routine Pascal #14
 idTagNtAvlErr GSTR-14-57, GSTR-
 14-60, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
 IEEE standard floating-point
 arithmetic GST-68
 IEEE-488 IIC #7
 iFileVol GSTR-15-14, GSTR-15-15,
 GSTR-15-48
 iFstPage GSTR-15-14, GSTR-15-21,
 GSTR-15-48
 iHRes GSTR-15-11, GSTR-15-47
 IIC Plus IIC #7
 IIC logic board IIC #9
 IIC overview IIC #1
 IIC ROM IIC #8
 iLstPage GSTR-15-14, GSTR-15-21,
 GSTR-15-48
 image pointer GSTR-16-13, PI-80
 image width GSTR-16-44, PI-80
 ImageWriter PI-167
 job dialog box GSTR-15-8-9
 style dialog box GSTR-15-6-7
 ImageWriter II GST-38
 imBadInptParam GSTR-9-34, GSTR-
 9-38, GSTR-9-39, GSTR-9-42,
 GSTR-B-4
 IMBootInit GSTR-9-5
 imIllegalChar GSTR-9-8, GSTR-9-9,
 GSTR-9-25, GSTR-9-26, GSTR-9-
 42, GSTR-B-4
 immediate mode GSF-56-57
 immediate operand GST-50
 imOverflow GSTR-9-8, GSTR-9-9,
 GSTR-9-25, GSTR-9-26, GSTR-9-
 42, GSTR-B-4
 IMReset GSTR-9-7
 IMShutDown GSTR-9-4, GSTR-9-6
 IMStartUp GSTR-9-4, GSTR-9-5
 IMStatus GSTR-9-7
 imStrOverflow GSTR-9-29, GSTR-9-
 30, GSTR-9-31, GSTR-9-33,
 GSTR-9-42, GSTR-B-4
 IMVersion GSTR-9-6
 IN# command ETR-115
 IN#2 command CTR-169, CTR-
 171, CTR-172, CTR-176, CTR-
 179, CTR-180-183
 IN#4 command CTR-196
 IN#n command CTR-57, GST-52
 inactive control GSTR-4-7, GSTR-4-
 8, PI-128
 as dialog items PI-138
 inactive window GSTR-25-8, GSTR-
 25-11, GSTR-25-24, GSTR-25-92,
 PI-115
 inactiveCtl GSTR-4-7
 inactiveHilite GSTR-4-67, GSTR-4-86
 inButton GSTR-6-89
 incBsyFlag GSTR-14-68
 INCBUSYFLG GSF-270
 inCheckBox GSTR-6-89
 #include statement GSTR-2-6
 index blocks. See file blocks
 index mode, changing GSF-62
 index register ETR-138, CTR-18,
 GST-13, GST-14, GST-89, PI-4,
 PI-294
 indicator GSTR-4-4, GSTR-4-8,
 GSTR-4-83
 indirect addresses GST-50, ETR-77
 inDownArrow GSTR-6-89
 inEditLine GSTR-6-89
 infinity GSTR-9-40
 InflateTextBuffer GSTR-16-61, GSTR-
 16-157
 infoColor GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-142
 InfoDefProc IIGS #3
 InfoRefCon IIGS #3
 information bar GSTR-25-6, GSTR-
 25-11, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-58,
 GSTR-25-59, GSTR-25-63, GSTR-
 25-88, GSTR-25-101, GSTR-25-
 102, GSTR-25-117, IIGS #3, PI-
 110
 inGrow GSTR-6-89
 INH line IIC #5, IIGS #32
 Inhibit slot signal GST-28
 inIconItem GSTR-6-89
 INIT GSF-236, SmartPort #2, CTR-
 127, CTR-139-140, GSF-130
 init routine (NDA) PI-264
 Init utility (APW) GST-105, PI-224
 INIT.ASM PI-315-323
 InitColorTable GSTR-16-158-159
 initCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-29, GSTR-
 4-86
 InitCursor GSTR-16-160, PI-124, PI-
 165, PI-170, PI-309
 InitGlobals PI-35, PI-39-41, PI-150
 Initial Load PI-260
 Initial Load call (System Loader) P16-
 222-224, P16-227, P16-240
 initialization files P16-53-54. See also
 file(s), PI-256, PI-266
 initialization segment PI-196,
 segments P16-224, P16-184
 initialization. See system startup;
 register(s)
 initializing data structures
 (HodgePodge) PI-38-41
 initializing. See disks; registers;
 volume(s). See starting up
 INITMOUSE GSF-203, GSF-209
 InitMouse GSTR-14-32, Mouse #2,
 CTR-194

InitPalette GSTR-13-56, IIGS #5
 InitPort GSTR-16-161
 InitTextDev GSTR-23-28, GSTR-23-6
 inLongStatText GSTR-6-89
 inLongStatText2 GSTR-6-89
 inPageDown GSTR-6-89
 inPageUp GSTR-6-89
 INPORT GSF-251
 input GSTR-23-46
 Input and Printer commands GST-34-36, GST-52
 input buffer CTR-36, ETR-78, GSF-46, GSF-75, GSF-91, GSH-29, GST-37-38, GST-53
 INPUT command ETR-269
 input devices See I/O devices
 definition of P16-42. See also device(s)
 input link GST-52
 redirecting GSF-64
 input parameter GSTR-2-6
 input queue GST-38
 input routines GSF-71-75, GST-53
 input subroutines CTR-58-63
 GetLn CTR-59-60
 KeyIn CTR-58-59
 Monitor CTR-82
 RdKey CTR-58, CTR-78, CTR-341
 input text device GSTR-23-4, GSTR-23-24, GSTR-23-25, GSTR-23-29, GSTR-23-30, GSTR-23-34, GSTR-23-35, GSTR-23-40
 input/output | See I/O
 input/output devices, definition of P16-42. See also device(s)
 input/output unit (IOU) CTR-15, CTR-243-244, CTR-256, CTR-365, ETR-5, ETR-6, ETR-166-167, ETR-186-187
 input/output, buffers P16-14, P16-21-22, P16-24-25, P16-34, P16-137. See also buffers; file(s)
 input/output
 character P16-6
 memory P16-33, P16-64. See also memory
 similarity among operating systems P16-285
 space in RAM P16-33
 standard P16-64, P16-209
 subroutines P16-xix, P16-70
 inputs See also I/O devices
 inputs, analog CTR-200, ETR-38, ETR-42-43
 inputs, data CTR-23
 inputs, flag CTR-23
 inputs, game CTR-198-201
 inputs, hand control ETR-38, CTR-287-290, CTR-363-364
 inputs, keyboard CTR-78-82
 inputs, mouse CTR-186-198, CTR-282-286, CTR-363
 inputs, secondary ETR-38-43
 inputs, switch CTR-200, ETR-41-42, ETR-43
 InQStatus GSF-96, GSF-103
 inRadioButton GSTR-6-89
 INSDS1.2 GSF-229
 INSDS2 GSF-229
 inserting text GST-67
 insertion point GSTR-6-78, GSTR-10-8, GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-11
 InsertMenu GSTR-13-8, GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-57, PI-47
 InsertMItem GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-58, PI-154, PI-155
 InsetRect GSTR-16-162
 InsetRgn GSTR-16-163
 InstallCDA GSTR-5-18
 InstallFont GSTR-8-14, GSTR-8-16, GSTR-8-43-44, GSTR-10-30, IIGS #15, PI-105, PI-123
 InstallNDA GSTR-5-19
 inStatText GSTR-6-89
 INSTDSP GSF-230
 instruction mnemonics, mini- assembler GST-50
 instructions GSH-197
 instrument PI-177
 INT IN pin ETR-147
 INT OUT pin ETR-147
 int variables GST-102
 Int2Dec GSTR-9-29
 Int2Hex GSTR-9-27, GSTR-9-30, PI-307, PI-309
 integer GSTR-xxx, GSTR-9-1
 integer arithmetic GST-68
 Integer BASIC CTR-308, CTR-330, CTR-348, CTR-356, CTR-388, ETR-12, ETR-235, GSF-43, GSF-74
 and bank-switched memory ETR-82
 and reset ETR-83
 and uppercase ETR-49
 use of page 3 ETR-78
 use of page zero ETR-77, ETR-79-81
 Integer Math string GSTR-9-1
 Integer Math string routines GSTR-1-8, GSTR-9-4
 Integer Math strings PI-179
 Integer Math Tool Set GST-69, GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-7-8, GSTR-9-1-42, PI-22, PI-179
 constants GSTR-9-42
 error codes GSTR-9-42
 shutdown routine GSTR-9-6
 startup routine GSTR-9-5
 status routine GSTR-9-7
 using GSTR-9-4
 version number routine GSTR-9-6
 integer type (Integer Math) PI-179
 integer value GSTR-9-1
 integrated circuits CTR-13, CTR-241-248
 Integrated Woz Machine GSH-145-150, CTR-15, CTR-247-248, CTR-273, CTR-365, GST-5, GST-6, GST-12, GST-39, GSF-5, GSF-110-111
 states GSH-266
 intelligent devices GSF-5
 INTEN IIGS #49
 interactive programming PI-13, PI-14
 interface cards IIGS #28
 interface file GSTR-2-5, GSTR-2-7
 Interface Library GST-102, GSTR-2-6
 interface, human P16-90-91
 interfaces Iie #7
 interleave UniDisk 3.5 #4
 internal address bus GST-13
 internal converter CTR-234-235
 specifications CTR-234
 international markets PI-277
 interpreter ROM ETR-5
 interpreter. See BASIC interpreter
 interrupt GSF-15, GSF-16, GSF-95, GSF-96-97, GSF-171
 interrupt control calls. See system calls or specific call
 interrupt control routines PI-181
 interrupt dispatcher P16-95
 interrupt enable states GSTR-14-23
 interrupt environment Mouse #1
 interrupt environment PI-269
 interrupt handler GSF-16, GST-54, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-19-1, GSTR-19-3, GSTR-21-27, IIGS #18
 built-in ETR-147, ETR-151, GSF-172-174
 firmware GSF-6, GSF-169-184
 one-second GSTR-14-27-28
 quarter-second GSTR-14-28-29
 user's ETR-154-155
 interrupt handlers P16-xv, P16-5-6, P16-9, P16-15, P16-47-49, P16-74, P16-83, P16-94-96, P16-167, P16-175, P16-177, PI-182, PI-183, PI-256, PI-267-272
 conventions P16-94
 converting ProDOS 8 to ProDOS 16 P16-88
 deallocating P16-167
 installing P16-95

introduction to P16-94-96
 modifying P16-88
 number supported (user-installed) P16-48
 Scheduler and P16-71
 system calls during P16-96
 interrupt mode GSTR-16-34
 interrupt mode (Note Sequencer) PI-178
 Interrupt Request CTR-281
 Interrupt Request (IRQ) line GSF-171, P16-49
 interrupt routines. See interrupt handlers
 interrupt source GSTR-14-5
 reference numbers GSTR-14-26
 interrupt vector ETR-151, GST-54, GST-65
 interrupt vector table P16-95, P16-175, P16-177
 interrupt(s)
 allocating and deallocating P16-95
 disabling P16-81, P16-100
 handling. See interrupt handlers
 number of interrupting devices handled P16-9
 riority rankings P16-48
 support of, similiarity among operating systems P16-288
 system calls during P16-96
 table. See interrupt vector table
 unclaimed P16-49, P16-83, P16-95
 using P16-83. See also programming
 interrupt
 priorities GSF-177-180
 processing GSF-181-182
 vectors GSF-177
 interrupts | CTR-74, CTR-331-347, CTR-357, ETR-147-156, GSH-54-57, GSH-121, GSH-183-184, GST-54-55, Iie #8, IIGS #18, Mouse #4, #5, ProDOS #12, PI-176, 177, PI-178, PI-267
 and card in auxiliary slot ETR-50
 and shadowing GST-80, GST-85
 and stack pointer GST-84
 by AppleTalk GST-38
 by VBL GST-4
 bypassing CTR-345-347
 compared to events PI-67
 daisy chain ETR-193, ETR-204
 daisy chains GSH-171, GSH-183-184
 definition ETR-147
 disabling PI-293
 external CTR-342-343
 EXTINT CTR-276
 handling CTR-334-345
 keyboard CTR-341-342
 mouse CTR-50, CTR-187-188, CTR-190-191, CTR-339-340, CTR-345-346, CTR-354
 original Apple Iie differences ETR-148
 oscillator GSH-104, GSH-105
 priority ETR-147
 scan-line GSH-54, GSH-84, GSH-86
 sequence ETR-152
 serial CTR-343-345
 Smartport CTR-130, CTR-138
 sources CTR-338-339
 VBLInt CTR-187-188, CTR-190, CTR-243
 vectors CTR-333-334
 XInt CTR-190
 YInt CTR-190
 INTERSEG records P16-187, P16-189, P16-195-196, P16-297
 inThumb GSTR-6-89
 INTMGRV GSF-264
 intrptMgr GSTR-14-67
 IntSource GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-25-29
 IntToString PI-105, PI-122, PI-165
 inUpArrow GSTR-6-89
 inUserItem GSTR-6-89
 invalGenNumErr GSTR-21-13, GSTR-21-15, GSTR-21-37, GSTR-B-5
 invalidCtlVal GSTR-15-49
 InvalRect GSTR-10-36, GSTR-10-39, GSTR-25-80
 InvalRgn GSTR-25-81, IIGS #10, PI-117, PI-118
 inverse characters CTR-69, CTR-70, CTR-88-89, Mouse #6
 INVERSE command CTR-90, CTR-214, CTR-228, ETR-270-271, GSF-39, GSF-63
 inverse display CTR-214
 inverse display format ETR-19-20, ETR-57-58, ETR-114
 inverse flag CTR-69, CTR-70
 inverse text GSF-78
 inverse video GSF-39, GSF-71
 InvertArc GSTR-16-164
 inverting GSTR-16-20
 inverting (QuickDraw II) PI-87, PI-91
 InvertOval GSTR-16-165
 InvertPoly GSTR-16-166
 InvertRect GSTR-16-167
 InvertRgn GSTR-16-168, IIGS #34
 InvertRRect GSTR-16-169
 invisible controls PI-128
 invisible dialog items PI-138
 IO.ASM PI-371-372
 IOERROR GSF-156
 IOError \$27 error CTR-150
 IOLC bit GST-85
 ioLoc IIGS #2
 IOREST subroutine ETR-223
 IORESULT Iic #5
 IORTS GSF-254
 IOSAVE subroutine ETR-223
 IOU Iie #2
 IOU (Input/Output Unit) ETR-5, ETR-6, ETR-166-167, ETR-186-187
 IOUDIS soft switch ETR-30
 IOUDis switch CTR-45, CTR-103, CTR-189, CTR-355
 IRQ CTR-334, GSF-180
 IRQ vector ETR-147-148
 IRQ. See Interrupt Request Line
 IRQ.1SEC GSF-269
 IRQ.APTALK GSF-266
 IRQ.DSKACC GSF-268
 IRQ.EXT GSF-269
 IRQ.FLUSH GSF-269
 IRQ.KBD GSF-268
 IRQ.MICRO GSF-269
 IRQ.MOUSE GSF-267
 IRQ.OTHER GSF-269
 IRQ.QTR GSF-268
 IRQ.RESPONSE GSF-268
 IRQ.SCAN GSF-267
 IRQ.SERIAL GSF-266
 IRQ.SOUND GSF-267
 IRQ.SRQ GSF-268
 IRQ.VBL GSF-267
 irqActive GSTR-14-66
 irqApIITlkHi GSTR-14-66
 irqDataReg GSTR-14-66
 irqIntFlag GSTR-14-66
 IRQLOC GSF-259
 irqSerial1 GSTR-14-66
 irqSerial2 GSTR-14-66
 irqSndData GSTR-14-66
 IRQVECT GSF-177
 irqVolume GSTR-14-66
 IRQ¢ signal ETR-148
 IsDialogEvent GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-38, GSTR-6-63-64
 ISO keyboard CTR-371
 Italian keyboard CTR-378-379
 italic convention GSTR-xxGSTR-xi
 italic type style GSTR-16-258, GSTR-17-1, GSTR-17-3
 italicMask GSTR-16-276
 item character GSTR-13-13
 item character (menu and item lines) PI-150
 item descriptor GSTR-6-12-16
 item ID GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-55, GSTR-6-61, GSTR-13-14

dialogs PI-137, PI-139
 menus PI-54, PI-151-152, PI-155
 item line GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-14,
 GSTR-13-75
 item list GSTR-13-17
 item number GSTR-13-22
 item template GSTR-6-8-9, GSTR-6-
 19, GSTR-6-58
 item type GSTR-6-10-11, GSTR-6-53
 item value GSTR-6-12-16, GSTR-6-54
 itemColor GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-18,
 GSTR-6-90
 itemDescr GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
 itemDisable GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-53,
 GSTR-6-82, PI-138
 itemFlag GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-18,
 GSTR-6-90
 itemID GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
 ItemID2FamNum GSTR-8-36, GSTR-
 8-45
 itemNotFound GSTR-6-40, GSTR-6-
 46, GSTR-6-50, GSTR-6-53,
 GSTR-6-54, GSTR-6-56, GSTR-6-
 62, GSTR-6-76, GSTR-6-81,
 GSTR-6-82, GSTR-6-83, GSTR-6-
 84, GSTR-6-85, GSTR-6-90,
 GSTR-B-5
 itemRect GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
 items, dialog PI-137-140
 items, menus PI-149
 itemType GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
 itemValue GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
 iTotBands GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 iTotCopies GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 iTotPages GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 iVRes GSTR-15-11, GSTR-15-47
 IWM GST-5, GST-6, GST-12, GST-39,
 Miscellaneous #6, UniDisk
 3.5 #5, GSF-5, GSF-110-111

J

jacks
 headphone CTR-8, CTR-256
 output CTR-8, CTR-256
 Janus GST-2
 jcButton GSTR-7-51
 jcEvent GSTR-7-51
 jcGetMouse GSTR-7-51
 jcTickCount GSTR-7-51
 JMP instruction GSF-47, GSF-50,
 GSF-65, GSF-66, GSF-145
 job dialog box GSTR-15-1, GSTR-15-
 12, GSTR-15-20, PI-169
 ImageWriter GSTR-15-8-9
 job subrecord GSTR-15-9, GSTR-15-
 14-15, GSTR-15-37
 journal codes GSTR-7-20

journaling mechanism GSTR-7-19-20
 joystick GSF-10, GSH-6, GSH-155,
 CTR-198, CTR-199, GST-41,
 GST-43, P16-42, PI-8
 JSL PI-294, See jump to subroutine
 long
 JSR. See jump to subroutine
 jump table GSTR-21-6, GSTR-21-22-
 23, PI-196, PI-198
 jump table address GSTR-21-22-23
 Jump Table Load call (System Loader)
 P16-195-196, P16-213
 description of P16-247-248
 Jump Table. See System Loader data
 tables
 jump to subroutine (JSR) GSF-12,
 GSF-14, GSF-47, GSF-49, GSF-
 49, GSF-50, GSF-114, GST-33,
 GST-97
 jump to subroutine long (JSL) GSF-12,
 GSF-14, GSF-50, GSF-98, GSF-
 152
 Jump-Table-Loaded flag P16-201,
 P16-235
 justification GSTR-10-4, GSTR-10-6,
 GSTR-10-7, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-
 10-36, GSTR-10-40, GSTR-10-42

K

K command CTR-156, CTR-170
 K register GSF-35
 kbdInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
 KBDWAIT GSF-238
 KBD ϵ signal ETR-187
 kernel P16-5
 kerning GSTR-16-27, GSTR-16-29,
 GSTR-16-45-46, GSTR-16-58
 kernMax GSTR-16-47, GSTR-16-50
 key block. See file blocks
 key code GSTR-3-22, IIC #3
 key combinations. See Control-Reset
 Key GLU (Keyboard General Logic
 Unit) GST-12
 key lockout GSH-119
 key rollover GSH-119
 key-down event GSTR-6-39, GSTR-6-
 66, GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-13, PI-15,
 PI-16, PI-69, PI-71-72, PI-73
 keyboard CTR-3-7, CTR-254-
 255, CTR-357-359, ETR-3, ETR-
 10-16, GSF-10, GSF-40, GSF-43,
 GSF-71, GSF-72, GSH-3, GSH-
 118-120, GSH-236-240, GST-6,
 GSTR-3-22, P16-42-43, PI-2, PI-
 8, PI-10
 KEYBOARD command ETR-115
 Keyboard command GSF-40

Keyboard Data register GSH-123
 keyboard encoder ETR-5, ETR-12
 keyboard equivalent GSTR-7-13,
 GSTR-13-7, GSTR-13-61-62, PI-
 148, PI-153
 Keyboard General Logic Unit (Key
 GLU) GST-12
 keyboard input switch (KSW) CTR-
 57, CTR-71, CTR-101
 keyboard interrupt vector GSTR-7-15
 keyboard interrupts GSTR-14-27
 keyboard microcontroller GSTR-3-
 17, GSTR-3-18
 Keyboard Microprocessor (50740A)
 GST-12
 keyboard ROM ETR-5
 keyboard strobe ETR-13, GSH-120
 keyboard
 ADB Tool Set GST-70
 automatic repeat function ETR-10
 Canadian CTR-375
 characteristics CTR-79
 circuit diagram CTR-254
 circuits ETR-187-188
 DeskTop Bus support GST-42
 differences in Apple II family ETR-
 227
 Dvorak CTR-6-7, CTR-358, CTR-
 370
 encoder CTR-78
 English CTR-372
 entering ASCII characters GST-49
 Event Manager GST-65
 features CTR-3
 flag CTR-78
 French CTR-373-374
 German CTR-376-377
 input buffer CTR-36, CTR-38
 input buffering GSF-75
 input switch (KSW) GST-52, GST-53
 inputs CTR-78-82
 interrupts CTR-340-342, GSF-180,
 GST-55
 ISO CTR-371
 Italian CTR-378-379
 language codes GSF-190
 layouts and codes CTR-3, CTR-6-
 7, CTR-366-381
 memory locations ETR-12
 Monitor I/O routines GST-51
 reading GST-53
 rollover ETR-10
 Sholes CTR-6, CTR-358, CTR-367-
 368
 signals CTR-255
 specifications CTR-3, GST-3
 strobe CTR-78, CTR-339, CTR-353
 switch CTR-3, CTR-6-7

Western Spanish CTR-380-381
 keyboards Iic #3, Iic #4
 keyCode GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 keyDownEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-25-120,
 PI-69
 keyDownMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 KEYIN GSF-70, GSF-71-72, GSF-79,
 GSF-245, GST-51, GST-53,
 ProDOS #4, CTR-56-57, CTR-
 58-59, CTR-78, ETR-58, ETR-59-
 60, ETR-223
 address in I/O link ETR-51
 keypad ETR-188, GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-
 51
 keys and ASCII codes ETR-14-16
 cursor movement CTR-4, CTR-62
 modifier CTR-5, CTR-81
 special function CTR-4
 KillControls GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-68,
 GSTR-11-11, GSTR-11-16
 KillPicture GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-13
 KillPoly GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-170
 kilobit (K) GST-xiv
 kilobyte (K) GST-xiv
 KIND PI-205
 KIND segment header field P16-186,
 P16-193, P16-224, P16-296. See
 also headers; segment(s)
 crunching Pascal #10
 KSW (keyboard input switch) GST-52,
 GST-53, CTR-57, CTR-71, CTR-
 101
 KSW link ETR-140
 KSWH CTR-57
 KSWL CTR-57
 kybdBuffer GSTR-14-65
 kybdDisable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-
 67
 kybdEnable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 kybdIntHnd GSTR-14-68
 kybdLang GSTR-14-65
 kybdMicHnd GSTR-14-68
 kybdRepDel GSTR-14-65
 kybdRepSpd GSTR-14-65

L

L command CTR-156, CTR-170
 landscape mode GSTR-15-6
 lang1 GSTR-14-65
 lang2 GSTR-14-65
 lang3 GSTR-14-65
 lang4 GSTR-14-65
 lang5 GSTR-14-65
 lang6 GSTR-14-65
 lang7 GSTR-14-65
 lang8 GSTR-14-65
 langCount GSTR-14-65

language card ETR-86, GSF-16, GSH-
 17, GSH-18, GSH-31-35, GSH-
 44, GSH-184, GST-17, GST-28,
 GST-82, GSTR-12-3
 area GSF-310
 bank GSF-35, GSF-56, GSF-63
 bank select switches GSH-32, GSH-
 257
 differences in Apple II family ETR-
 229
 mapping GST-77, GST-85
 memory GST-17, GST-28, GST-61,
 GST-90, GST-113
 language card area in memory P16-
 34, P16-64
 language considerations (APW) PI-
 225
 language numbers IIGS #20
 language options GSF-305
 language specification GSTR-xGSTR-
 xvii
 languages CTR-329-330
 large-scale ICs GST-12
 LaserWriter GST-38, IIGS #41, PI-167
 last opened location CTR-205
 last-opened location GSF-25, GSF-26
 lastBlock GSTR-21-37
 launching under ProDOS 16 PI-200-
 202
 launching. See application(s)
 layout1 GSTR-14-65
 layout2 GSTR-14-65
 layout3 GSTR-14-65
 layout4 GSTR-14-66
 layout5 GSTR-14-66
 layout6 GSTR-14-66
 layout7 GSTR-14-66
 layout8 GSTR-14-66
 layout9 GSTR-14-66
 layout10 GSTR-14-66
 layout11 GSTR-14-66
 layout12 GSTR-14-66
 layout13 GSTR-14-66
 layout14 GSTR-14-66
 layout15 GSTR-14-66
 layout16 GSTR-14-66
 layoutCount GSTR-14-65
 LCONST records P16-187, P16-297
 leActFlg GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 LEActivate GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-16
 leading GSTR-16-48, GSTR-16-62,
 GSTR-16-276, PI-93
 leBaseHite GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-7,
 GSTR-10-47
 LEBootInit GSTR-10-12
 leCarAct GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 leCaretHook GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-9,
 GSTR-10-47

leCarOn GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 leCarTime GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 LEClick GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-17
 LECopy GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-18
 LECut GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-19
 LED ETR-2
 LEDeactivate GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-
 20
 LEDelete GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-21
 leDestRect GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-6-7,
 GSTR-10-47
 LEDispose GSTR-10-22, GSTR-10-30
 leDupStrtUpErr GSTR-10-13, GSTR-
 10-48, GSTR-B-5
 LEFromScrap GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-
 11, GSTR-10-23, GSTR-20-10,
 GSTR-C-4
 Left Arrow CTR-4, CTR-63, ETR-63,
 GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
 leftFlag GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-72,
 GSTR-4-85
 leftward kern GSTR-16-45-46, GSTR-
 16-50
 LEGetScrapLen GSTR-10-10, GSTR-
 10-23
 LEGetTextHand GSTR-10-10, GSTR-
 10-24
 LEGetTextLen GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-
 25
 leHiliteHook GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-9,
 GSTR-10-47
 LEIdle GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-26
 LEInsert GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-27
 leJust GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 leJustCenter GSTR-10-47
 leJustFill GSTR-10-47
 leJustLeft GSTR-10-47
 leJustRight GSTR-10-47
 LEKey GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-28-29
 leLength GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 leLineHandle GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-
 47
 leLineHite GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 leMaxLength GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 LENew GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-22,
 GSTR-10-30-31, GSTR-10-36
 leNotActiveErr GSTR-10-14, GSTR-
 10-48, GSTR-B-5
 LEPaste GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-32
 lePort GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-47
 LEReset GSTR-10-15
 leResetError GSTR-10-15, GSTR-10-
 48, GSTR-B-5
 leScrapErr GSTR-10-23, GSTR-10-48,
 GSTR-B-5
 LEReset GSTR-10-15
 leResetError GSTR-10-15, GSTR-10-
 48, GSTR-B-5
 leScrapErr GSTR-10-23, GSTR-10-48,
 GSTR-B-5
 LEReset GSTR-10-15
 leSelEnd GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-7,
 GSTR-10-47

leSelStart GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-7, GSTR-10-47
LESetCaret GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-34
LESetHilite GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-35
LESetJust GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-36
LESetScrapLen GSTR-10-37
LESetSelect GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-38
LESetText GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-39
LEShutDown GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-14, GSTR-10-22, PI-58
less-than character (<) GSF-31, GSF-34
LEStartUp GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-13, PI-45
LEStatus GSTR-10-15
LETextBox GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-40-41, PI-142
LETextBox2 GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-40, GSTR-10-42-44, GSTR-C-4, PI-142
LEToScrap GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-45, GSTR-20-16, GSTR-C-4
LEUpdate GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-46
LEVersion GSTR-10-14
leViewRect GSTR-10-5, GSTR-10-6-7, GSTR-10-47
LF CTR-See line feed, GSF-242, ETR-53, ETR-54
libraries
 run-time P16-193, P16-199-200, P16-205-206
 subroutine P16-70, P16-80
library dictionary segment PI-238
library files GST-101, PI-238-239
library prefixes. See pathname prefixes
licensing Apple software PI-279
light pen GSTR-7-21
lightBlue320 GSTR-16-274
lightGray320 GSTR-16-274
lilac320 GSTR-16-275
limit rectangle GSTR-4-50, GSTR-4-53
line GSTR-16-22
Line GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-171
line (QuickDraw II) PI-87,88-89
line feed CTR-114,CTR-164,CTR-179, GSF-83
 automatic GSF-90
 masking GSF-91
 masking I/O command GST-36 with SSC ETR-281
line length GSF-89
line width, I/O command GST-35
linear mapping option GST-87
LineEdit GST-59, GST-67
LineEdit scrap GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-13, GSTR-10-18, GSTR-10-19, GSTR-10-23, GSTR-10-33, GSTR-10-37, GSTR-10-45, GSTR-20-5, PI-141, PI-161
 handle GSTR-10-33
LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-8, GSTR-6-11, GSTR-10-1-48, PI-21, PI-64, PI-138, PI-139, PI-141-142
 constants GSTR-10-47
 data structures GSTR-10-47
 error codes GSTR-10-48
 shutdown routine GSTR-10-14
 startup routine GSTR-10-13
 status routine GSTR-10-15
 using GSTR-10-9-11
 version number routine GSTR-10-14
LineTo GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-103, GSTR-16-172
LinkEd PI-205, PI-234, GST-104
Linker (APW) GST-8, GST-101, GST-104, P16-89, PI-222, PI-223, PI-235-238
linkers P16-76, P16-89,189
links
 I/O ETR-51
 address storage ETR-78
 changing ETR-140-141
Lisa PI-14
Lisp GST-103
"LIST" GSF-250
list GSTR-11-1
LIST command CTR-220-221,CTR-225, ETR-121-122
List command, Monitor GST-50
list control GSTR-11-2, GSTR-11-8, IIGS #38
list control record GSTR-11-8-10 creating GSTR-11-16
list controls PI-131
List Directory command (Exerciser) P16-291
List instruction GSF-53, GSF-55, GSF-66
List Manager GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-8, GSTR-11-1-26, PI-20, PI-64, PI-131
 constants GSTR-11-25
 data structures GSTR-11-25-26
 shutdown routine GSTR-11-14
 startup routine GSTR-11-13
 status routine GSTR-11-15
 using GSTR-11-11
 version number routine GSTR-11-14
list record GSTR-11-2-8, GSTR-11-16
list, sorting GSTR-11-23
ListBootInit GSTR-11-13
listCtl GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-25
listDraw GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-25
Listen GSF-, GSTR-3-28
Listen command (ADB) GSH-130, GSH-133
listFrameClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listings, catalog. See cataloging disks
listMemHeight GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-25
listMemSize GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-25
listNorBackClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listNorTextClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listPointer GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-25
listRect GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-25
listRefCon GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-7, GSTR-11-25
ListReset GSTR-11-15
lists PI-130-131
listScrollClr GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-7, GSTR-11-25
listSelBackClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listSelect GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-12
listSelTextClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
ListShutDown GSTR-11-11, GSTR-11-14, PI-58
listSize GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-25
ListStanUp PI-46
listStart GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-25
ListStartUp GSTR-11-11, GSTR-11-13
ListStatus GSTR-11-15
listString GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-5
listType GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-12, GSTR-11-25
ListVersion GSTR-11-14
listView GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-25
literal ASCII GSF-30, GSF-64
Lo-Res graphics GST-20-21
 Alternate Display Mode GST-47, GST-68
 animation GST-47
 Monitor firmware routines GST-54

- pages GST-47, GST-68
 - specifications GST-3
 - load files GST-104, P16-183, P16-193, P16-205, P16-229, P16-298. See also file(s), PI-23, PI-26, PI-196, PI-226-229
 - order of load segments in PI-235
 - Load Segment By Name call (System Loader) P16-206, P16-234-236
 - Load Segment By Number call (System Loader) P16-206, P16-224, P16-235
 - description of P16-228-229
 - load segments GST-96, PI-194-195, PI-196, PI-230, PI-231-234
 - assigning in source code PI-234-236
 - assigning with LinkEd file PI-236
 - characteristics of PI-232
 - difference from object segments PI-230
 - dynamic PI-232
 - memory blocks and PI-194
 - number of PI-232
 - order in load file PI-235
 - types of (System Loader) PI-196
 - See segment(s); System Loader
 - load, initial P16-183-194, P16-205, P16-222-224, P16-240. See also System Loader
 - Loader Dumper PI-247, PI-249, PI-250
 - Loader Initialization call (System Loader) P16-215
 - Loader Reset call (System Loader) P16-220
 - Loader Shutdown call (System Loader) P16-217
 - Loader Startup call (System Loader) P16-216
 - Loader Status call (System Loader) P16-221
 - Loader Version call (System Loader) P16-218-219
 - LoadFont GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-46-47
 - loading tool set GSTR-2-3-4
 - loading
 - applications (System Loader) I98, PI-199
 - relocatable segments (System Loader) PI-197
 - segments PI-198
 - tool sets PI-63
 - See application(s); System Loader
 - LoadOne PI-164, PI-211, PI-306
 - LoadOneTool GSTR-22-13, GSTR-22-16, GSTR-22-17, GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-10
 - LoadScrap GSTR-20-15
 - LoadSysFont GSTR-8-48
 - LoadTools GSTR-2-3, GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-11-13, GSTR-24-25, PI-42, PI-44, PI-63
 - local coordinates GSTR-4-8, GSTR-4-50, GSTR-4-69, GSTR-16-9, GSTR-16-16-17, GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-154, GSTR-16-173, GSTR-25-30, GSTR-25-31, GSTR-25-82, PI-77, PI-82-84, PI-103, IO5, PI-117-118
 - local references PI-197
 - local-area network (AppleTalk) GST-38, See AppleTalk
 - LocalToGlobal GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-173
 - location information PI-76, PI-79
 - location table GSTR-16-44, GSTR-16-49-50
 - locInfo record GSTR-16-13, GSTR-16-14, GSTR-16-138, GSTR-16-242, GSTR-16-277, GSTR-17-10
 - locked blocks. See memory blocks
 - locked handles PI-187, PI-189, PI-195, PI-277
 - locked movable block GSTR-12-7
 - lockErr GSTR-12-36, GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40, GSTR-12-41, GSTR-12-43, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-B-2
 - locking block, memory GSTR-12-30, GSTR-12-31
 - LocInfo record PI-76, PI-79, PI-81, PI-103
 - locSize GSTR-16-274
 - Logo GST-103
 - Logo II CTR-330
 - london GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 - long word, size of P16-33, P16-102
 - Long2Dec GSTR-9-31
 - Long2Fix GSTR-9-32
 - Long2Hex GSTR-9-33
 - LongDivide GSTR-9-34
 - longint type (Integer Math) PI-179
 - longint value GSTR-xxx, GSTR-9-1
 - LongMul GSTR-9-35
 - longStatText GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-17, GSTR-6-88
 - longStatText2 GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-17, GSTR-6-88
 - losAngeles GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 - lostDev GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
 - lostFile GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
 - low-level drive access UniDisk 3.5 #5
 - low-level Event Manager GSTR-7-3
 - low-level events GST-65
 - low-level sound routine GSTR-21-1, GSTR-21-6, GSTR-21-35
 - jump table GSTR-21-23
 - low-order word GSTR-9-36
 - low-pass filter with DOC GST-25
 - low-resolution graphics CTR-94-95, CTR-266-267, ETR-17, ETR-18, ETR-21-23
 - colors ETR-23
 - display pages ETR-27
 - generation ETR-181-182
 - map CTR-109, ETR-35
 - with TV set ETR-16
 - lowercase characters CTR-395, P16-18
 - LoWord GSTR-9-36, PI-43, PI-54, PI-121, PI-123
- ## M
- M command CTR-156, CTR-171
 - m flag GSF-37, P16-64
 - M register GSF-36
 - M2Select slot signal GST-28
 - MacGen utility (APW) GSTR-2-5, GST-105, PI-224
 - MACHID byte Miscellaneous #2, ProDOS #11, #15
 - machine configuration. See configuration
 - machine language ETR-120-122
 - Machine Language Interface CTR-125
 - machine registers GSF-12
 - machine state GSF-36
 - changing GSF-61
 - machine-language programs CTR-219-221, GSF-48-50
 - Macintosh GST-5-6, GST-59-62, PI-13, PI-14, PI-17, PI-167, PI-180, P16-90
 - Macintosh disks UniDisk 3.5 #4
 - Macintosh font record GSTR-16-41
 - Macintosh Interface Libraries GST-102
 - Macintosh Workshop C GST-102
 - Macintosh
 - Control Manager PI-288
 - converting programs to the Apple IIGS PI-282-289
 - desk accessories PI-156, PI-289
 - file system PI-287-288
 - Memory Manager PI-288
 - Print Manager PI-289
 - QuickDraw PI-284-287
 - resources PI-285
 - Standard File Package PI-289
 - TaskMater not available PI-286

toolbox compared to Apple IIGS
 PI-284-289
 WindowManager PI-288
 macro assembler GST-8, GST-102
 macro file GSTR-2-5
 macro library GST-63
 macros P16-xv, P16-6, PI-222, PI-65
 calls P16-213
 mailbox registers GSF-186
 main event loop GST-62, PI-14-15,
 PI-16, PI-48, PI-67,
 HodgePodge and PI-48-50
 Main ID. See User ID
 main logic board CTR-12-15, GSH-4
 main memory CTR-42-44, CTR-
 161, CTR-175, CTR-269, GSH-60,
 GST-16-17
 screen holes CTR-313-314
 main program (HodgePodge) PI-36,
 PI-37
 main RAM CTR-22
 main routine PI-233
 MainEvent PI-35, PI-36, PI-50
 mainID GSTR-12-10, GSTR-14-58,
 PI-192
 MakeATemplate PI-140, PI-310
 MAKEFMT.CODE Pascal #12
 MAKEFMT.TEXT Pascal #12
 MakeLib utility (APW) PI-224-238,
 GST-105
 manager. See tool sets or specific tool
 set
 manuals P16-xv-xvii, P16-xix-xx
 manuals available GST-9, GST-106-
 111
 manuals
 Apple IIc Technical Reference
 Manual P16-34
 Apple IIGS Firmware Reference
 P16-xvi-xvii, xix, P16-9, P16-43,
 P16-47, P16-95
 Apple IIGS Hardware Reference
 P16-xvi-xvii, P16-33-34
 Apple IIGS ProDOS 16 Reference
 P16-xvi-xvii
 Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop
 Assembler Reference P16-xvi-
 xviii, xx, P16-90
 Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop
 C Reference P16-xvi-xvii, xx,
 P16-90
 Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop
 Reference P16-xvi-xvii, xx, P16-
 9, P16-70
 Apple IIGS Toolbox Reference P16-
 xvi-xvii, xix, P16-8-9, P16-34,
 P16-36, P16-40, P16-43, P16-49,
 P16-70-72, P16-78, P16-82-83,
 P16-96, P16-300
 Apple Numerics Manual P16-xvi-
 xvii
 Human Interface Guidelines P16-
 xvi-xvii, P16-90-91
 ProDOS 8 Technical Reference
 Manual P16-xvi-xviii, xx, P16-5,
 P16-66
 Programmer's Introduction to the
 Apple IIGS P16-xvi-xvii, xix,
 P16-40, P16-81
 Technical Introduction to the Apple
 IIGS P16-xvii-xvii, xix, P16-4,
 P16-33, P16-100
 ManyWindDialog PI-120
 mapping display addresses ETR-175-
 177
 MapPoly GSTR-16-174
 MapPt GSTR-16-175
 MapRect GSTR-16-176
 MapRgn GSTR-16-177
 maps See memory maps
 48K memory CTR-37
 display address CTR-259-261
 display page CTR-105-111
 memory CTR-20, CTR-308-321
 ROM CTR-397, CTR-398
 Mark P16-21-24, P16-26, P16-30,
 P16-143, P16-201-202, P16-273-
 274. See also file(s), PI-214
 mark table GSF-144-145
 marked menu item GSTR-13-80
 mask drawing GSTR-16-18
 maskHandle GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-
 277
 Masking Enable GSF-83
 maskSize GSTR-16-274
 master color GSTR-16-31, GSTR-16-
 274-275
 master color value GSTR-16-31,
 GSTR-16-35, PI-98
 master index blocks. See file blocks
 master pointer GSTR-12-5, See
 pointer(s)
 master scan line control byte. See
 master SCB
 master SCB GSTR-2-2, GSTR-16-127,
 GSTR-16-160, GSTR-16-231,
 IIGS #34
 master user ID GSTR-12-10-11, GSTR-
 12-14, GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-23,
 GSTR-12-35, PI-192, PI-193
 DisposeAll and PI-194
 mastrIRQNotAssgnErr GSTR-21-37
 math routine GSTR-9-4
 math tool sets PI-22, PI-178-180
 mathematical tools GST-68-69
 MaxBlock GSTR-12-26, GSTR-12-34,
 GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-
 15-30
 maxFbrExtent GSTR-16-59-60
 maxFixed GSTR-9-42
 maxFontHeight GSTR-16-59-60
 maxFrac GSTR-9-42
 maximum content height GSTR-25-87
 maximum content width GSTR-25-87
 maximum segment size PI-23
 maxint GSTR-9-42
 maxitemType GSTR-6-88
 maxLongint GSTR-9-42
 maxUInt GSTR-9-42
 maxULong GSTR-9-42
 maxWidth GSTR-16-59-60, GSTR-16-
 61, GSTR-16-206, GSTR-16-276,
 IIGS #34
 mChooseMsg GSTR-13-22, GSTR-13-
 24, GSTR-13-87
 MCOPY assembler directive GSTR-2-
 5
 mCustom GSTR-13-87
 MD IN/OUT IIe #2
 mDisabled GSTR-13-87
 mDownMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 mDrawMItem GSTR-13-22, GSTR-13-
 27, GSTR-13-87
 mDrawMsg GSTR-13-22, GSTR-13-
 23, GSTR-13-87
 mDrawTitle GSTR-13-22, GSTR-13-
 26, GSTR-13-87
 mechanical specification GSTR-
 xGSTR-xvi
 Mega II GSH-7, GSH-10, GSH-12,
 GSH-52, GSH-167,
 IIGS #32, #39, GSF-308, GST-12,
 GST-74-76
 member record GSTR-11-6
 disabled GSTR-11-6
 drawing GSTR-11-17
 selected GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-12,
 GSTR-11-20, GSTR-11-21, GSTR-
 11-22
 sorting GSTR-11-23
 memBit GSTR-8-9, GSTR-8-10,
 GSTR-8-50
 memDisabled GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-
 25
 memErr GSTR-12-19, GSTR-12-36,
 GSTR-12-41, GSTR-12-42, GSTR-
 12-43, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-B-2
 memFlag GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-20,
 GSTR-11-21, GSTR-11-26
 memOnlyBit GSTR-8-11, GSTR-8-50
 memory GSF-9, GSH-7, GSH-12,
 P16-6, P16-8, P16-32-40. See

also RAM; ROM, PI-2, PI-4, PI-5-6, PI-76
 memory addresses CTR-20
 display CTR-258,CTR-260
 hardware page CTR-316-321
 port I/O CTR-72-73
 port screen hole CTR-74
 text window CTR-68-69
 memory attributes word GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-37
 memory banks P16-33-36, PI-6, \$00 P16-33-34, P16-47, P16-56, P16-61, P16-64, P16-68, P16-75, P16-81, P16-88, P16-100, P16-105, P16-224
 \$01 P16-33-34, P16-64, P16-224
 \$01-\$E1 P16-64
 \$E0 P16-34
 \$E1 P16-34-36, P16-65, P16-105
 shadowing GST-79
 memory block GSTR-12-1, GSTR-12-5
 attributes GSTR-12-12-13, GSTR-12-37
 locking GSTR-12-30, GSTR-12-31
 purging GSTR-12-8-10, GSTR-12-13, GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40, GSTR-12-44, GSTR-12-45
 unlocking GSTR-12-32, GSTR-12-33
 memory blocks P16-26-29, P16-185. See also block devices; Memory Manager, PI-187, PI-197, PI-247
 absolute P16-40
 addresses of P16-38
 applications and P16-39
 attributes PI-187, PI-188
 attributes of P16-37
 disposing P16-38, P16-245
 disposing of PI-194, PI-277
 fixed (unmovable) P16-37, P16-40, P16-78-79, P16-82, P16-185-186
 handles to PI-189, See memory handles
 load segments and PI-194
 load-segment relationships (load time) P16-186
 locked P16-37-38, P16-77-79, P16-184, P16-227
 manipulation of P16-37-38
 movable P16-185, P16-231
 pointers to P16-38-39, P16-82, PI-189
 purgeable P16-37-38, P16-78-79, P16-185-186, P16-277, P16-233, PI-194, PI-233
 size of P16-37
 unlocking PI-194
 unpurgeable P16-185-186, P16-277
 memory bus organization CTR-249
 memory dump GSF-27
 memory expansion CTR-14, GSH-45-49, IIC #5, #6
 memory expansion card CTR-120, CTR-250, CTR-291, Memory Expansion Card #1
 entry points CTR-122
 I/O CTR-123
 startup routine CTR-122
 memory expansion cards GST-18, GST-78
 memory expansion slot GST-3
 memory expansion card GSH-27
 expansion signals GSH-45
 expansion slot GSH-25, GSH-45, GSH-163-166
 extended RAM GSH-47
 extended RAM mapping GSH-48-49
 extended ROM GSH-49
 mouse and CTR-191, CTR-195
 memory fragmentation PI-188
 memory handles GSTR-12-5, P16-38-40, P16-82, P16-102, P16-194, P16-200, P16-214
 definition of P16-214
 dereferencing P16-39, P16-82, P16-104, P16-207
 introduction to P16-38-39
 length of (parameter fields) P16-106
 NIL P16-187, P16-192-193, P16-277
 memory image PI-228
 memory locations
 changing GSF-28-30
 displaying GSF-58
 examining GSF-26-27
 text window GSF-80
 memory management IIGS #17, P16-10, P16-15, P16-32-40, P16-38-39. See also Memory Manager
 how applications obtain memory P16-39
 revising ProDOS 8 applications for ProDOS 16 P16-86
 similarity among operating systems P16-287-288
 memory management unit (MMU) CTR-15, CTR-241-242, CTR-365, ETR-5, ETR-6, ETR-164-165
 Memory Manager GSF-9, GSF-15, GSF-308, GSF-310, GSH-27, GSH-43, GST-60, GST-61, GST-64, GST-79, GST-80, GST-95, GST-96, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-9, GSTR-2-1, GSTR-2-2, GSTR-12-1-47, IIGS #15, #17, PI-20, PI-22, PI-23, PI-42, PI-63, PI-180, PI-186-195, PI-288, P16-xix, P16-8, P16-32, P16-36-37, P16-64, P16-74, P16-79, P16-82, P16-182, P16-187, P16-205, P16-227, P16-231, P16-245, P16-287. See also memory management
 calls P16-207
 constants GSTR-12-47
 description of P16-36-37, P16-70
 error codes GSTR-12-47
 interface with System Loader P16-184-187
 memory blocks and P16-104, P16-185
 shutdown routine GSTR-12-18
 startup routine GSTR-12-17
 status routine GSTR-12-20
 support for bank-alignment P16-300
 version number routine GSTR-12-19
 Memory Mangler PI-247
 memory maps IIC #3, IIGS #32, ProDOS #18
 128K Apple II GST-17
 40-column text ETR-33, ETR-177
 80-column text ETR-34
 Apple II programs GST-79
 Apple IIGS GST-15
 Apple IIGS programs GST-80
 auxiliary memory ETR-87
 bank-switched areas ETR-82
 double-high-resolution graphics ETR-37
 high-resolution graphics ETR-36
 I/O ETR-142
 language-card RAM GST-85
 low-resolution graphics ETR-35
 main memory ETR-75
 RAM ETR-76
 memory organization GST-15-18, GST-61
 memory pages
 \$00 (zero page) CTR-20, CTR-24, CTR-25, CTR-308-311
 \$01 (stack) CTR-20, CTR-24, CTR-25
 \$02 (input buffer) CTR-36
 \$03 (global storage, vectors) CTR-36, CTR-312
 \$04-\$07 (TLP1) CTR-36-38
 \$08 (communication port buffers) CTR-38
 \$08-\$0B (TLP2) CTR-38

\$20-\$3F (HRP1) CTR-38
 \$40-\$5F (HRP2) CTR-39
 \$D0-\$FF CTR-26
 reserved ETR-77-81
 microprocessor See 6502
 microprocessor;
 memory protection ranges, using PI-252
 memory range
 display GSF-27
 filling GSF-34
 terminating GSF-58
 memory refresh GST-77
 Memory Segment Table P16-184,
 P16-187-189, P16-192-193, P16-206,
 P16-227, P16-231, P16-238
 memory shadowing See display shadowing;
 I/O shadowing
 memory space GSTR-12-1
 memory
 48K CTR-36-39
 65816 signals GSH-167
 addressable, total P16-9, P16-32
 addresses P16-34, P16-36-37, P16-82,
 P16-124. See also addresses;
 pointer(s)
 addressing CTR-248-253, ETR-168
 allocatable by Memory Manager PI-191
 allocating private GSTR-12-11
 allocation GSH-14, GSTR-12-35,
 PI-191-194, P16-82. See also programming
 attributes GSTR-12-12, GSTR-12-37
 auxiliary CTR-42-44, CTR-74, CTR-106,
 CTR-160-161, CTR-175, CTR-269, CTR-315,
 ETR-86-93, GSH-36-41, GSH-60
 auxiliary banks GSH-44
 bank switching GSH-32
 bank-switched CTR-24-35, ETR-82-86,
 ETR-87, ETR-229, P16-33-34
 banks GSH-27, See memory banks
 blocks. See memory blocks
 built-in GSH-25-45
 changing GSF-28-31, GSF-64
 changing contents CTR-208-210,
 ETR-105-110
 compaion PI-188, GSTR-12-5-7,
 GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-22, P16-38
 comparing data CTR-211-212,
 GSF-33
 configurations P16-32-36
 conserving space P16-22
 deallocation GSTR-12-23, GSTR-12-25
 display ETR-174-178
 disposal PI-193
 dump CTR-206-208, ETR-102-104
 entry points and fixed locations P16-35-36
 examining CTR-206, ETR-102
 expansion GSTR-12-3, P16-33
 expansion ROM space GSH-28,
 GSH-175-176
 filling ETR-117-118
 for peripheral cards ETR-132-136
 fragmentation GSTR-12-6-8
 handles. See memory handles
 I/O memory space GSH-181-182
 I/O space ETR-142-143
 I/O. See input/output
 language card GSH-37
 language-card areas P16-34, P16-64
 limits GSTR-12-3
 locking GSTR-12-30, GSTR-12-31
 main CTR-42-44, CTR-161, CTR-175,
 CTR-269, CTR-313-314, GSH-60
 main bank GSH-44
 management. See memory management;
 Memory Manager
 map GSH-27-28, P16-32, P16-35,
 CTR-20, CTR-308-321
 memory banks
 \$00 PI-4, PI-6, PI-192, PI-203,
 PI-248, PI-267, PI-270, PI-293-296
 \$01 PI-6, PI-295
 \$E1 PI-6, PI-267, PI-295
 \$EO PI-6, PI-295
 Memory Manager GSH-27, GSH-43
 minimum configuration PI-5
 movable P16-82. See also memory blocks
 moving data CTR-210-211, GSF-31-32
 non-special P16-54
 obtaining (applications) P16-39-40
 organization ETR-74-98
 peripheral-card GSH-174-177
 peripheral-card ROM space GSH-175
 purging GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40,
 GSTR-12-44, GSTR-12-45
 RAM CTR-13, GSH-2, GSH-3, GSH-7,
 GSH-12, GSH-22, GSH-25, GSH-34,
 GSH-121
 RAM expansion PI-5
 range CTR-207
 reallocation GSTR-12-41, GSTR-12-42
 refresh GSH-22
 requesting P16-39-40
 requirements (Apple IIGS Toolbox) PI-5
 requirements of ProDOS 16 P16-xviii
 reserved P16-64
 reserved pages GSH-28
 ROM CTR-13, GSH-3, GSH-7, GSH-12,
 GSH-34, GSH-121
 ROM expansion PI-5
 searching for bytes GSF-34
 shadowing GSH-13, GSH-16-21, GSH-45,
 P16-34, P16-64
 sharing ETR-91
 slot GST-29-32
 special P16-34, P16-37, P16-62,
 P16-78, P16-224, PI-187
 text window locations ETR-56-57
 units, size of P16-33
 unlocking GSTR-12-32, GSTR-12-33
 used by SSC ETR-287
 video P16-33-34
 memory-expandable Iic Iic #7
 memPtr GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
 memSelect GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-20,
 GSTR-11-21
 memSelected GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-25
 menu GSTR-13-1
 menu bar GSTR-13-4-5. See also system
 menu bar, IIGS #3, PI-115, PI-146,
 PI-147, PI-152
 menu bar color GSTR-13-18, GSTR-13-42-43,
 GSTR-13-69-70
 menu bar record GSTR-13-17-18
 menu bar window GSTR-13-5
 menu color GSTR-13-17
 menu definition procedure GSTR-13-21-28
 menu global mask GSTR-13-59-60
 menu height GSTR-13-33
 menu help GSTR-13-60
 menu ID GSTR-13-14, GSTR-13-16, PI-54,
 PI-55, PI-151-152, l55
 menu interface PI-13
 menu item GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-50
 menu item ID GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-45,
 GSTR-13-14, GSTR-13-79
 menu item line GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-75
 menu item number GSTR-13-22
 menu item
 blinking GSTR-13-76
 checking GSTR-13-34
 dimming GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-38,
 GSTR-13-60
 disabling GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-38
 marking GSTR-13-51, GSTR-13-80

text style GSTR-13-52, GSTR-13-83
 underlining GSTR-13-15-16, GSTR-13-77
 menu items PI-146
 disabled PI-148
 keyboard equivalent PI-149, PI-153
 menu line GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-14, PI-149, PI-265
 menu list GSTR-13-13-15, GSTR-13-17
 Menu Manager GST-59, GST-66, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-9-10, GSTR-5-20, GSTR-13-1-88, IIGS #3, #4, #5, PI-21, PI-47, PI-64, PI-71, PI-146-155, PI-264
 constants GSTR-13-87
 data structures GSTR-13-88
 port GSTR-13-46
 shutdown routine GSTR-13-31
 startup routine GSTR-13-30
 status routine GSTR-13-32
 using GSTR-13-7-13
 version number routine GSTR-13-31
 menu messages GSTR-13-22
 menu position GSTR-13-17
 menu record GSTR-13-19-20, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-48, GSTR-13-88
 menu selenions, handling PI-153
 menu title GSTR-13-47, GSTR-13-53, GSTR-13-54, GSTR-13-74, PI-146, PI-153, GST-61, IIGS #5
 menu width GSTR-13-33
 menu, pull-down GSTR-1-3, GSTR-13-1
 menu-event handling (HodgePodBe) PI-54-56
 MENU.ASM PI-324-329
 MENU.CC PI-382-384
 MENU.PAS PI-419-421
 MenuBootInit GSTR-13-29
 menuFlag GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-20, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-23, GSTR-13-88
 MenuGlobal GSTR-13-59-60
 menuHeight GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-25, GSTR-13-88
 menuID GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-88
 MenuKey GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-11, GSTR-13-61-62, GSTR-25-120
 MenuLine GSTR-5-8
 menuList GSTR-13-17, GSTR-13-18
 MenuNewRes GSTR-13-63, IIGS #4
 menuProc GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-20, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-88
 MenuRefresh GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-64-65
 MenuReset GSTR-13-32
 menus PI-10, PI-14, PI-21, PI-116, PI-146. See also specific menu/menu comand
 accepting user input PI-152-153
 appearance PI-148-149
 constructing PI-149-152
 custom PI-149
 disabling PI-116
 dividing lines PI-148
 HodgePodge and PI-31-33, PI-47
 modification of PI-154-155
 organization of PI-149
 MenuSelect GSTR-13-12, GSTR-13-66, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-120, GSTR-25-121, PI-115
 MenuShutDown GSTR-13-7, GSTR-13-31, PI-58
 MenuStartUp GSTR-13-7, GSTR-13-8, GSTR-13-30, GSTR-13-68, PI-45
 MenuStatus GSTR-13-32
 MenuVersion GSTR-13-31
 menuWidth GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-25, GSTR-13-88
 message GSTR-7-6, GSTR-7-8, GSTR-7-43, GSTR-7-51
 message (event-record field) PI-70
 message dialog box PI-135
 message type GSTR-24-14
 MessageCenter GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-14-15
 action codes GSTR-24-15
 messages. See error messages
 messNotFoundErr GSTR-24-14, GSTR-24-26, GSTR-B-2
 MFS UniDisk 3.5 #4
 mGetMItemID GSTR-13-22, GSTR-13-87
 microcontroller GSH-116, GSH-121
 microprocessor CTR-13, CTR-18-19, GSH-7, GSH-178
 See also 65C02 microprocessor
 See specific type
 See P16-6502; P16-65816
 MIDI (Musical Instrument Digital Interface) PI-178
 MIDI Tool Set IIGS #23
 minFixed GSTR-9-42
 minFrac GSTR-9-42
 Mini-Assembler ETR-123-126, GSF-51-55, GSF-74, GST-50
 address formats CTR-226
 errors ETR-125
 instruction formats CTR-226, ETR-126
 instruction formats GSF-54-55
 opcodes GSF-293-298
 starting ETR-123, CTR-223-224
 using CTR-224-226
 mini-palettes PI-7, PI-99
 minimum blink interval GSTR-10-26
 minimum version GSTR-2-4
 minimum version number GSTR-24-10, GSTR-24-11
 minInt GSTR-9-42
 minipalette GSTR-16-33, GSTR-16-35
 minItemType GSTR-6-88
 minLongint GSTR-9-42
 MinRect IIGS #34
 mInvis GSTR-13-87
 mirrored devices ProDOS #20
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GST-65, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-10-11, GSTR-2-1, GSTR-14-1-70, PI-20, PI-22, PI-42, PI-181-182, PI-248
 constants GSTR-14-64-68
 data structures GSTR-14-69
 error codes GSTR-14-70
 shutdown routine GSTR-14-7
 startup routine GSTR-14-6
 status routine GSTR-14-8
 using GSTR-14-4-5
 version number routine GSTR-14-7
 See System Failure Manager; User ID Manager
 missing character GSTR-16-48-49
 missing charactersJsymbol PI-95
 missing symbol GSTR-16-48-50
 missingDriver GSTR-15-26, GSTR-15-49, GSTR-B-5
 mItemDisable GSTR-13-78
 mItemEnable GSTR-13-78
 MIXED soft switch ETR-29
 MIXED switch CTR-102, CTR-243, CTR-354
 mixed-mode displays CTR-98-99
 MLI CTR-125
 MMBootInit GSTR-12-16
 MMReset GSTR-12-19
 MMShutDown GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-18, GSTR-12-23
 MMStartUp GSTR-2-1, GSTR-12-10, GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-17, GSTR-12-18, IIGS #17, PI-43
 MMStatus GSTR-12-20
 MMU ETR-5, ETR-6, ETR-164-165, IIE #2
 MMVersion GSTR-12-19
 modal dialog box GSTR-6-5, PI-133, PI-139
 ModalDialog GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-65-66, IIGS #38, PI-141, PI-144
 ModalDialog2 GSTR-6-67
 mode GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-277
 Mode byte Mouse #3
 Mode register GSH-147-148

mode settings, Monitor command
GST-49
modeBIC GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
modeCopy GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-
20, GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
modeForeBIC GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-
260, GSTR-16-275
modeForeCopy GSTR-16-30, GSTR-
16-260, GSTR-16-275
modeForeOR GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-
260, GSTR-16-275
modeForeXOR GSTR-16-30, GSTR-
16-260, GSTR-16-275
modeless dialog box GSTR-6-5,
GSTR-6-63, PI-133, PI-136
modem CTR-177-178, GSH-150,
GSH-173
modem communications GSF-84
modem firmware IIGS #13
modem port GSF-301, GST-34
modem port, commands CTR-170-
172
modems GST-46
modeOR GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
modes (program) PI-12, PI-133
emulation and native P16-4, P16-9,
P16-47, P16-100
modeXOR GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
modification date and time P16-84-
86, P16-264, P16-276. See also
creation date and time;
programming
modification field P16-276
modifier key GSTR-7-3, PI-71
Modifier Key register GSH-123-124
modifier keys CTR-5, CTR-81, GSH-
120
modifiers GSTR-7-6, GSTR-7-8,
GSTR-7-43, GSTR-7-51
modifiers (event-record field) PI-70,
PI-71
Modify Memory command
(Exerciser) P16-291
MON GSF-255
monaco GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
Monitor CTR-5, CTR-23, CTR-
36, CTR-57, CTR-59, CTR-
63, CTR-161, CTR-176, CTR-
258, CTR-312, CTR-356
Monitor command GSF-49
advanced CTR-216-218
debugging CTR-221
machine-language program CTR-
219-221
memory CTR-205-212
register CTR-212-213
repeating CTR-217-218
summary CTR-227-229
syntax CTR-205
Monitor firmware GSF-4, GSH-3,
GSH-28, GSH-43, GSH-184,
GST-4, GST-5, GST-47-54
Monitor program P16-xix, P16-281,
P16-293, PI-267
debugging with PI-247-248
Monitor ROM ETR-168-169
listings ETR-307-347
Monitor
entry points CTR-322, CTR-326-327
firmware routines CTR-112-115
game support CTR-201
input routines CTR-82
interrupts CTR-74
memory location CTR-204
output CTR-270
speaker routines CTR-84
System ETR-100-129
command summary ETR-127-129
command syntax ETR-101
creating commands ETR-119
firmware subroutines ETR-46-71
returning to BASIC ETR-115
ROM listings ETR-307-347
use of page 3 ETR-8
use of page zero ETR-79
vectors CTR-326-327
See system Monitor
mono hi-res mode IIGS #29
monochrome hi-res mode IIGS #29
monochrome monitor GST-19, GSH-
57
Monochrome/Color register GSH-
78-79
MONZ GSF-255
MONZ2 GSF-255
MONZ4 GSF-256
MountBootDisk PI-45, PI-307-308
mouse IIC #6, Mouse #3, PI-8, PI-10
mouse button GSTR-4-46
mouse clamp value GSTR-2-2, GSTR-
7-27
mouse clamping Mouse #7
Mouse Data register GSH-125
mouse firmware GSF-6, GSF-197-213
calls GSF-209
using GSF-202-205
mouse interrupt status GSTR-14-35
mouse interrupts GST-43
mouse location GSTR-16-37
mouse mode GSTR-14-36
mouse port
addresses CTR-325
I/O firmware protocol CTR-195
screen holes CTR-197
mouse programs, BASIC GSF-206-208
mouse routine GSTR-14-5
mouse routines (Miscellaneous Tool
Set) PI-182
mouse support GST-42-43
ADB Tool Set GST-70
desktop user interface GST-3
direct access GST-65
Event Manager GST-65
firmware GST-43
in Macintosh GST-6
interrupts GST-55
mouse
as hand controller CTR-198
assembly-language support CTR-
195-196
BASIC support CTR-195-196
button signals CTR-286
circuits CTR-285
clicks PI-14, PI-15, PI-48
connector CTR-284
connector signals CTR-284
defaults CTR-50
double-clicks PI-71
firmware entry points CTR-23
firmware routines CTR-193-194
I/O firmware support CTR-191-196
inputs CTR-186-198, CTR-282-
286, CTR-363
interrupts CTR-50, CTR-339-
340, CTR-345-346, CTR-354,
GSF-180, GSF-183
operating modes CTR-187-188
Pascal support CTR-195
port characteristics CTR-186
position clamps GSF-201
position data GSF-199-201
screen holes CTR-196-197
slot for PI-9
soft switches CTR-189-191
waveforms CTR-283
mouse-down event GSTR-4-10,
GSTR-5-26, GSTR-6-39, GSTR-6-
64, GSTR-6-66, GSTR-7-3,
GSTR-7-8, GSTR-7-13, GSTR-25-
11, GSTR-25-48-49, GSTR-25-92,
GSTR-25-127, GSTR-25-129-130,
PI-15, PI-16, PI-69, PI-71, PI-
73, PI-129
mouse-up event GSTR-7-3, GSTR-7-
13, PI-69, PI-71
mouseClamps GSTR-14-21, GSTR-14-
66
mouseDownEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-
50, GSTR-25-120, GSTR-25-121,
PI-69
mouseIntHnd GSTR-14-68

mouseOff GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
 mouseOffVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
 MousePaint, serial-port compatibility
 GST-39
 mouseSlot GSTR-14-66
 MouseText CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-
 88,CTR-90,CTR-360, GSH-59,
 GSH-74, GSH-243, Mouse #6
 characters ETR-17, ETR-19, ETR-
 246, CTR-91
 mouseUpEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50,
 PI-69
 MouX1 switch CTR-190
 MouY1 switch CTR-190
 movable (memory-block attribute)
 PI-188
 MOVE GSF-250, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-
 16-178, CTR-210-211,CTR-216-
 217,CTR-227, ETR-107-108,
 ETR-117, GSF-31-32, GSF-45,
 GSF-59, ETR-223
 MoveAux routine CTR-42-43
 MoveControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-
 69, GSTR-11-11
 moveCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-39,
 GSTR-4-86
 moveIntrpt GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
 moveIntrptVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-
 67
 movement constraint values GSTR-4-
 53
 movement interrupt mode CTR-187-
 188
 movement/button interrupt mode
 CTR-188
 MovePortTo GSTR-16-179
 MoveTo GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-180,
 GSTR-25-22, PI-43, PI-94, PI-
 106, PI-143
 MoveWindow GSTR-25-44, GSTR-25-
 82, GSTR-25-138
 MPW IIGS assembler IIGS #33
 MPW IIGS C IIGS #31
 mSelected GSTR-13-87
 MSGPOINTER GSF-275
 msgPtrVctr GSTR-14-68
 mSizeMsg GSTR-13-22, GSTR-13-25,
 GSTR-13-87
 MSLOT ETR-150, ETR-154, GSF-266,
 IIGS #16, Miscellaneous #3
 mstrIRQNotAssgnErr GSTR-B-3
 MTBootInit GSTR-14-6
 MTRReset GSTR-14-8
 MTShutDown GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-
 7, PI-58
 MTStartUp GSTR-2-1, GSTR-14-4,
 GSTR-14-6, PI-43
 MTStatus GSTR-14-8

MTVersion GSTR-14-7
 multichannel sound output IIGS #19
 multiple volumes Pascal #16
 multiple-language programs
 debugging PI-252-253
 multiple-segment programming
 examples PI-24 PI-1-245
 multiplexer GSH-104
 multiplexing CTR-251
 RAM address CTR-252
 multiplication, 32-bit GSF-42
 Multiply GSTR-9-37
 Munger routine (Miscellaneous Tool
 Set) PI-182, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-
 14-45-47
 mUpMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 music GSF-10
 Musical Instrument Digital Interface
 (MIDI) PI-178
 mvEscape GSTR-24-26
 mvReturn GSTR-24-26
 mXor GSTR-13-87

N

N command CTR-228
 NABORT GSF-177, GSF-262
 NAK character ETR-54
 named devices. See device(s)
 names. See device(s); pathname(s);
 filenames; volume(s)
 NaN GSTR-9-40, GSTR-9-41
 National Television Standards
 Committee See composite
 (NTSC) video
 native mode GSF-9, GSF-14, GSF-56,
 GSH-28, GSH-198, GSH-201,
 GST-13-14, GSTR-1-2, GSTR-1-
 IIGS #2, P16-4, P16-9, P16-47,
 P16-100. See also programming,
 PI-4, PI-173, PI-271-272, PI-274,
 PI-291
 accumulator GSF-18
 disassembler support GST-50
 IOLC shadowing GST-85
 memory addressing GST-18
 mini-assembler support GST-50
 operating system overview GST-95
 program environments
 summarized GST-89
 register sizes GST-83
 registers illustrated GST-14
 stack location GST-84, GSF-13,
 GSF-14, GSF-15
 stack pointer GST-84
 switching to GST-49
 tool calls GST-88
 NBREAK GSF-177, GSF-262

NCOP GSF-177, GSF-262
 nD command CTR-156,CTR-170
 NDA header section GSTR-5-19
 NDA. See new desk accessory
 negative decimal CTR-388-389
 negative decimal values ETR-12
 converting ETR-239-240
 negative-decimal numbers GSH-248
 Network Error ProDOS #21
 network volumes
 ProDOS #5, #16, #17, #21
 New American Standard Keyboard
 (Dvorak) GST-42
 new desk accessories GST-68, GST-
 89, GSTR-5-1, PI-156, PI-263,
 PI-289, PI-300. See also classic
 desk accessory; desk accessories
 programming examples PI-265
 supporting PI-157-158, PI-161
 writing PI-264-265
 action codes GSTR-5-7
 total number installed GSTR-5-17
 New-Video register GSH-14, GSH-84-
 85, GST-87-88
 newBarColor GSTR-13-70
 NewControl GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-24,
 GSTR-4-70-73, GSTR-11-11,
 GSTR-25-68
 NewDIItem GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-68-
 69, PI-134, PI-143
 NewHandle GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-
 35-37, GSTR-15-19, IIGS #17, PI-
 41, PI-43, PI-122, PI-192, PI-
 211, P16-79
 newInvertColor GSTR-13-70
 newItemFailed GSTR-6-57, GSTR-6-
 69, GSTR-6-90, GSTR-B-5
 NEWLINE PI-211
 NEWLINE call (\$11) P16-137-140
 NewList GSTR-11-19
 NewMenu GSTR-13-8, GSTR-13-16,
 GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-67, PI-47,
 PI-149
 NewMenuBar GSTR-13-68
 NewModalDialog GSTR-6-7, GSTR-6-
 23, GSTR-6-70-71, PI-142, PI-
 143
 NewModelessDialog GSTR-6-7,
 GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-72-73
 newOut Color GSTR-13-70
 NewRgn GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-74,
 GSTR-16-113, GSTR-16-153,
 GSTR-16-181
 newValue GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-37,
 GSTR-4-86
 NewWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-
 16, GSTR-25-21, GSTR-25-25,

GSTR-25-38, GSTR-25-83-88,
 IIGS #3, #42, PI-109, PI-124
 parameter list GSTR-25-142, PI-
 109, PI-121, PI-123
 newYork GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 next changeable location CTR-
 205,CTR-208-209, GSF-25, GSF-
 26
 NEXTCOL subroutine ETR-223
 NextMember GSTR-11-20
 nextWavePtr GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-
 37
 nextwave_start IIGS #11
 nibble, size of P16-33
 nibbles CTR-94,CTR-384,CTR-386
 NIL PI-190
 NIL handles. See memory handles
 NIRQ GSF-177, GSF-262
 NMI GSF-177, GSF-178, GSF-259
 NMI handler IIGS #1
 nnB command CTR-156,CTR-170
 NNMI GSF-177, GSF-262
 nnn command CTR-156,CTR-170
 nnnN command CTR-157,CTR-
 171,CTR-362
 noConstraint GSTR-4-53, GSTR-4-86
 noDevice GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47,
 GSTR-B-4
 noDevParamErr GSTR-14-32, GSTR-
 14-70, GSTR-B-2
 noDisplay GSTR-22-22, GSTR-22-32
 noDOCFndErr GSTR-21-8, GSTR-21-
 24, GSTR-21-28, GSTR-21-37,
 GSTR-B-3
 NODRIVE GSF-156
 NoDrive \$28 error CTR-151
 noEcho GSTR-23-46
 noFile GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47,
 GSTR-B-4
 noHilite GSTR-4-67, GSTR-4-86
 NOINT GSF-156
 non-reentrant system code GST-70
 NONFATAL GSF-156
 NonFatal \$50-\$7F error CTR-151
 nonreentrant code GSTR-19-1
 nonspecial memory GSTR-12-3
 noPart GSTR-4-86
 noPrintRecord GSTR-15-49, GSTR-B-
 5
 normal characters CTR-69,CTR-
 70,CTR-88-89
 NORMAL command CTR-90,CTR-
 214,CTR-228, ETR-270-271
 Normal command GSF-39, GSF-44,
 GSF-63
 normal display CTR-214
 normal format ETR-19-20, ETR-114
 normal memory GSTR-12-3
 normal video GSF-39
 noRoom GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47,
 GSTR-B-4
 noSAppInitErr GSTR-21-15, GSTR-
 21-37, GSTR-B-3
 noSelect GSTR-22-22, GSTR-22-32
 noSigTaskErr GSTR-14-48, GSTR-14-
 70, GSTR-B-2
 notBaseBit GSTR-8-12, GSTR-8-50
 notBIC GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
 GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
 notClosed GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47,
 GSTR-B-4
 notCopy GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
 GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
 notDiskBit GSTR-8-9, GSTR-8-50
 note alert GSTR-6-6, PI-135
 note icon GSTR-6-74
 Note Sequencer GSTR-1-4, GSTR-21-
 1, IIGS #23, PI-178, PI-22, PI-
 177-178, GSTR-1-4, GSTR-21-1,
 IIGS #19, IIGS #23, PI-22, PI-
 177. See also sound/sound
 hardware
 NoteAlert GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-74
 notEmptyErr GSTR-12-41, GSTR-12-
 42, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-B-2
 NotEmptyRect GSTR-16-182
 notEqualChunkiness GSTR-16-190,
 GSTR-16-197, GSTR-16-278,
 GSTR-B-3
 noteSynth GSTR-21-37
 noteSynthMode GSTR-21-36
 notForeBIC GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-
 260, GSTR-16-275
 notForeCOPY GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-
 260, GSTR-16-275
 notForeOR GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-
 260, GSTR-16-275
 notForeXOR GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-
 260, GSTR-16-275
 notFoundBit GSTR-8-12, GSTR-8-50
 notImplemented GSTR-16-278
 notInitialized GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-
 3
 notModalDialog GSTR-6-65, GSTR-
 6-67, GSTR-6-90, GSTR-B-5
 notOpen GSTR-23-16, GSTR-23-47,
 GSTR-B-4
 notOR GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
 GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
 notSysWindow GSTR-5-14, GSTR-5-
 30, GSTR-B-3
 notXOR GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
 GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275, PI-
 87
 noUnderMItem GSTR-13-78, GSTR-
 13-87
 NOWRITE GSF-156
 NoWrite \$2B error CTR-150
 nP command CTR-157,CTR-171
 NTSC CTR-86,CTR-96,CTR-97,CTR-
 257,CTR-270, ETR-16, ETR-25,
 ETR-173, GSH-13, GSH-58,
 GSH-66, GSH-82
 null event PI-69, PI-73
 null prefix PI-209
 nullEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50, GSTR-
 25-119, PI-69
 numbanks Memory Expansion
 Card #1
 number of copies GSTR-15-8
 numbers
 device. See device(s)
 pathname prefix. See pathname
 prefixes
 numeric keypad GSF-10, GST-41,
 GST-42, PI-8
 numeric operations GST-68
 numeric spacing GSTR-16-226
 numOfItems GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-
 20, GSTR-13-88
 NXTA1 GSF-244
 NXTA4 GSF-244
 NXTCHAR GSF-257
 NXTCOL GSF-227

O

O Control-K CTR-215
 Ø0 (phi 0) ETR-162-163, ETR-167,
 ETR-170-172, ETR-180-181
 Ø1 (phi 1) ETR-162-163, ETR-167,
 ETR-170-172, ETR-180-181
 Ø2 (phi 2) ETR-162
 object files GST-101, PI-26, PI-226-
 229, See file(s)
 object module format GSTR-xGSTR-
 xvii, P16-70, P16-74, P16-89,
 P16-187, P16-230, P16-295, PI-
 xviii, PI-26, PI-198, PI-226, PI-
 257, PI-296
 object segments PI-230-231, See
 segment(s); direct page and stack
 ObscureCursor GSTR-16-182
 OFFLINE GSF-156
 OffLine \$2F error CTR-151
 offset (into color table) PI-99
 offset point GSTR-4-50
 offset/width table GSTR-16-44, GSTR-
 16-50-51
 offseToMF GSTR-16-43, GSTR-16-276
 OffsetPoly GSTR-16-183
 OffsetRect GSTR-16-184
 OffsetRgn GSTR-16-185
 ok GSTR-6-89

- OK button GSTR-6-4, GSTR-6-5, GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-58, PI-132, PI-133, PI-139
- okDefault GSTR-6-89
- OLDBRK GSF-233
- OLDIRQ GSF-233
- OLDRST GSF-255
- OMF. See object module format
- one-second interrupt handler GSTR-14-27-28
- oneSecHnd GSTR-14-68
- oneSecInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
- online devices. See device(s)
- ON_LINE IIC #5, ProDOS #8, #21, PI-88
- op codes, disassembler GST-50
- opcodes GSF-56-57, GSF-293-298, GSH-198
- OPEN PI-210, PI-211, PI-213
- Open Apple (🍏) CTR-4, CTR-52, CTR-81, CTR-200, CTR-221, CTR-222, CTR-358, ETR-11, ETR-13, ETR-228
- Open Apple-Control-Reset CTR-52, CTR-121, CTR-162, CTR-176, CTR-361
- OPEN call CTR-127, CTR-140-141, GSF-5, GSF-131, P16-21, P16-80, P16-151-152, P16-287
 - description of P16-137-138
- Open command (File menu) PI-32
- Open File dialog box GSTR-22-3, GSTR-22-4, GSTR-22-21, GSTR-22-25-26
- open routine (NDA) PI-265
- OpenFilter PI-162, PI-164, PI-218, PI-306
- opening files PI-162, PI-210
- OpenNDA GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-20, GSTR-25-122, PI-158
- OpenPicture GSTR-15-38, GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-9, GSTR-17-14
- OpenPoly GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-186
- OpenPort GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-161, GSTR-16-187, GSTR-25-42, PI-97
- OpenRgn GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-74, GSTR-16-187
- OpenWindow PI-55, PI-120, PI-121, PI-163, PI-305
- operating environment P16-5, P16-52-72, P16-164. See also specific topic
- operating speed GSH-204, GST-3, GST-14-15, GST-84-85
- operating system GSTR-xGSTR-xviii
- Operating System Event Manager (Macintosh) GST-59, GST-65
- operating system(s)
 - Apple II
 - comparison of P16-281-288. See also specific operating system or specific topic
 - comparison of, calls. See system calls
 - comparison of, default at startup P16-13
 - file compatibility P16-283-284
 - reading DOS 3.3 and Apple II Pascal disks P16-284
 - filing calls P16-286-287
 - history of P16-281-282
 - input/output P16-285
 - interrupt support P16-288
 - memory management P16-287
 - similarity of P16-285-288
 - operating system
 - calls (typographic convention for) PI-xxii
 - operating systems CTR-214, CTR-328-329, ETR-233-234, GSH-235, GST-82, GST-90, GST-94-95, PI-xix
 - disassembler calls GST-50
 - program environments
 - summarized GST-113
 - reference manuals GST-111
 - standard I/O links GST-51-52
 - operating-environment tool sets PI-22, PI-180-183
 - operation codes GST-13
 - Option-Left Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
 - Option-Right Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
 - optionKey GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-51
 - options GSF-304-305
 - OPTMOUSE GSF-209
 - orange320 GSTR-16-275
 - ORG segment header field P16-186. See also headers; segment(s)
 - organization (files)
 - block and tree P16-28
 - definition of P16-253
 - origin GSTR-4-8, GSTR-16-16, GSTR-25-29-31, GSTR-25-52, GSTR-25-95, GSTR-25-96, GSTR-25-104, GSTR-25-116
 - origin mask GSTR-25-104
 - origin
 - of character PI-93
 - of QuickDraw II coordinate plane PI-77
 - of rectangle PI-82
 - original Apple IIe. See differences between original and enhanced Apple IIe
 - Original IIC IIC #7
 - oscillator GSH-110, GST-25, PI-175-176
 - Control registers GSH-104-106
 - Data registers GSH-106
 - Enable register GSH-103
 - Interrupt register GSH-102
 - interrupts GSH-104, GSH-105
 - oscillator register GSTR-21-5
 - oscillator table GSTR-21-22, GSTR-21-23
 - oscillator-to-generator translation table GSTR-21-5
 - oscTable GSTR-21-36
 - oSecDisable GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-67
 - oSecEnable GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-67
 - OSEventAvail GSTR-7-42
 - OSShutdown IIGS #49, GS/OS #2
 - osVector GSTR-14-68
 - otherIntHnd GSTR-14-68
 - outline type style GSTR-16-258, GSTR-17-1, GSTR-17-3
 - outlineMask GSTR-16-276
 - outOfMemErr GSTR-14-56, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
 - OUTPORT GSF-252
 - output GSTR-23-46. See I/O
 - output buffer GST-37-38
 - output devices, definition of P16-42. See also device(s)
 - output jack CTR-256
 - output link GST-52, GST-53
 - redirecting GSF-64
 - output parameter GSTR-2-6
 - output queue GST-38
 - output redirection IIGS #31
 - output routines GSF-76-78, GST-53
 - output sample rate GSTR-21-17
 - output subroutines CTR-64-70
 - C3Out1 CTR-65-67
 - COut CTR-64
 - COut1 CTR-65
 - output text device GSTR-23-4, GSTR-23-26, GSTR-23-27, GSTR-23-37, GSTR-23-38, GSTR-23-41, GSTR-23-42, GSTR-23-43, GSTR-23-44, GSTR-23-45
 - outputs
 - hand controller CTR-363-364
 - speaker CTR-82-84
 - strobe CTR-24
 - video display CTR-116-118
 - video signal CTR-270-273
 - OutQStatus GSF-96, GSF-103
 - oval GSTR-16-23, GSTR-16-89, GSTR-16-95, GSTR-16-102, GSTR-16-165, GSTR-16-189

ovals (QuickDraw II) PI-87, PI-90
overflow bit CTR-44
overflow
stack. See stack(s)
overheating ETR-158
overlays P16-205, PI-233

P

P register CTR-18, CTR-213, GSF-35
P-machine Pascal #10
p1AddLine GSTR-14-64
p1Baud GSTR-14-64
p1Buffer GSTR-14-64
p1DCDHndShk GSTR-14-64
p1DelLine GSTR-14-64
p1DSRHndShk GSTR-14-64
p1DtStpBits GSTR-14-64
p1Echo GSTR-14-64
p1LineLnth GSTR-14-64
p1Parity GSTR-14-64
p1PrntModem GSTR-14-64
p1XnfHndShk GSTR-14-64
p2AddLine GSTR-14-64
p2Baud GSTR-14-64
p2Buffer GSTR-14-64
p2DCDHndShk GSTR-14-64
p2DelLine GSTR-14-64
p2DSRHndShk GSTR-14-64
p2DtStpBits GSTR-14-64
p2Echo GSTR-14-64
p2LineLnth GSTR-14-64
p2Parity GSTR-14-64
p2PrntModem GSTR-14-64
p2XnfHndShk GSTR-14-64
package10Err GSTR-14-56, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
package11Err GSTR-14-56, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
package12Err GSTR-14-56, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
package1Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
package2Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
package3Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
package4Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
package5Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
package6Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
package7Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
package8Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1

package9Err GSTR-14-56, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
PackBytes GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-39-41, GSTR-14-42, IIGS #27, PI-182
packet GSH-127
paddle circuits Iie #6
paddle read Iie #6
paddles CTR-198, CTR-287
page GSTR-4-5
Page, high-resolution CTR-95
Page, text CTR-100
Page 1 CTR-20, CTR-36-38, CTR-50, CTR-269
double-high-resolution ETR-79
high-resolution CTR-95, ETR-23, ETR-27, ETR-79
text CTR-100, CTR-106, ETR-27, ETR-78
Page 1X CTR-38, CTR-269
Page 2 CTR-20, CTR-39
switch CTR-45, CTR-102, CTR-241, CTR-243, CTR-354
high-resolution ETR-23, ETR-79
text ETR-27, ETR-79
Page 2X CTR-38, CTR-39
page 3 vectors ETR-97
page flipping
Lo-Res graphics GST-47
page range GSTR-15-8, GSTR-15-38
page rectangle GSTR-15-11
page region GSTR-25-62, GSTR-25-105
page settings, printing PI-167-168
page setup GSTR-15-1
Page Setup command (File menu) PI-32
page zero ETR-77, ETR-79-81
page
size of P16-33, P16-291. See also memory
page-aligned (memory-block attribute) PI-187
page-aligned memory block GSTR-2-2, GSTR-12-12, GSTR-12-13
page-down region (scroll bar pan) PI-126
page-up region (scroll bar part) PI-126
PAGE2 Iie #3
PAGE2 soft switch ETR-29, ETR-32, ETR-87, ETR-89, ETR-90
pageDown GSTR-4-86
pages
display CTR-See display pages
memory CTR-See memory pages
reserved memory ETR-77-81
pageUp GSTR-4-86
paging region GSTR-4-5, GSTR-4-8

Paint PI-52-53
PAINT.PAS PI-439-442
PaintArc GSTR-16-188
painting GSTR-16-20, PI-87, PI-91
PaintIt PI-52-53, PI-104, PI-170
PaintOval GSTR-16-189, IIGS #34
PaintPixels GSTR-16-190-191
PaintPixels parameter block GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-277
PaintPoly GSTR-16-192
PaintRect GSTR-16-193
PaintRgn GSTR-16-194
PaintRRect GSTR-16-195
PAL CTR-257
PAL device ETR-5, ETR-167-168
PAL timing chip Iie #2
palette GSH-86, GSH-88-90, GSH-93, GSH-264, GST-22-24, GSTR-16-32, GSF-10, PI-7, PI-99-100.
See also color palette; color tables
standard in 320 mode GSTR-16-35, PI-100
standard in 640 mode GSTR-16-36, PI-102
panial pathname PI-208
papConnNotOpen GSTR-15-36, GSTR-15-42, GSTR-15-49, GSTR-B-5
paper source GSTR-15-8
paperType GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13, GSTR-15-48
papReadWriteErr GSTR-15-36, GSTR-15-42, GSTR-15-49, GSTR-B-5
parallel interface Iie #7
Parallel Interface Card Iie #7
param1 GSTR-6-90
param2 GSTR-6-90
parameter blocks P16-10, P16-81-82, P16-88, P16-100-104
parameter lists (ProDOS 16) PI-214
parameter(s) P16-102-104
blocks. See parameter blocks
fields P16-105
format P16-102-103
length of pointers and handles P16-106
order of bytes in a field P16-103
order on stack P16-214
permissible range of values P16-103, P16-107
pointers and P16-102-103, P16-106
setting up in memory P16-103-104
System Loader P16-213
types of P16-102, P16-213
parameter
Battery RAM reference numbers
GSTR-14-12

definition GSTR-xGSTR-xix
 DragRect GSTR-4-50-53
 GetAddr reference numbers GSTR-14-20
 input GSTR-2-6
 length GSTR-xxx
 NewControl GSTR-4-71-73
 output GSTR-2-6
 passing GSTR-2-6
 pseudo-type GSTR-xxx
 parameter-list pointer GST-50
 parameter-passing PI-253 PI-225
 paramLenErr GSTR-25-83, GSTR-25-144, GSTR-B-4
 paramLength GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-142
 ParamText GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-75, PI-14 PI-1
 parity GSF-89, GST-34, GST-35
 parity bit CTR-163
 parity for SSC ETR-279
 part code GSTR-4-8, GSTR-4-57, GSTR-4-67, GSTR-4-81, GSTR-4-82, GSTR-4-83, GSTR-4-84, GSTR-6-67, PI-127
 parts, standard window PI-110
 Pascal CTR-56, CTR-68, CTR-72, CTR-124, CTR-169, CTR-330, CTR-332, ETR-xx, ETR-235, ETR-275, GSF-48, GSF-82, GSF-86, GSF-97, GSF-110, GSF-210, GST-62,
 Pascal #10, #12, #14, #15, PI-65, PI-202, PI-225
 Pascal 1.1 GSF-93
 firmware protocol ETR-68-71, ETR-144, ETR-145-146, Ile #7, Miscellaneous #3, #8, Mouse #5, ProDOS #15
 address locations GST-36
 SmartPort calls GST-41
 pascal declaration GST-102
 Pascal device driver GSTR-23-3
 Pascal Device Support Tools
 Pascal #10
 Pascal Operating System CTR-329, ETR-234
 file system P16-284
 filing calls P16-287
 history of P16-283
 I/O P16-285
 interrupt support P16-288
 memory management P16-287
 reading Pascal disks P16-284
 Pascal string GSTR-5-3, GSTR-16-26, PI-92, P16-201
 Pascal
 and bank-switched memory ETR-82
 Apple IIGS support GST-8
 application program compatibility GST-39
 compiler for GST-103
 HodgePodge and PI-36, PI-413-446
 I/O subroutines ETR-46
 interrupt support GST-54
 mouse and CTR-195
 starting up with ETR-267-268
 tool calls GST-63
 video control functions CTR-117-118
 PASCALIO Pascal #10
 pascalType GSTR-23-46
 passive mode, mouse interface GST-43
 paste GSTR-5-30
 Paste command (Edit menu) PI-32, PI-141, PI-159, PI-161, GSTR-6-44, GSTR-20-1, GSTR-20-6
 pasteAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
 patches. See RAM, Apple IIGS
 patching P16-188, P16-196, PI-24, PI-227
 pathname prefixes P16-5, P16-14, P16-19-20, P16-65-69, P16-131
 application P16-66-67, P16-165, P16-201
 boot P16-65, P16-67, P16-166
 code numbers of P16-20
 default P16-65, P16-131
 initial ProDOS 16 values P16-66
 introduction to P16-65-69
 library P16-66-67, P16-201
 multiple P16-20
 null P16-20
 number of characters in P16-14
 numbers P16-66-67, P16-81, P16-131, P16-168
 partial pathnames P16-19
 predefined P16-65
 ProDOS 8 prefix and pathname conventions P16-68-69
 samples of P16-66
 storage of P16-66
 system (ProDOS 8) P16-66, P16-69
 values of P16-67-68
 Pathname segment PI-196
 Pathname Table P16-189, P16-196, P16-200-201, P16-206, P16-227, P16-245
 pathname table PI-196
 pathname(s) P16-7, P16-19-21, P16-65-69, P16-117, P16-199
 pathname(s), assigning P16-21
 full P16-19, P16-69, P16-201
 length of P16-20
 number of characters in P16-14
 partial P16-19, P16-65, P16-69, P16-241
 pointers P16-61, P16-82
 prefixes. See pathname prefixes
 requirements of P16-19
 segment P16-184, P16-199, P16-200, P16-298. See also segment(s)
 pathnames PI-196, PI-208, PI-288
 pointer (QUIT) PI-202
 patSize GSTR-16-274
 pattern GSTR-16-265
 Note Sequencer PI-178
 QuickDraw II PI-85
 Pattern Search command GSF-34, GSF-59
 PBO Ile #9
 PB1 Ile #9
 PB2 Ile #9
 PBR register GSF-11, GSF-35
 PCADJ GSF-232
 Pdl0 CTR-287
 Pdl1 CTR-287
 pdosBlk0Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
 pdosFCBErr GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
 pdosIntShdwErr GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
 pdosUnClmdIntErr GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
 pdosVCBErr GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
 PEEK CTR-329, Miscellaneous #11
 pen PI-85
 pen displacement GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-70, GSTR-16-77, GSTR-16-267, GSTR-16-270
 pen level GSTR-16-156, GSTR-16-265
 pen location GSTR-16-17, GSTR-16-18, GSTR-16-22, GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-80, GSTR-16-81, GSTR-16-82, GSTR-16-83, GSTR-16-128, GSTR-16-178, GSTR-16-180, GSTR-16-196
 pen location PI-84, PI-85, PI-92
 pen mask GSTR-16-129, GSTR-16-233
 pen mode GSTR-16-19-20, GSTR-16-22, GSTR-16-130, GSTR-16-234-235, GSTR-16-275, PI-86, PI-173
 pen pattern GSTR-16-18-19, GSTR-16-131, GSTR-16-236, GSTR-16-252, IIGS #6, PI-85
 pen size GSTR-16-18, GSTR-16-22, GSTR-16-132, GSTR-16-237, PI-85
 pen state GSTR-16-133, GSTR-16-196, GSTR-16-238

pen state record GSTR-16-238
 PenNormal GSTR-16-196
 PenState record GSTR-16-278
 period (.) CTR-206, GSF-26, GSF-27,
 as Monitor command ETR-102
 peripheral address bus ETR-192,
 ETR-194
 peripheral cards GSH-5, GSH-178,
 GST-28-29, GST-65
 addressing GSH-179-180
 compatibility on Apple IIGS GST-
 29
 Control Panel GST-46
 conventional positions GST-28
 device assignment ETR-145
 Disk II controller card GST-39-40
 expansion ROM GST-31
 I/O base addresses GSH-268
 I/O memory space ETR-133, ETR-
 141
 interrupt requests GST-55
 main memory reserved locations
 GST-32
 memory expansion card GST-18,
 GST-78
 memory shadowing GST-80
 peripheral device driver routine
 GST-30
 programming for ETR-132-156
 RAM memory locations GSH-268
 RAM space ETR-136
 ROM routines GST-33
 ROM space ETR-133-135
 peripheral data bus ETR-192
 peripheral data bus, differences in
 Apple II family ETR-231
 peripheral devices. See device(s)
 peripheral expansion slots GSH-5
 peripheral identification numbers
 GSH-249-250
 peripheral identification numbers
 (PIN) CTR-389-390
 peripheral interface adapters GSH-
 171
 peripheral slots See expansion slots
 peripheral-card memory spaces
 CTR-352-353
 peripheral-card ROM GST-32
 periwinkleBlue GSTR-16-274
 permanent initialization files PI-266,
 PI-300
 PFI ProDOS #21
 pFileName GSTR-15-14, GSTR-15-15,
 GSTR-15-48
 PH0 IIe #4
 PH1 IIe #4
 PH2 IIe #4, IIGS #21
 phone jacks ETR-8, ETR-39
 phrase (Note Sequencer) PI-178
 PIC IIe #7
 PicComment GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-
 15
 picItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12,
 GSTR-6-88
 picSave GSTR-16-134, GSTR-16-239,
 GSTR-16-277, GSTR-17-14
 picScrap GSTR-20-4, GSTR-20-19
 PICT data format IIGS #46
 pictSCB IIGS #46
 picture GSTR-16-25, GSTR-17-1,
 GSTR-17-2-3
 picture (QuickDraw II) PI-92
 picture data format IIGS #46
 picture definition GSTR-17-14
 picture element. See pixel
 picture file formats IIGS #27
 picture files
 HodgePodge and PI-215-217, PI-
 218
 picture windows, HodgePodge and
 PI-33, PI-52-53, PI-103-104, PI-
 305-306
 pIdleProc GSTR-15-14, GSTR-15-15,
 GSTR-15-24, GSTR-15-48
 PInit GSF-209, GSF-210, GST-36,
 IIGS #16, CTR-116, ETR-69
 pinning GSTR-9-3
 pinouts
 6551 CTR-277
 GLU CTR-246
 IOU CTR-243
 IWM CTR-247
 MMU CTR-242
 RAM CTR-251
 ROM CTR-249, CTR-250
 TMG CTR-245
 video expansion connector CTR-
 272
 PinRect GSTR-25-89-90
 pipelining ETR-161
 pixel GSF-10
 pixel GSTR-16-10-11, GSTR-16-135,
 GSTR-16-197, GSTR-16-200,
 GSTR-16-201
 pixel image GSTR-2-2, GSTR-16-9,
 GSTR-16-12-14, GSTR-16-48,
 GSTR-17-10, PI-76, PI-103-104,
 PI-112, PI-171, PI-286
 pixel, region GSTR-16-190
 pixels GSH-81-82, GSH-89-90, GSH-
 93, GST-22, IIe #3, PI-77, PI-79
 640 graphics mode GST-23-24
 aspect ratios GST-61
 background GSTR-16-28, GSTR-16-
 30, PI-93
 chunky GSTR-16-31
 defined PI-79, PI-7
 foreground GSTR-16-27, GSTR-16-
 30, PI-93
 relation to coordinate plane
 locations PI-78
 shape of PI-77, PI-90, PI-284
 place-holding character GSTR-5-8
 plain-styled characters PI-95
 plane GSTR-25-8
 plane (window) PI-113, PI-136
 PLOT GSF-79, GSF-225, CTR-
 112, CTR-114, ETR-67, ETR-223
 PLOT1 GSF-225
 plotter output port GST-34
 plus sign (+) GSF-71, GSF-72
 PMBootInit GSTR-15-25
 PMReset GSTR-15-28
 PMShutDown GSTR-15-19, GSTR-15-
 27, PI-58
 PMStartUp GSTR-15-19, GSTR-15-26,
 PI-46
 PMStatus GSTR-15-28
 PMVersion GSTR-15-27
 pnStateSize GSTR-16-274
 point GSTR-xxx, GSTR-8-4, GSTR-
 16-11-12, GSTR-16-21-22, GSTR-
 16-40, GSTR-16-68, GSTR-16-85,
 GSTR-16-135, GSTR-16-154,
 GSTR-16-175, GSTR-16-199,
 GSTR-16-200, GSTR-16-201,
 GSTR-16-207, GSTR-16-268,
 GSTR-25-89, PI-88-89
 point (typesetting) PI-95
 POINTER GSTR-xxx
 pointer(s) P16-26, P16-38-39. See
 also EOF; Mark; memory
 handles, PI-189-190
 definition of P16-102, P16-214
 fields. See fields
 length of (parameter fields) P16-
 106
 master P16-38
 order of bytes P16-256
 parameter block P16-38-39, P16-82
 pathname P16-61, P16-83
 pointing device GSTR-7-21-25,
 GSTR-7-27, GSTR-7-34, GSTR-
 14-5, PI-10, PI-71
 POKE CTR-329, Mouse #6, ETR-271-
 272
 Poll Device command GSF-195
 polling of devices GST-70
 polling, Apple Desktop Bus GSTR-3-3
 polyAlreadyOpen GSTR-16-186,
 GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
 polygon GSTR-16-24-25, GSTR-16-
 40, GSTR-16-72, GSTR-16-90,
 GSTR-16-96, GSTR-16-103,

GSTR-16-166, GSTR-16-170,
 GSTR-16-174, GSTR-16-183,
 GSTR-16-186, GSTR-16-192, PI-
 87, PI-96
 polyNotOpen GSTR-16-72, GSTR-16-
 278, GSTR-B-3
 polySave GSTR-16-136, GSTR-16-
 240, GSTR-16-277
 polyTooBig GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
 port IIGS #36
 port (printer) PI-166
 port (QuickDraw II). See graphic
 ports; GrafPort
 port driver GSTR-15-24, GSTR-15-43,
 IIGS #36
 port numbers P16-7
 port rectangle GSTR-16-14-15, GSTR-
 16-16, GSTR-16-139, GSTR-16-
 179, GSTR-16-208, GSTR-16-232,
 GSTR-16-243, GSTR-16-244,
 GSTR-25-17, GSTR-25-77, GSTR-
 25-82, GSTR-25-115, PI-81-82,
 PI-83, PI-103, PI-108, PI-120
 port. See GrafPort
 Portable C Compiler GST-102
 portNotOn GSTR-15-30, GSTR-15-31,
 GSTR-15-36, GSTR-15-39, GSTR-
 15-40, GSTR-15-42, GSTR-15-49,
 GSTR-B-5
 portrait mode GSTR-15-6
 portRect field GSTR-16-14, GSTR-16-
 15
 PortRef IIGS #34
 ports 1 and 2
 Apple II GST-34
 AppleTalk connection GST-38
 configuration GST-33
 interrupts GST-55
 ports
 characteristics CTR-71
 communication P16-9, P16-43
 disk P16-xix, P16-45
 disk I/O CTR-120-121
 entry points CTR-71
 I/O CTR-71-74
 mouse CTR-186,CTR-325
 printer CTR-156-157
 ROM space CTR-73
 screen hole RAM space CTR-74
 serial CTR-275, P16-xix
 serial port 1 CTR-22,CTR-154-165
 serial port 2 CTR-22,CTR-38,CTR-
 167-184
 video output CTR-86
 portSCB GSTR-16-13, GSTR-16-277,
 PI-80
 portSize GSTR-16-274
 posCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-86
 position-independent code/segments
 PI-188, PI-195, PI-196, PI-197
 position-independent programs
 GST-62
 POSMOUSE GSF-209, GSF-211, GSF-
 213, GSTR-14-33, Mouse #1, #3,
 CTR-193
 PostEvent GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-43-44
 power connector ETR-160, GSH-193,
 CTR-234-235
 power converter, specifications CTR-
 234
 power light CTR-3,CTR-7
 power supply CTR-11-12, ETR-4,
 ETR-159-160
 specifications CTR-233,CTR-383
 power-on reset CTR-50
 power2 Memory Expansion Card #1
 POWERUP IIGS #49
 powerup Memory Expansion Card #1
 pPrPort GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
 PPToPort GSTR-16-197-198, PI-103,
 PI-104, PI-118
 PQUIT P16-56, P16-59-62. See also
 QUIT call
 ProDOS 16 QUIT call P16-61
 ProDOS 8 QUIT calls, standard and
 enhanced P16-60
 PR# command ETR-115
 PR#0 command CTR-198
 PR#1 command CTR-155,CTR-
 159,CTR-162,CTR-181
 PR#2 command CTR-169,CTR-
 171,CTR-172,CTR-179,CTR-
 181,CTR-183,CTR-184
 PR#3 command CTR-90,CTR-196
 PR#4 command CTR-196,CTR-198
 PR#7 command CTR-328
 PR#n command CTR-57, GST-52
 PRA1 GSF-248
 prAbort GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-22,
 GSTR-15-34, GSTR-15-44, GSTR-
 15-47
 PRBL2 GSF-79, GSF-231, CTR-
 112,CTR-114, ETR-67, ETR-224
 PRBLNK GSF-231, ETR-224
 PRBYTE GSF-79, GSF-248, CTR-
 112,CTR-115, ETR-67, ETR-224
 PrChoosePrinter GSTR-15-20, GSTR-
 15-22, GSTR-15-29
 PrChooser PI-167
 PrCloseDoc GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-
 21, GSTR-15-30, GSTR-15-36,
 GSTR-15-40, PI-170, PI-172
 PrClosePage GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-
 21, GSTR-15-31, GSTR-15-38,
 PI-170, PI-172
 PrDefault GSTR-15-19, GSTR-15-22,
 GSTR-15-46, PI-41
 PrDriverVer GSTR-15-33
 PRead GSF-209, GSF-210, GSF-235,
 GST-36, IIGS #6, CTR-116,CTR-
 201, ETR-43, ETR-69, ETR-224
 PREAD4 GSF-235
 prefix numbers PI-208-209
 prefixes PI-208-210, PI-288
 initial values PI-210
 pathname. See pathname prefixes
 PRERR GSF-253, CTR-112,CTR-115,
 ETR-67, ETR-224
 PrError GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-30,
 GSTR-15-34
 prestyled fonts GSTR-8-5-6, GSTR-
 16-43
 PRHEX GSF-79, GSF-248, CTR-
 112,CTR-11, ETR-68, ETR-224
 primary character set CTR-69,CTR-
 70,CTR-88,CTR-359, ETR-19-
 20, ETR-228
 primitive object drawing GST-64
 prInfo GSTR-15-10, GSTR-15-11,
 GSTR-15-47
 Print GSTR-15-1
 Print command (File menu) PI-32
 Print Manager GST-59, GST-69,
 GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-11, GSTR-15-
 1-50, IIGS #35, #36, #38, PI-21,
 PI-64, PI-76, PI-166-173, PI-289
 constants GSTR-15-47
 data structures GSTR-15-47-48
 error codes GSTR-15-49
 shutdown routine GSTR-15-27
 startup routine GSTR-15-26
 status routine GSTR-15-28
 using GSTR-15-19-22
 version number routine GSTR-15-
 27
 print record GSTR-15-9-15, GSTR-15-
 19, GSTR-15-32, GSTR-15-46,
 PI-171
 print spoolers P16-83
 PRINT.ASM PI-367-370
 PRINT.CC PI-409-410
 PRINT.PAS PI-437-438
 printer GSH-150, GSH-173
 PRINTER command CTR-155, ETR-
 115, GSF-40
 printer driver GSTR-15-1, GSTR-15-
 23, GSTR-15-33, IIGS #35
 printer effects choice GSTR-15-6
 printer error code GSTR-15-34,
 GSTR-15-44, GSTR-15-49
 printer information subrecord GSTR-
 15-11
 printer interface IIGS #36

printer interface cards GST-28
 printer mode GSF-83
 command character GSF-87
 commands GSF-88-90
 printer names dialog box GSTR-15-5
 printer output port GST-34
 printer paper GSTR-15-5
 printer port GSF-300
 commands CTR-156-157
 printer status record GSTR-15-41
 printer style subrecord GSTR-15-12-13
 printers GST-46, P16-9, P16-43
 printing IIGS #16, #35, #36,
 ImageWriter #1, PI-166-173
 printing loop GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-34, loop PI-172
 printing tools GST-69
 printing
 background procedure PI-173
 choosing a printer PI-166-167
 color GSTR-15-15-18
 draft GSTR-15-14-15, GSTR-15-23, GSTR-15-37, draft PI-171
 printing, errors PI-172
 GrafPort PI-170
 page settings, making PI-167-168
 printing loop PI-172
 QuickDraw II and PI-170, PI-172, PI-173
 spool GSTR-15-14-15, GSTR-15-23, GSTR-15-37, GSTR-15-40, PI-172
 private memory GSTR-12-11, GSTR-12-14
 private scrap GSTR-20-5-6, PI-161
 prJob GSTR-15-10, GSTR-15-47
 PrJobDialog GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-21, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-35, GSTR-15-46, PI-170
 PRNTAX GSF-79, GSF-230, CTR-113, CTR-115, ETR-68, ETR-224
 PRNTX GSF-231
 PRNTYX GSF-230
 PRO16MLI GSF-274
 processor status register CTR-18, CTR-213, P16-64, P16-105
 processor status
 changing GSF-61
 register GSF-37
 system interrupt handler GSF-181
 ProDOS CTR-51, CTR-57, CTR-124, CTR-155, CTR-169, CTR-204, CTR-214, CTR-312, CTR-328, CTR-332, ETR-105, ETR-141, ETR-233, GSF-43, GSF-70, GSF-110, GSF-114, GSF-115, GSF-130, GSH-143, GSH-235, GST-6, GSTR-5-, P16-xxi, P16-282. See also operating system(s); ProDOS 8; ProDOS 16
 ProDOS 1.0 GST-94
 ProDOS 16 GSF-117, GSF-220, GST-82, GST-90, GSTR-xGSTR-xviii, GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-18, GSTR-5-19, GSTR-12-1, GSTR-12-14, P16-xxi, P16-4-15. See also manuals; operating system(s) or specific topic, PI-xix, PI-10, PI-199, PI-200-202, PI-257-259, PI-260
 ProDOS 16 Exerciser. See Exerciser
 ProDOS 16
 adding routines to P16-94-97
 APW Shell GST-103
 bypassing P16-6
 cold-start routine GST-97
 compared to Macintosh file system PI-287-288
 compared to ProDOS 8 PI-291, PI-296, GST-94-95
 description of P16-xxi, P16-4-15
 direct-page/stack segment, default PI-206
 errors P16-302-309. See also errors
 Exerciser PI-253-254
 external devices and P16-42-49
 fixed locations P16-65
 history of P16-283
 interface to P16-89
 interrupt handling PI-271-272
 introduction to P16-4-15
 memory and P16-xviii, P16-32-40
 memory map P16-35
 new system calls P16-12
 operating system calls GST-50
 parameter lists PI-214
 prefixes PI-208-210
 ProDOS 8 and. See ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16
 QUIT call PI-58, PI-202
 shell applications and PI-262
 summary of features P16-13-15
 system calls. See system calls
 System Loader GST-60
 version number P16-171
 ProDOS 8 GSF-117, GSF-220, GST-82, GST-90, P16-xviii, P16-5, P16-9-13, P16-52, P16-60-61, P16-170. See also manuals; operating system(s), PI-xix, PI-9, PI-207, PI-257, PI-290
 ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16 P16-9-10, P16-86-89, P16-105-106
 call methods compared P16-105-106
 calls, converting P16-88
 compilation/assembly P16-89
 downward compatibility P16-11
 eliminated ProDOS 8 system calls P16-11
 hardware configuration P16-87
 interrupt handlers, modifying P16-88
 memory management P16-86
 new ProDOS 16 system calls P16-11
 revising applications P16-86-89
 stack and zero page, converting P16-88
 upward compatibility P16-10-11
 ProDOS 8
 /RAM5 GST-79
 applications, memory banks for P16-33
 binary files P16-12, P16-224, P16-283
 cold-start routine GST-97
 compared with ProDOS 16 GST-94-95
 description of P16-xxi, P16-4
 desk accessories GST-89
 display shadowing GST-86
 enhanced QUIT call P16-60-61
 file system P16-283
 filing calls P16-286
 global page P16-10, P16-36, P16-79-80
 global page PI-292, PI-296
 history of P16-282
 I/O P16-285
 interrupt support P16-288
 loading P16-166
 memory and P16-34, P16-86-87
 on an Apple IIGS vs. other Apple II computers P16-5
 operating system calls GST-50
 pathname of current application P16-69
 prefix P16-68-69
 ProDOS 16 compared to PI-291, PI-296
 ProDOS 16 QUIT call and PI-202
 quit type P16-60
 standard QUIT call P16-60-61
 system calls P16-9-11, 105
 system disk P16-56
 system file P16-12, P16-58, P16-182, P16-224
 system prefix P16-66, P16-68
 system program P16-12, P16-58, P16-182, P16-224
 unit (device) number P16-84
 ProDOS busy flag. See busy flag
 ProDOS devices Miscellaneous #8, ProDOS #3, #21

- PRODOS file P16-53, P16-55, P16-56-58
 ProDOS file system PI-xix, PI-207-218
 ProDOS Filing Interface ProDOS #21
 ProDOS is busy error. See errors
 ProDOS MLI ProDOS #16, #20
 ProDOS,
 calls to real-time clock GST-26
 interrupt support ETR-148-149
 interrupt support GST-54
 Machine Language Interface CTR-125
 starting up with ETR-268
 use of page 3 ETR-78
 use of page zero ETR-81
 proDOSVctr GSTR-14-68
 ProFile hard disk ETR-xxii
 program bank register GSF-17, GSF-35, GSH-203, GST-13, GST-14, GST-83, PI-293
 system interrupt handler GSF-181
 See registers
 program code execution, Monitor instructions GST-48
 program counter GSF-51, GSH-203, CTR-18
 program counter register. See registers
 65816 registers GST-14
 program descriptions (APW) PI-221-224
 program development environment
 Apple Programmer's Workshop (APW) GST-103-105
 environment options GST-82-88
 environments summarized GST-89-90
 languages GST-101-103
 mixing environments GST-88-89
 modularity GST-100-101
 program launcher PI-201
 program operation levels GSF-4
 program register, changing GSF-61
 program segmentation GST-62, GST-100
 program selector PI-201
 Program Status register GSH-201-203
 program status, 65816 registers GST-14
 Programmed Array Logic (PAL)
 device ETR-5, ETR-167-168
 Programmer's Workshop See Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop
 programming P16-xix, P16-74-91. See also specific topic
 programming examples See also HodgePodge or specific routine
 assembly language PI-190, PI-193, PI-239-246, PI-263, PI-265, PI-311-376
 C PI-190, PI-377-412
 classic desk accessory PI-263
 dynamic-segment PI-245
 multiple-segment PI-241-245
 new desk accessory PI-265
 single-segment PI-240-241
 programming languages GST-8-9, GST-101-103
 reference manuals GST-110
 absolute vs. relocatable segments PI-24, PI-227
 applications PI-26, PI-228-229, PI-256-259
 assembly language PI-4, PI-280-284, PI-290
 auxID field PI-193
 control-related events PI-129
 controlling programs PI-259-260
 cutting and pasting PI-160-161
 desk accessories PI-262-265
 desktop PI-10
 dialogs and alerts PI-141
 Edit menu PI-161
 error testing PI-277
 event handling PI-70
 event-driven PI-13-16, PI-51
 file types PI-255-274
 general PI-xvii, PI-11, PI-277
 high-level languages PI-282-283, PI-290
 HodgePodge, using PI-34-36, PI-276
 hybrid applications PI-292-293
 initialization files PI-266
 interactive PI-13, PI-14
 interrupt handlers PI-270, PI-271-272
 language considerations PI-225
 load-segment characteristics PI-232
 loading programs PI-199
 loading segments PI-198
 Macintosh program conversions PI-282-289
 math computing PI-178-180
 memory allocation PI-191-194
 menu modification PI-154-155
 menu organization PI-149
 object module format and PI-26
 parameter-passing PI-225
 Print Manager PI-171-173
 restartability and C PI-259
 segmentation PI-23-25, PI-219-254
 shell applications PI-261-262
 standard Apple II program enhancement PI-290-297
 static vs. dynamic segments PI-25, PI-232-235
 System Loader PI-195
 TaskMaster and PI-75
 tool sets PI-18, PI-62, PI-272-274
 window drawing PI-103-106, PI-115-116
 window origin, resetting PI-120
 window-related events PI-113-120
 programming
 application requirements P16-74
 direct page and stack. See direct page and stack
 event-driven P16-xix
 levels in Apple IIGS P16-5-7
 segmented P16-xix
 suggestions for P16-74-91
 System Loader P16-203-210
 system resource management P16-79-84
 programs. See application(s); controlling programs; static programs
 PROM, slot space GST-30-31
 PROMPT GSF-247
 prompt GSF-74
 prompt character
 (!) GSF-52, GSF-74
 (*) GSF-20, GSF-26, GSF-74
 (>) GSF-74
 (?) GSF-74
 (Ⓛ) GSF-74
 prompt characters CTR-59, ETR-60, GST-53
 mini-assembler (!) GST-50
 Monitor (*) GST-48
 PrOpenDoc GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-21, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-36-37, GSTR-15-40, PI-170, PI-172
 PrOpenPage GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-21, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-38-39, PI-170, PI-172
 proportional scroll bars GSTR-25-10
 proportionally spaced font GSTR-16-226
 Protocol Converter CTR-124, GST-40-41
 PrPicFile GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-30, GSTR-15-40-41, PI-170, PI-172
 PrPixelFormat GSTR-15-42
 PrPortVer GSTR-15-43
 PrSetError GSTR-15-21, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-44
 prStl GSTR-15-10, GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-47

PrStdDialog GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-21, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-45, GSTR-15-46, PI-169
 PrValidate GSTR-15-19, GSTR-15-21, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-35, GSTR-15-45, GSTR-15-46
 prVersion GSTR-15-10, GSTR-15-47
 pseudo-device ProDOS #21
 pseudo-type GSTR-xxx
 pseudorandom numbers GSTR-16-202
 pseudoregisters GSF-8, GSF-16
 psInstDiskErr GSTR-14-56, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
 psPnMask GSTR-16-238, GSTR-16-278
 psPnMode GSTR-16-238, GSTR-16-278
 psPnPat GSTR-16-238, GSTR-16-278
 psPnSize GSTR-16-238, GSTR-16-278
 PStatus GSF-209, GSF-210, GST-36, CTR-118, ETR-71
 Pt2Rect GSTR-16-199
 PtInRect GSTR-16-200
 PtInRgn GSTR-16-201
 PTrig switch CTR-190
 ptrToDestLocInfo GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-277
 ptrToDestPoint GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-277
 PtrToHand GSTR-12-38
 ptrToPiximage GSTR-16-13, GSTR-16-277, PI-80
 ptrToSourceLocInfo GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-277
 ptrToSourceRect GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-277
 public scrap type GSTR-20-4
 publications. See manuals
 pull-down menu GSTR-1-3, GSTR-13-1, See menus
 purge block GSTR-12-8, GSTR-12-9, GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-44, GSTR-12-45, GSTR-24-25, PI-187, PI-195, P16-37, P16-77-78, P16-185-186, P16-231
 purgeable block GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40
 purgeable memory blocks PI-194, PI-233
 purgeable segments. See segment(s)
 PurgeAll GSTR-12-11, GSTR-12-39
 purgeBit GSTR-8-9, GSTR-8-10, GSTR-8-50
 purgeErr GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-B-2
 PurgeHandle GSTR-12-40

purging PI-190, PI-194, PI-195, PI-197, PI-200
 purple320 GSTR-16-274
 PutScrap GSTR-20-5, GSTR-20-6, GSTR-20-11, GSTR-20-16, GSTR-20-18
 PWREDUP GSF-259
 PWrite GSF-209, GSF-210, GST-36, IIGS #16, CTR-117, ETR-69
 PWRUP GSF-234

Q

Q command CTR-171
 Q register GSF-36
 Q3 signal ETR-163
 QDAuxBootInit GSTR-17-6
 QDAuxReset GSTR-17-8
 QDAuxShutDown GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-7, PI-58
 QDAuxStartUp GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-6, PI-45
 QDAuxStatus GSTR-17-8
 QDAuxversion GSTR-17-7
 QDBootInit GSTR-16-63
 QDReset GSTR-16-67
 QDShutDown GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-66, PI-58
 QDStartUp GSTR-2-2, GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-59, GSTR-16-61, GSTR-16-64-65, GSTR-16-275, PI-43
 QDStatus GSTR-16-67
 QDVersion GSTR-16-66
 qSecDisable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 qSecEnable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 qSecIntHnd GSTR-14-68
 Quagmire register GSF-16, GSF-36
 Quagmire state, changing GSF-62
 quarter-second interrupt handler GSTR-14-28-29
 quarter-second timer interrupts GSF-180
 quartSecInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
 question mark (?) CTR-59, GSF-74
 question mark (?) as prompt character ETR-62
 question mark (?), blinking CTR-169, CTR-179
 queue GST-38
 queueDmgdErr GSTR-14-48, GSTR-14-52, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
 QuickDraw (Macintosh) GST-59, GST-60, PI-136, PI-286-287
 QuickDraw II GST-59, GST-64-65, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-11-14, GSTR-2-2, GSTR-16-1-278, IIGS #34,

PI-20, PI-42, PI-63, PI-75-106, PI-170. See also specific topic
 QuickDraw II Auxiliary GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-14, GSTR-2-4, GSTR-8-5, GSTR-8-14, GSTR-10-44, GSTR-13-83, GSTR-16-258, GSTR-17-1-16, GSTR-C-6, Auxiliary PI-20, PI-75
 shutdown routine GSTR-17-7
 startup routine GSTR-17-6
 status routine GSTR-17-8
 using GSTR-17-5
 version number routine GSTR-17-7
 QuickDraw II
 black and white drawing PI-103
 color PI-98-103
 constants GSTR-16-274-276
 coordinates PI-77, PI-82
 data structures GSTR-16-276-278
 display shadowing GST-87
 error codes GSTR-16-278
 how it draws PI-85-88
 limits to drawing PI-77
 Macintosh QuickDraw, relation to PI-75, PI-77, PI-79, PI-28-287
 pattern PI-85
 printing and PI-170, PI-172, PI-173
 shutdown routine GSTR-16-66
 startup routine GSTR-16-64-65
 status routine GSTR-16-67
 text drawing PI-92-97
 tools for Super Hi-Res graphics GST-60-61
 using GSTR-16-39-40
 version number routine GSTR-16-66
 what it draws PI-88-92
 where it draws PI-76-84
 quit GSF-306
 QUIT IIGS #49, ProDOS #7, #14, PI-58, PI-199, PI-20-202, PI-260, PI-261-262
 QUIT call (ProDOS 16) P16-15, P16-59-61, P16-69, P16-74, P16-77, P16-82, P16-207, P16-209-210, P16-245. See also PQUIT
 description of P16-167-170
 return flag parameter P16-61, P16-82
 standard and enhanced P16-60-61
 Quit command GST-37
 Quit command (Exerciser) P16-294
 Quit command (File menu) PI-32, PI-58
 quit flag P16-245
 Quit Monitor command GSF-43, GSF-65

QUIT procedure P16-62. See also
 QUIT call
 quit return stack P16-167. See also
 stack(s), PI-201
 quit type (ProDOS 8) P16-60
 QUIT
 flag word PI-202
 in high-level languages PI-201
 pathname pointer PI-202
 quitting applications. See
 application(s)
 Quitting Interpreter conventions
 ProDOS #7
 quotation mark (") GSF-34, GSF-52

R

R command CTR-157, CTR-171, GSF-90
 R/W* Iie #4
 R/W* line Iie #2
 R/W80 signal ETR-197
 radio button GSTR-4-4, GSTR-4-10,
 GSTR-4-18, PI-125, PI-128
 control record GSTR-4-18-20
 radio-frequency modulator ETR-7,
 GSH-58
 radioButton GSTR-4-86
 radioItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-88
 radioProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-19,
 GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
 radNor GSTR-4-20, GSTR-4-88
 radReserved GSTR-4-20, GSTR-4-88
 radSel GSTR-4-20, GSTR-4-88
 radTitle GSTR-4-20, GSTR-4-88
 RAM CTR-13, PI-6, PI-9, PI-18. See
 also memory
 RAM (Apple IIc or Iie) P16-34
 RAM (Apple IIGS) P16-32. See also
 memory
 fixed entry points in P16-35
 I/O space in P16-33
 patches to ROM-based tool sets
 P16-52-53
 specialized areas in P16-33
 tool sets P16-33, P16-52
 RAM addresses CTR-22, CTR-351
 multiplexing CTR-252
 /RAM ProDOS #8, #16, #18, #21
 /RAM5 GST-40, GST-79
 RAM card Iic #5
 RAM chips GST-18
 RAM disk GSF-17, GSF-110, GSF-114,
 GSF-117, GSF-234, GSF-303,
 GST-40, Iic #5, Memory
 Expansion Card #1, ProDOS #8,
 P16-43
 RAM expansion PI-5
 RAM memory. See memory
 RAM patches (tool sets) PI-43, PI-293
 RAM tool set GSTR-1-1, GSTR-2-3
 RAM upgrade ETR-xxiii
 RAM
 addressing CTR-251-253, ETR-139,
 ETR-169-172
 allocation ETR-76-81
 Apple II GST-74
 Apple IIGS specifications GST-3
 auxiliary CTR-22, CTR-184, ETR-
 86-88
 battery backed-up GST-65
 clock rate of programs in RAM
 GST-14
 expansion GST-15
 expansion card GST-17, GST-18
 Fast Processor Interface (FPI) GST-
 75, GST-77
 I/O links GST-51
 language-card memory GST-17
 main CTR-22
 memory expansion card CTR-123
 memory maps GST-78-80
 peripheral-card CTR-353
 port screen hole CTR-74
 program execution speed GST-84
 prompt character storage GST-53
 refreshing CTR-251-252
 resident desk accessories GST-46
 slot RAM space GST-32-33
 Smartport CTR-126
 Sound Manager GST-69
 sound sample storage GST-24
 space for peripheral cards ETR-136
 text window values storage GST-53
 timing CTR-252-253, ETR-172
 tool sets in GST-7, GST-63
 Toolbox routines GST-58
 RAM-based device driver GSTR-23-1,
 GSTR-23-4
 RAM-based driver ProDOS #21
 RAM-based tool set GSTR-24-3
 RAM-based tool sets PI-43, PI-63
 ramBased GSTR-23-46
 RAMRD Iie #3
 RAMRD soft switch ETR-88-90, CTR-
 39, CTR-44, CTR-242
 RAMWRT Iie #3
 RAMWRT soft switch ETR-88-90,
 CTR-39, CTR-44, CTR-242
 Random GSTR-16-202, GSTR-16-246
 random number generator ETR-59,
 GSTR-16-246, GSF-72
 range mode GSTR-11-12
 rcADBAddr GSTR-3-29
 rcLayoutOrLang GSTR-3-29
 rcRepeatDelay GSTR-3-29
 Rd63 switch CTR-190
 RD80COL soft switch ETR-29
 Rd80Col switch CTR-102
 RD80STORE soft switch ETR-29, CTR-
 45, CTR-102
 RdAddr GSF-146
 RDALTCHAR soft switch ETR-29
 RdAltChar switch CTR-102
 RDALTZP soft switch ETR-84, CTR-28
 RDBNK2 soft switch ETR-84, CTR-28
 RdBtn0 switch CTR-190
 RDCHAR GSF-246
 RdChar routine CTR-82, ETR-224
 RDDHIRES soft switch ETR-30, CTR-
 46, CTR-103
 RDHIRES soft switch ETR-30, CTR-
 45, CTR-103
 RDIODIS soft switch ETR-30, CTR-
 46, CTR-103, CTR-189
 RDKEY GSF-70, GSF-71, GSF-79,
 GSF-244, CTR-58, CTR-78, CTR-
 341, GST-53, ETR-47, ETR-58,
 ETR-59, ETR-225, ETR-269
 RDKEY1 GSF-245
 RDLGRAM soft switch ETR-84, CTR-
 28
 rdMaxRam GSTR-14-65
 rdMinRam GSTR-14-65
 RDMIXED soft switch ETR-29
 RdMIXED switch CTR-102
 RDPAGE2 soft switch ETR-29
 RdPage2 switch CTR-45, CTR-102
 RdRAMrd switch CTR-39
 RdRAMWrt switch CTR-39
 RDTEXT soft switch ETR-29, CTR-102
 RdVBIMsk switch CTR-190
 RdX0Edge switch CTR-189
 RdXYMsk switch CTR-189
 RDY line Iie #4
 RdY0Edge switch CTR-190
 READ GSF-253, PI-211, ProDOS #17,
 UniDisk 3.5 #4
 Read Address Field GSF-139
 Read and Clear Error Byte command
 GSF-192
 Read Available Character Sets
 command GSF-193
 Read Available Keyboard Layouts
 command GSF-193
 READ BLOCK call CTR-126, CTR-
 132-133
 READ call CTR-127, GSF-132-133,
 P16-24, P16-42, P16-44, P16-85,
 P16-139
 description of P16-141-142
 Read Configuration Bytes command
 GSF-192

Read Microcontroller Memory
 command GSF-191
 Read Modes Byte command GSF-191
 read next GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-33
 Read RAM GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-31
 Read Register GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-29
 READ subroutine ETR-40, ETR-225
 READ tape command ETR-113-114
 read-only memory GSF-20
 read/write Data register GSH-150
 ReadAbs GSTR-3-16
 readADBErroR GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
 ReadASCIITime GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-16
 readAvailCharSet GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
 readAvailLayout GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
 READBLOCK UniDisk 3.5 #4, GSF-5, GSF-126
 ReadBParam GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-13
 ReadBRam GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-10
 ReadChar GSTR-23-7, GSTR-23-29, GSTR-23-30, GSTR-23-40
 readConfig GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
 ReadConfigRec GSTR-3-29
 ReadData GSF-146
 ReadDir routine ProDOS #17
 READDIS Iie #5
 reading files PI-211-214
 reading
 directory files P16-265-266
 disks, DOS 3.3 and Pascal P16-284
 files P16-24, P16-272
 ReadKeyMicroData GSTR-3-17
 ReadKeyMicroMemory GSTR-3-18
 ReadLine GSTR-23-30-31
 readMicroMem GSTR-3-28
 readModes GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
 READMOUSE GSF-183, GSF-203, GSF-209, GSF-212
 ReadMouse GSTR-14-34, Iic #1, Mouse #1, #3, CTR-188, CTR-192, CTR-193
 readNext GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 readRAM GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 ReadRamBlock GSTR-21-24
 readRegister GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 ReadTime call (Miscellaneous Tool Set) P16-80
 ReadTimeHex GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-14
 readVersionNum GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
 READ_BLOCK ProDOS #17, P16-42, P16-44, P16-284
 description of P16-157-158
 real font GSTR-8-7
 real variable storage
 Miscellaneous #9
 real-time clock GSH-3, GSH-54, GSH-77, GSH-159-160, GST-26, GST-65
 and peripheral cards GST-28
 Apple IIGS Monitor instructions GST-49
 Control Panel GST-47
 interrupts GST-55
 specifications GST-4
 reallocation of memory GSTR-12-43, GSTR-12-44
 ReAllocHandle GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-41
 realOnlyBit GSTR-8-11, GSTR-8-50
 rebooting IIGS #49
 recCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-39, GSTR-4-40
 Receive Bytes command GSF-194
 Recharge routine GSF-97, GSF-98, GST-38, IIGS #16
 records P16-187, P16-231, P16-297
 cINTERSEG P16-187, P16-298
 cRELOC P16-187, P16-297
 DS P16-187, P16-297
 END P16-298
 INTERSEG P16-187, P16-189, P16-195-196, P16-297
 LCONST P16-187, P16-297
 RELOC P16-187-188, P16-297
 SUPER P16-187, P16-298
 recSize GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-86
 RECT GSTR-xxx, GSTR-16-22
 rectangle GSTR-16-22-23, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-86, GSTR-6-91, GSTR-16-97, GSTR-16-104, GSTR-16-162, GSTR-16-167, GSTR-16-176, GSTR-16-182, GSTR-16-184, GSTR-16-193, GSTR-16-203, GSTR-16-204, GSTR-16-208, GSTR-16-209, GSTR-16-247, GSTR-16-248, GSTR-16-271, GSTR-25-80, GSTR-25-89, GSTR-25-131, PI-87, PI-89
 data structure PI-90
 origin of PI-82
 RectInRgn GSTR-16-203
 RectRgn GSTR-16-204
 recursive ProDOS #17
 red320 GSTR-16-275
 red640 GSTR-16-274
 redirecting output IIGS #31
 redMask GSTR-16-274
 redraw routine GSTR-13-64-65
 reduction GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13, GSTR-15-48
 reentrant code GST-70, GSTR-18-10, GSTR-19-1, GSTR-19-3, PI-182
 RefCon IIGS #38
 reference manuals GST-106-111
 reference number (ref_num). See file reference number
 RefreshDesktop GSTR-25-91, GSTR-25-135, IIGS #4, PI-45
 refreshing RAM GST-14
 refreshing the display ETR-170-171
 REGDSP GSF-235
 region GSTR-16-25, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-74, GSTR-16-75, GSTR-16-78, GSTR-16-79, GSTR-16-84, GSTR-16-87, GSTR-16-92, GSTR-16-98, GSTR-16-105, GSTR-16-163, GSTR-16-168, GSTR-16-171, GSTR-16-172, GSTR-16-177, GSTR-16-181, GSTR-16-185, GSTR-16-187, GSTR-16-194, GSTR-16-203, GSTR-16-204, GSTR-16-210, GSTR-16-218, GSTR-16-223, GSTR-16-248, GSTR-16-272, GSTR-16-273, GSTR-25-81, GSTR-25-132, PI-87, PI-91
 defined PI-112
 register GSTR-2-7
 register addresses, mouse GSF-200
 register variables GST-102
 register-display command GSF-22
 register-modification commands GSF-38
 registers CTR-18-19, ETR-146, ETR-161, GSF-8, GSF-12-18, GSF-35-38, GST-13-14, GST-48-49, GST-83, P16-64, P16-224, PI-4, PI-66, PI-283
 A register ETR-146
 accumulator ETR-138, ETR-148, P16-77-78, P16-104, P16-209, P16-213
 changing CTR-213
 command CTR-280
 control CTR-278-279
 data bank P16-104
 direct P16-70, P16-77-79, P16-104
 examining CTR-213, GSF-60
 examining and changing ETR-110-111, GSF-36-38
 hardware P16-64
 index ETR-138
 initializing P16-81, P16-209
 processor status P16-64, P16-105

program bank P16-104
 program counter P16-104
 restoring GSF-66
 shift CTR-263,CTR-268
 Smartport CTR-125
 stack pointer P16-75, P16-77-79, P16-104
 status CTR-18,CTR-130,CTR-213,CTR-281
 transmit/receive CTR-282
 values on entry and exit from call P16-104, P16-213
 X register ETR-146, P16-64, P16-104, P16-208
 Y register ETR-146, P16-64, P16-104, P16-208
 relation to QuickDraw II PI-75, PI-77, PI-79, PI-286-287
 relative address calculation, mini-assembler GST-50
 relative addressing ETR-121, ETR-126, ETR-137
 RELOAD segments PI-200, PI-207, PI-259
 Reload segments. See segment(s)
 reloading applications. See application(s)
 RELOC records P16-187-188, P16-297
 relocatable code GST-62, PI-23, PI-24, PI-196, PI-197, PI-226-227, PI-291, PI-295
 APW Linker GST-104
 relocatable segments GST-100, GST-101
 APW Assembler support GST-101
 See segment(s)
 relocation dictionaries GST-101, P16-187-188, P16-195, P16-201
 APW Linker GST-104
 relocation dictionary PI-228
 REMIN command CTR-169
 REMOUT command CTR-169
 RemoveDItem GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-76
 RENAME call P16-277
 renaming files. See file(s)
 repeat delay GSTR-7-3
 repeat speed GSTR-7-3
 reply record GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-31, GSTR-22-32
 Request to Send (RTS) CTR-280
 requests. See calls; system calls
 required tool sets PI-62-63
 RESERVED GSF-156
 reserved memory GSTR-12-3
 reserved memory pages ETR-77-81
 reserved pages GSH-28

 Reset CTR-3,CTR-4,CTR-81,CTR-358, ETR-11, ETR-14, ETR-228, GSF-177, GSF-178, GSF-234, IIGS #49, Memory Expansion Card #1
 Reset ADB command GSF-194, GSTR-3-21, GSTR-3-28
 Reset command GSH-131
 Reset Keyboard Microcontroller command GSF-188
 reset routine CTR-49-50, ETR-94-98 and bank switches ETR-83
 differences in Apple II family ETR-230
 Reset signal GSH-131
 Reset the System command GSF-193
 reset vector ETR-96-97, CTR-50-53
 reset, interrupts GST-55
 ResetAlertStage GSTR-6-76
 ResetHook GSF-140
 resetKbd GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 ResetMark GSF-141
 ResetMember GSTR-11-21
 resetSys GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 resident desk accessories GST-3, GST-46, GST-67, GST-89
 resolution. See screen resolution
 Resource Manager GST-60, GST-61
 resources (Macintosh) PI-285
 RestAll GSTR-5-21
 Restart PI-200, P16-201, P16-209
 Restart call (System Loader)
 description of P16-225-227
 restart-from-memory flag P16-168, PI-202
 restartability, C and PI-259
 restartable PI-197, PI-200, PI-259
 restarting programs in memory PI-199-200
 restarting. See application(s)
 RESTORE GSF-254
 RestoreBufDims GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-61, GSTR-16-205
 RestoreHandle GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-42
 RestoreTextState GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-16
 RestScrn GSTR-5-21
 result, definition of P16-102, P16-213
 resultID GSTR-8-10, GSTR-8-51
 resultStats GSTR-8-10, GSTR-8-51
 Resume command GSF-50, GSF-179
 Return CTR-4,CTR-60,CTR-169,CTR-204,CTR-206,CTR-208,CTR-209,CTR-213,CTR-215,CTR-224,CTR-227
 return address GST-33

 return flag (QUIT call) P16-61, P16-82, P16-168, PI-202
 return from subroutine (RTS) CTR-57,CTR-219, GSF-49, GSF-65, GST-33
 return from subroutine long (RTL) GSF-14
 Return key GST-42, GSTR-4-14, GSTR-6-5, GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-25, GSTR-6-37
 Return Monitor command ETR-127
 retype CTR-63
 retype function ETR-64
 Retype key GSF-75
 revising ProDOS 8 applications for ProDOS 16 P16-86-89. See also application(s); ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16; programming
 Revision B motherboard Iie #3
 RF modulator ETR-7
 rfFamNum GSTR-16-142, GSTR-16-278
 rfFamStyle GSTR-16-142, GSTR-16-278
 rffBRExtent GSTR-16-142, GSTR-16-278
 rffFontHandle GSTR-16-142, GSTR-16-278
 rfNamePtr GSTR-16-142, GSTR-16-278
 rfSize GSTR-16-142, GSTR-16-278
 RGB CTR-269
 RGB monitor GSH-57, GSH-59
 RGB video GSH-66, GST-19, PI-2, PI-7
 colored text display GST-20
 connector GSH-6
 specifications GST-3
 Super Hi-Res graphics GST-21-24
 Video Graphics Controller (VGC) GST-76
 RGB-type monitor ETR-185
 rgnAlreadyOpen GSTR-16-187, GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
 rgnFull GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
 RgnHandle IIGS #10
 rgnNotOpen GSTR-16-74, GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
 rgnSave GSTR-16-140, GSTR-16-249
 rgnScanOverflow GSTR-16-278, GSTR-B-3
 Right Arrow CTR-4,CTR-63,CTR-82, ETR-64, GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
 right bracket (]) as prompt character ETR-62
 right scroll bar GSTR-25-6, PI-110, PI-111

rightFlag GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-72,
 GSTR-4-85
 ringBuffOfFlo GSTR-23-16, GSTR-23-
 47, GSTR-B-4
 rollover, N-key ETR-10
 ROM CTR-13, PI-9, PI-18. See also
 memory
 ROM (Apple IIc or IIe) P16-34
 ROM (Apple IIGS) P16-32, P16-45-
 46. See also memory
 expansion card P16-45-46
 routines in P16-xix, P16-6
 tool sets P16-33, P16-52-53
 ROM (read-only memory) GSF-20
 ROM 2.0 (IIGS) IIGS #26
 ROM disk GSF-17, GSF-110, GSF-114,
 GSF-117, GSF-234
 driver GSF-152-155
 passing parameters GSF-152-153
 ROM for GSF-154-155
 ROM expansion PI-5
 ROM font GSTR-8-1, GSTR-8-19,
 GSTR-16-141
 ROM font record GSTR-16-142,
 GSTR-16-278
 ROM map
 auxiliary side CTR-398
 main side CTR-397
 ROM memory. See memory
 ROM space
 expansion CTR-74
 port CTR-73
 ROM tool set GSTR-1-1, GSTR-2-3
 ROM
 addresses CTR-22-23, CTR-351-352
 addressing CTR-249-250, ETR-168-
 169
 Apple IIGS specifications GST-3
 Applesoft ROM GST-4, GST-5
 Autostart CTR-356
 character generator CTR-14, CTR-
 266, CTR-267
 expansion ETR-133-135, GST-15,
 GST-18
 Fast Processor Interface (FPI) GST-
 75, GST-77
 interpreter ETR-5
 interrupt vectors GST-54
 keyboard ETR-5
 memory address (Apple II) GST-16
 memory maps GST-78-80
 Monitor CTR-356
 Monitor listings ETR-307-347
 Monitor program GST-4, GST-5,
 GST-48
 peripheral-card CTR-352
 RAM refresh and programs in ROM
 GST-14
 resident desk accessories GST-46
 slot ROM space GST-30-31
 space for peripheral cards ETR-
 133-135
 system ROM GST-54
 tool sets in GST-63
 Toolbox routines GST-58
 tools resident in GST-7
 video ETR-5
 ROMEN1 CTR-250, ETR-168-169
 ROMEN2 CTR-250, ETR-168-169
 ROMlevel byte Miscellaneous #2
 rounded result GSTR-9-3
 rounded-corner rectangle GSTR-16-
 23, GSTR-16-93, GSTR-16-99,
 GSTR-16-106, GSTR-16-169,
 GSTR-16-195, PI-87, PI-90
 routine number GSTR-D-1-9
 routines (HodgePodge) PI-35, PI-59-
 60, PI-303-304. See also specific
 routine
 routines (tool set) PI-17. See also
 specific routine
 how to call PI-65-67
 routine numbers PI-66, PI-274
 routines
 adding to ProDOS 16 P16-93-97
 Apple IIGS Toolbox P16-9
 file-copying P16-84
 interrupt. See interrupt handlers
 library P16-xv, P16-70, P16-80
 names of, typographic convention
 for P16-xxi
 program selection (PQUIT) P16-59
 ROM P16-xix, P16-6
 total number of PI-62
 routines. See also interrupt handlers;
 libraries
 row-address strobe (RAS) CTR-252
 rPage GSTR-15-11, GSTR-15-38,
 GSTR-15-48
 rPaper GSTR-15-10, GSTR-15-11,
 GSTR-15-47
 RS-232 device compatibility GST-33,
 GST-34
 RS-422 driver GST-6, GST-33
 RSHIMEM ProDOS #9
 RstVbl switch CTR-190
 RstXInt switch CTR-189, CTR-242
 RstXY switch CTR-189
 RstYInt switch CTR-190, CTR-242
 RT128: Pascal #10
 RT48: Pascal #10
 RT64: Pascal #10
 RTBL GSF-235
 RTBOOTLOAD.CODE Pascal #10
 RTBSTND.BOOT Pascal #10
 RTBSTRP.BOOT Pascal #10
 RTI PI-269, ProDOS #12
 RTL IIGS #1, PI-260, PI-261, PI-262,
 PI-265, GSF-14
 RTS (Return from Subroutine) CTR-
 57, CTR-219, GSF-49, GSF-65,
 GST-33
 RTS, Request to Send CTR-280
 RTSETMODE.CODE Pascal #10
 RTSTND.APPLE Pascal #10
 RTSTRP.APPLE Pascal #10
 run-time libraries. See libraries
 Run-Time Systems Pascal #10
 runAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-8,
 GSTR-5-30
 running man Mouse #6

S

S command CTR-157, CTR-171
 S register CTR-18, CTR-213, GSF-11,
 GSF-35. See registers
 sample programs, See also
 HodgePodge; programming
 examples
 sample-and-hold circuit with DOC
 GST-25
 SANE (Standard Apple Numeric
 Environment) GST-59, GST-68,
 GST-111, IIGS #7, #8, PI-xix-xx
 SANE direct page GSTR-18-6, GSTR-
 18-9
 SANE Tool Set GSTR-xGSTR-xviii,
 GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-14, GSTR-18-
 1-15
 shutdown routine GSTR-18-13
 startup routine GSTR-18-12
 status routine GSTR-18-14
 using GSTR-18-3-6
 version number routine GSTR-18-
 13
 SANEBootInit GSTR-18-11
 SANEDecStr816 GSTR-18-2, GSTR-
 18-15
 SANEElems816 GSTR-18-2, GSTR-18-
 15
 SANEF-816 GSTR-18-2, GSTR-18-15
 SANEReset GSTR-18-14
 SANEShutDown GSTR-18-3, GSTR-
 18-13
 SANEStartUp GSTR-18-3, GSTR-18-12
 SANEStatus GSTR-18-14
 SANEVersion GSTR-18-13
 sanFran GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 sapling files P16-29, P16-262, P16-
 268, P16-270-271
 SAVE GSF-254
 Save As command (File menu) PI-32
 Save command (File menu) PI-50

Save File dialog box GSTR-22-3,
 GSTR-22-4, GSTR-22-8, GSTR-
 22-27, GSTR-22-30
 SaveAll GSTR-5-22
 SaveBufDims GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-
 61, GSTR-16-206
 SaveBufDims record GSTR-16-206
 SaveOne PI-164, PI-165, PI-213
 SaveScrn GSTR-5-22
 SaveTextState GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-
 16, GSTR-24-17-18
 SaveTextState record GSTR-24-18
 saving files PI-164
 scADBAddr GSTR-3-29
 sCalcRgns GSTR-25-25
 scale record GSTR-3-23, GSTR-3-24,
 GSTR-3-29
 scaled fonts PI-287
 ScalePt GSTR-16-207
 ScaleRec GSTR-3-29
 scales fonts, defined PI-96
 scaling GSTR-8-7, GSTR-8-23, GSTR-
 8-44
 scan line GSH-54, GSH-86
 scan line control byte (SCB) GSTR-2-
 2, GSTR-16-13, GSTR-16-34,
 GSTR-16-127, GSTR-16-143,
 GSTR-16-145, GSTR-16-211,
 GSTR-16-213, GSTR-16-228,
 GSTR-16-231, GSTR-16-250,
 GSTR-16-275
 scan line interrupt GSTR-16-230,
 IIGS #39, GSF-180
 scan line, control bytes GSH-86-88,
 PI-80, PI-100
 scanLineInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
 SCB. See scan line control byte
 scbColorMode GSTR-16-275
 scbFill GSTR-16-275
 scbInterrupt GSTR-16-275
 scbReserved GSTR-16-275
 SCC (Serial Communications
 Controller) GST-33, GST-39,
 IIGS #18
 SCCAREG IIGS #49
 sccIntFlag GSTR-14-66
 sccIntHnd GSTR-14-67
 SchAddTask GSTR-19-3, GSTR-19-7
 SchBootInit GSTR-19-4
 Scheduler GST-70, GSTR-1-4, GSTR-
 1-14, GSTR-5-3, GSTR-19-1-8,
 IIGS #16, P16-71, P16-96, PI-22,
 PI-182-183
 shutdown routine GSTR-19-5
 startup routine GSTR-19-4
 status routine GSTR-19-6
 using GSTR-19-2-3
 version number routine GSTR-19-5
 Scheduler queue GSTR-19-3, GSTR-
 19-7
 Scheduler
 schematic diagram ETR-201-204
 SchFlush GSTR-19-3, GSTR-19-8
 SchReset GSTR-19-6
 SchShutDown GSTR-19-2, GSTR-19-5
 SchStartUp GSTR-19-2, GSTR-19-4
 SchStatus GSTR-19-6
 SchVersion GSTR-19-5
 scLayoutOrLang GSTR-3-29
 scLnDisable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-
 67
 scLnEnable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 scLnIntHnd GSTR-14-67
 scrap count GSTR-20-5, GSTR-20-11
 Scrap Manager GSF-180, GST-59,
 GST-71, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-15,
 GSTR-10-45, GSTR-20-1-19, PI-
 21, PI-64, PI-158, PI-159-161,
 PI-264
 constants GSTR-20-19
 error codes GSTR-20-19
 shutdown routine GSTR-20-8
 startup routine GSTR-20-7
 status routine GSTR-20-9
 using GSTR-20-4-5
 version number routine GSTR-20-8
 scrap
 LineEdit GSTR-20-5
 private GSTR-20-5-6
 See also desk scrap
 ScrapBootInit GSTR-20-7
 ScrapReset GSTR-20-9
 ScrapShutDown GSTR-20-4, GSTR-
 20-8, PI-58
 ScrapStartUp GSTR-20-4, GSTR-20-7,
 PI-46
 ScrapStatus GSTR-20-9
 ScrapVersion GSTR-20-8
 Screen Color register GSH-76
 screen dump, 80-column
 Miscellaneous #1
 screen holes GSTR-5-4, GSTR-5-21,
 GSTR-5-22, CTR-38, CTR-312-
 315, GSF-203, GSH-31, GSH-45,
 GSH-177, GST-32, GST-39
 Memory Expansion Card #1,
 IIC #1, #6
 auxiliary memory CTR-315
 main memory CTR-313-314
 mouse CTR-196-197
 serial port 1 CTR-160-161
 serial port 2 CTR-174-175
 screen memory GSTR-16-71, PI-76,
 PI-79
 screen resolution GSTR-13-63, GSTR-
 15-15, GSTR-25-135
 screenReserved GSTR-16-64, GSTR-
 16-278, GSTR-B-3
 screenTable GSTR-16-107
 scRepeatDelay GSTR-3-29
 SCRN GSF-79, GSF-228, CTR-
 113, CTR-115, ETR-68, ETR-225
 SCROLL GSF-243
 scroll bar. See also dialog scroll bar
 GSTR-4-5-7, GSTR-4-10, GSTR-
 4-20, GSTR-25-9-10, GSTR-25-
 62, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-88,
 GSTR-25-95, GSTR-25-105,
 GSTR-25-106, PI-72, PI-110, PI-
 112, PI-117, PI-126, PI-129 PI-
 288, PI-289
 bottom GSTR-25-6
 control record GSTR-4-20-22
 right GSTR-25-6
 scrollbarItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-
 12, GSTR-6-88
 scrolling PI-73, PI-112, PI-117-120
 scrolling in terminal emulation GST-
 37
 scrollLineDown GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-
 88
 scrollLineUp GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88
 scrollPageDown GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-
 88
 scrollPageUp GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88
 scrollProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-21,
 GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
 ScrollRect GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-
 208, PI-117, PI-118
 scrollThumb GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88
 SCSI (Small Computer System
 Interface) GSF-115
 SCSI card SmartPort #5
 SCSI interface card GST-6
 SDivide GSTR-9-38
 SEARCH command ETR-110
 Search utility (APW) PI-224
 sectors P16-43, P16-254, P16-282,
 P16-284
 SectRect GSTR-16-209
 SectRgn GSTR-16-210
 seedling files P16-29, P16-268, P16-
 270
 Seek GSF-139, GSF-147
 segLoader1Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-
 14-70, GSTR-B-1
 segLoader2Err GSTR-14-56, GSTR-
 14-70, GSTR-B-2
 segment jump table GST-96
 segment(s)
 absolute P16-182-183, P16-186
 alignment factor P16-299
 bank-aligned P16-299

direct-page/stack P16-76, P16-78, P16-186, P16-224
 dynamic P16-182-183, P16-185-186, P16-193, P16-196, P16-204-205, P16-224, P16-228, P16-245
 header fields P16-186, P16-299
 initialization P16-184, P16-224, P16-227
 Jump Table. See System Loader
 KIND field P16-186, P16-193, P16-224, P16-296
 libraries P16-70, P16-79
 load P16-71, P16-76, P16-183, P16-185-186, P16-195, P16-230
 load numbers P16-298
 locking P16-207
 main P16-298
 Memory Segment Table. See System Loader data tables
 object P16-76
 page-aligned P16-299
 pathname P16-184, P16-199, P16-200, P16-298
 position-independent P16-183, P16-185, P16-186
 purgeable P16-77-78, P16-183, P16-185-186, P16-207, P16-231
 Reload P16-225, P16-227, P16-297
 relocatable P16-182-183, P16-186-189
 run-time libraries P16-206
 static P16-15, P16-77, P16-183, P16-193, P16-204, P16-224, P16-298
 unloading P16-207
 unlocked P16-207
 segmentation PI-23-25, PI-228, PI-230-238, PI-284, PI-219-254
 absolute PI-24
 direct-page/stack PI-204
 dynamic PI-25, PI-195
 maximum segment size PI-23
 object PI-230-231
 relocatable PI-24
 static PI-25, PI-195
 segmented programming P16-xix
 debugging PI-249
 segments IIGS #22
 select signals GST-28, GST-29
 selection mode GSTR-11-12
 selection range GSTR-6-78, GSTR-10-4, GSTR-10-7-8, GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-11
 SelectIText GSTR-6-77-78
 SelectMember GSTR-11-22
 selectOnlyOne GSTR-11-25
 Selector conventions ProDOS #14
 SelectWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-36, GSTR-25-79, GSTR-25-92, GSTR-25-124, GSTR-25-126, PI-114
 self-booting applications PI-257-258, PI-257-258
 self-test ETR-14, ETR-98
 differences in Apple II family ETR-230
 SellText GSTR-6-24
 Send ADB Keycode command GSF-193
 Send command GSF-97
 SendBehind GSTR-25-93
 SendInfo GSTR-3-4, GSTR-3-5, GSTR-3-6, GSTR-3-19-22, GSTR-7-24, GSTR-7-25
 SendQueue GSF-97, GSF-98, GSF-103, IIGS #16
 SendReset GSF-6
 sequencer (Note Sequencer) PI-177
 sequential-access devices. See device(s)
 SerFlag IIGS #18
 serial buffering CTR-343-344
 Serial Card Miscellaneous #3
 serial cards CTR-361-362
 Serial Communications Controller (SCC) GST-33, GST-39, GSH-151, GSH-152-155
 Command register GSH-152-153, GSH-266
 data register GSH-152-153, GSH-266
 interrupt flag GSTR-14-21
 serial firmware IIGS #13, #18
 serial I/O CTR-274-282, CTR-361-362
 serial I/O ports
 Apple II family GST-5, GST-33-37
 Apple IIGS GST-33, GST-37-39
 I/O commands summarized GST-35-36
 in Macintosh GST-6
 specifications GST-4
 serial I/O, buffers CTR-362
 serial interface Iie #7
 serial port CTR-361-362, GSH-5, GSH-150-155, GSH-173
 circuits CTR-275
 connector signals CTR-278
 connectors CTR-278
 serial port-1 CTR-22, CTR-154-165
 addresses CTR-323
 at startup CTR-159
 carriage return and line feed CTR-164
 characteristics CTR-154, CTR-161-165
 data format and baud rate CTR-163
 displaying output CTR-165
 hardware page locations CTR-159
 I/O firmware support CTR-160
 screen holes CTR-160-161
 sending special characters CTR-165
 using CTR-155-158
 serial port-2 CTR-22, CTR-38, CTR-167-184
 addresses CTR-324
 at startup CTR-173
 carriage return and line feed CTR-179
 characteristics CTR-168-169, CTR-176-184
 commands CTR-170-172
 data format and baud rate CTR-177-178
 hardware page locations CTR-173-174
 I/O firmware support CTR-174
 routing input and output CTR-179-184
 screen holes CTR-174-175
 using CTR-169-173
 serial ports PI-2, PI-8, PI-9. See also I/O
 serial ports, routines for P16-xix
 serial-port firmware GSF-5, GSF-81-108
 background printing GSF-97-98
 buffering GSF-95-96
 compatibility GSF-82
 error handling GSF-95
 extended interface GSF-99
 handshaking GSF-84-85
 interrupt notification GSF-96-97
 operating commands GSF-86-92
 operating modes GSF-83
 programming GSF-92-94
 serial-port interrupts GSF-180, GSF-183-184
 SERVEMOUSE GSF-202, GSF-209, GSF-212
 ServeMouse GSTR-14-34, GSTR-14-35, Mouse #1, #4, CTR-187, CTR-188, CTR-193, CTR-339
 service request (ADB) GSH-139
 Service Request signal GSH-132
 Set Configuration Bytes command GSF-190
 Set Modes command GSF-189
 SetAbsClamp GSTR-7-27, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-37
 SetAbsScale GSTR-3-15, GSTR-3-23
 SetAddress GSF-143
 SetAllSCBs GSTR-16-211
 SetArcRot GSTR-16-212

SetBackColor GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-213
 SetBackColor PI-43, PI-94, PI-143
 SetBackPat GSTR-16-214
 SetBarColors GSTR-13-41, GSTR-13-67, GSTR-13-69-70
 SetBufDims GSTR-16-58-59, GSTR-16-215-216
 SetCharExtra GSTR-16-51, GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-217
 SetClip GSTR-6-7, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-218
 SetClipHandle GSTR-16-219
 SETCOL GSF-79, GSF-225, GSF-226, GSF-228, CTR-113, CTR-115, ETR-68, ETR-225
 SetColorEntry GSTR-16-220
 SetColorTable GSTR-16-221
 setConfig GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 SetConfigRec GSTR-3-29
 SetContentDraw GSTR-25-94
 SetContentOrigin GSTR-25-95, IIGS #47
 SetContentOrigin2 GSTR-25-96
 SetCtlAction GSTR-4-74, GSTR-11-11
 SetCtlIcons GSTR-4-11, GSTR-4-75
 SetCtlParams GSTR-4-6, GSTR-4-76, GSTR-11-11, PI-127
 SetCtlRefCon GSTR-4-77
 SetCtlTitle GSTR-4-78, GSTR-11-11
 SetCtlValue GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-79, GSTR-4-84, GSTR-11-11
 SetCursor GSTR-16-222
 SetDAFont GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-79, PI-141
 SetDAStrPtr GSTR-5-23-25
 SetDataSize GSTR-25-97, IIGS #47
 SetDefButton GSTR-6-80
 SetDefProc GSTR-25-98
 SetDeskPat GSTR-25-41, GSTR-25-139
 SetDesktop GSTR-25-41, GSTR-25-139
 SetDItemBox GSTR-6-81
 SetDItemType GSTR-6-82
 SetDItemValue GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-83
 SetDTR GSF-105
 SetEmptyRgn GSTR-16-223
 SetErrGlobals GSTR-23-5, GSTR-23-32
 SetErrorDevice GSTR-23-6, GSTR-23-33
 SetEventMask GSTR-7-45
 SetFont GSTR-8-16, GSTR-16-224
 SetFontFlags GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-225-226, PI-105
 SetFontID GSTR-8-16, GSTR-16-227
 SetForeColor GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-228, PI-43, PI-94, PI-143
 SetFrameColor GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-99-100
 SETGR GSF-236
 SetGrafProcs GSTR-16-229, IIGS #34
 SetHandleSize GSTR-12-43
 SetHeartBeat GSTR-7-23, GSTR-14-48-51
 SetHook GSF-138-139
 SetInBuffer GSF-95, GSF-102
 SetInfoDraw GSTR-25-101
 SetInfoRefCon GSTR-25-102
 SetInGlobals GSTR-23-5, GSTR-23-34
 SetInputDevice GSTR-23-5, GSTR-23-35-36
 SETINTC3ROM GS/OS #2
 SetInterleave GSF-141
 SetIntInfo GSF-96, GSF-106, GSF-184
 SetIntUse GSTR-16-230
 SETINV GSF-251, ETR-225
 SetIText GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-84
 SETKBD GSF-251
 SetMark GSF-140-141
 SetMasterSCB GSTR-16-231
 SetMaxGrow GSTR-25-103
 SetMenuBar GSTR-13-71
 SetMenuFlag GSTR-13-72, PI-154, PI-155
 SetMenuID GSTR-13-16, GSTR-13-73
 SetMenuTitle GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-74
 SetMItem GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-75
 SetMItemBlink GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-76
 SetMItemFlag GSTR-13-15, GSTR-13-77-78
 SetMItemID GSTR-13-16, GSTR-13-79
 SetMItemMark GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-80
 SetMItemName GSTR-13-81
 SetMItemStyle GSTR-13-6
 SetMItem PI-165
 SetMItemID PI-155
 SetModeBits GSF-95, GSF-97, GSF-100-101
 setModes GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 SETMOUSE GSF-209, GSF-211, GSTR-14-34, GSTR-14-36, IIC #1, Mouse #3, #4, CTR-192, CTR-193, CTR-339
 SetMTitleStart GSTR-13-82, IIGS #5, PI-47
 SetMTitleWidth GSTR-13-83
 SETNORM GSF-251, ETR-225
 SetOrigin GSTR-10-11, GSTR-15-22, GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-232, GSTR-25-21, GSTR-25-31, GSTR-25-116
 SetOriginMask GSTR-25-104, PI-124
 SetOutBuff IIGS #16
 SetOutBuffer GSF-95, GSF-97, GSF-102
 SetOutGlobals GSTR-23-5, GSTR-23-37
 SetOutputDevice GSTR-23-6, GSTR-23-38
 SetPage GSTR-25-105
 setParams GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-38, GSTR-4-86
 SetPenMask GSTR-16-233
 SetPenMode GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-234-235, GSTR-16-259, PI-17
 SetPenPat GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-236
 SetPenSize GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-237, PI-17
 SetPenState GSTR-16-238, IIGS #44
 SetPicSave GSTR-16-239
 SetPolySave GSTR-16-240
 SetPort GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-241, GSTR-25-116, PI-97, PI-124, PI-134, PI-143
 SetPortLoc GSTR-16-242
 SetPortRect GSTR-16-243
 SetPortSize GSTR-16-244
 SetPt GSTR-16-245
 SetPurge GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-44
 SetPurgeAll GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-45
 SetPurgeStat GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-49
 SETPWRC GSF-237, CTR-53
 SetRandSeed GSTR-16-202, GSTR-16-246
 SetRect GSTR-16-247, PI-39, PI-40, PI-41, PI-104, PI-122, PI-123, PI-134
 SetRectRgn GSTR-16-248
 SetRgnSave GSTR-16-249
 SetSCC GSF-105
 SetScrapPath GSTR-20-17
 SetScroll GSTR-25-106
 SetSides GSF-141
 SETSLOT3ROM GS/OS #2
 SetSolidBackPat GSTR-16-251
 SetSolidPenPat GSTR-16-252
 SetSoundMIRQV GSTR-21-25
 SetSoundVolume GSTR-21-26
 SetSpaceExtra GSTR-16-51, GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-253, IIGS #34
 SetSwitch GSTR-7-46
 SetSysBar GSTR-13-8, GSTR-13-86
 SetSysField GSTR-16-255
 SetSysFont GSTR-8-19, GSTR-8-39, GSTR-16-256
 SetSysWindow GSTR-25-107

SetTextFace GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-257-258, PI-143
 SetTextMode GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-259-260
 SetTextSize GSTR-16-261
 SetTSPtr GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-19, GSTR-A-6
 SETTXT GSF-236
 SetUpDefault PI-35, PI-41, PI-168
 SetUpMenus PI-35, PI-36, PI-47, PI-158
 SetUpWindows PI-35, PI-41, PI-123
 SetUserField GSTR-16-262
 SetUserSoundIRQV GSTR-21-27
 SETVBLCNTS GSF-209
 SetVector GSTR-7-23, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-53, GSTR-14-61-62, GSTR-14-63, IIGS #1, #18
 SETVID GSF-252
 SetVisHandle GSTR-16-263
 SetVisRgn GSTR-16-264
 SetWAP GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-20, GSTR-A-7, GSTR-A-8
 SetWFrame GSTR-25-108
 SetWindowIcons GSTR-25-15, GSTR-25-109
 SETWND GSF-236
 SETWND2 GSF-237
 SetWRefCon GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-110
 SetWTitle GSTR-25-111, PI-165
 SetZoomRect GSTR-25-112
 description of P16-149
 SET_FILE INFO PI-214, P16-21, P16-86,124, P16-260, P16-264, P16-277
 description of P16-119-122
 SET_LEVEL PI-211, P16-12, P16-25, P16-145
 description of P16-151
 SET_MARK PI-214, P16-23, P16-286
 description of P16-147, P16-20, P16-66, P16-68,165
 description of P16-131-133
 SFAll Caps PI-4 PI-5, GSTR-22-20
 SFBootInit GSTR-22-15
 SFGetFile GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-21-24, PI-162, PI-163
 SFPPGetFile GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-25-26
 SFPPPutFile GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-27-29, GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-30-31
 SFPutFile PI-164, PI-165
 SFReset GSTR-22-18
 SFShutdown GSTR-22-13, GSTR-22-17, GSTR-22-19, PI-58
 SFStartUp GSTR-22-13, GSTR-22-16, GSTR-22-19, PI-45
 SFStatus GSTR-22-19
 SFVersion GSTR-22-18
 Shadow register GSF-16, GSH-17-19, GST-85, GST-86, P16-64
 shadow type style GSTR-16-258, GSTR-17-1, GSTR-17-3
 shadowed rectangle PI-148
 shadowing GSF-308, GSF-310, GSH-13, GSH-16-21, GSH-45, P16-34, P16-64. See also memory display GST-47, GST-78, GST-82, GST-86
 I/O GST-29, GST-54, GST-78, GST-85, GST-90, GST-113
 shadowMask GSTR-16-276
 shape of pixels PI-77, PI-90, PI-284
 Shaston PI-95, GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 shell PI-197
 Shell (APW) GST-8, GST-103-104, P16-82, P16-89, P16-208, PI-199, PI-221-222, PI-259, PI-261
 shell applications P16-208, PI-241, PI-256, PI-259, PI-261-262
 shell identifier PI-261
 shells P16-207, P16-222, P16-225. See also controlling programs
 shftCpsLCas GSTR-14-65
 ShieldCursor IIGS #34
 Shift CTR-5, CTR-81, CTR-255, CTR-358, ETR-11
 Shift key GST-42
 shift register CTR-263, CTR-268
 Shift-Apple-Left Arrow GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
 Shift-Apple-Right Arrow GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
 Shift-key mod ETR-41-42
 Shift-Left Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
 Shift-Option-Left Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
 Shift-Option-Right Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
 Shift-Right Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
 shiftKey GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-10, GSTR-7-51
 Sholes keyboard CTR-6, CTR-358, CTR-367-368, IIC #4
 short circuits ETR-160
 SHORTGRAPHICS module Pascal #15
 ShowControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-56, GSTR-4-80, GSTR-11-11
 ShowCursor GSTR-16-264, PI-44
 ShowDItem GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-62, GSTR-6-81, GSTR-6-85
 ShowFont PI-53, PI-97, PI-105, PI-170
 ShowHide GSTR-25-113
 ShowPen GSTR-16-265, GSTR-17-9, GSTR-17-14
 ShowPleaseWait PI-46, PI-116, PI-134, PI-142
 ShowWindow GSTR-25-99, GSTR-25-113, GSTR-25-114
 shutdown routines
 Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-11
 Control Manager GSTR-4-43
 Desk Manager GSTR-5-10
 Dialog Manager GSTR-6-29
 Event Manager GSTR-7-29
 Font Manager GSTR-8-21
 Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-6
 LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-14
 List Manager GSTR-11-14
 Memory Manager GSTR-12-18
 Menu Manager GSTR-13-31
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-7
 Print Manager GSTR-15-27
 QuickDraw II GSTR-16-66
 QuickDraw II Auxiliary GSTR-17-7
 SANE Tool Set GSTR-18-13
 Scheduler GSTR-19-5
 Scrap Manager GSTR-20-8
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-9
 Standard File Operations Tool Set GSTR-22-17
 Text Tool Set GSTR-23-11
 Tool Locator GSTR-24-5
 Window Manager GSTR-25-33
 ShutDownTools PI-35, PI-58, PI-158
 shutting down PI-197, PI-199-200
 a tool set GSTR-2-4
 HodgePodge PI-57, PI-58-59
 See application(s)
 SI character ETR-54
 signals on expansion slots GST-28
 signals, 6551 CTR-277
 65C02 CTR-305
 65C02 timing ETR-162-163
 auxiliary slot ETR-197-200
 BREAK CTR-163
 character generator CTR-266
 clock CTR-239-241
 disk drive connector CTR-274
 expansion slot ETR-191-197
 game I/O connector ETR-190-191
 GLU CTR-246
 hand controller CTR-199-200, CTR-289, CTR-364
 hand controller connector CTR-287
 IOU CTR-243-244, ETR-166-167

IWM CTR-247
 keyboard CTR-255
 keyboard connector ETR-187-188
 keypad connector ETR-188
 MMU CTR-242, ETR-165
 mouse button CTR-286
 mouse connector CTR-187,CTR-284
 PAL device ETR-167-168
 RAM timing CTR-253, ETR-172
 ROM CTR-250
 serial port connector CTR-278
 speaker connector ETR-189
 synchronization CTR-257
 timing CTR-264-265
 TMG CTR-245
 video connector ETR-186
 video expansion connector CTR-272-273
 video output CTR-270-273
 video timing ETR-180-181, ETR-184
 signature byte ETR-231
 signature bytes UniDisk 3.5 #2
 signature word GSTR-14-50
 signedFlag GSTR-9-42
 simpBRound GSTR-4-85
 simpDropSquare GSTR-4-85
 simple button GSTR-4-14
 control record GSTR-4-14-16
 simpleButton GSTR-4-86
 simpleProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
 simpRound GSTR-4-85
 simpSquare GSTR-4-85
 sine GSTR-9-23
 single mode GSTR-11-12
 single-bit outputs on DIP socket GST-41
 single-character output GST-52
 single-segment, programming examples PI-240-241
 single-wire Shift-key mod ETR-xxiii
 size GSTR-16-43
 size box GSTR-4-4, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-65, GSTR-25-6, GSTR-25-10, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-75, PI-110, PI-111, PI-112, PI-114
 control record GSTR-4-23-24
 size of coordinate plane PI-77
 SizeWindow GSTR-25-77, GSTR-25-115, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-138, IIGS #4, #47, PI-114
 slash (/) GSF-22, GSF-40
 slashes, prefixes and P16-19
 SLOOP GSF-234
 slop rectangle GSTR-4-50, GSTR-25-46
 slopRect GSTR-4-33-34, GSTR-4-88
 slot 3 ETR-49-50, ETR-149-150, ProDOS #15
 firmware ETR-69
 in original Apple IIe ETR-144
 slot 7, color subcarrier GST-28
 slot mapping ProDOS #3
 slot number, finding ETR-137
 slot numbers P16-7, P16-46. See also expansion slots
 ProDOS #21
 slot register GS/OS #2, GSH-172-174
 slot(s) GST-28-33
 allocation in Control Panel GST-46
 I/O space GST-30
 memory GST-29-33
 numbers GST-30, GST-32-33
 ROM space GST-30-31
 signals GST-28
 slot, auxiliary ETR-49-50
 SLOTC3ROM GS/OS #2
 SLOTC3ROM soft switch ETR-50, ETR-143
 SLOTC3ROM switch CTR-354
 SLOTCXROM soft switch ETR-143
 SLOTCXROM switch CTR-354
 Slotmaker chip GST-12
 slots GSF-304, GSH-5, GSH-25, PI-2, PI-6, PI-8-9, PI-166. See also I/O expansion ETR-7, ETR-132-144
 expansion, signals ETR-191-197
 for 80-column text display PI-8
 for mouse PI-9
 slots. See expansion slots
 slow RAM GST-78
 slt1intExt GSTR-14-65
 slt2intExt GSTR-14-65
 slt3intExt GSTR-14-65
 slt4intExt GSTR-14-65
 slt5intExt GSTR-14-65
 slt6intExt GSTR-14-65
 slt7intExt GSTR-14-65
 Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) GSF-115
 SmartPort GSF-110, GSH-143, P16-45-46, ProDOS #20, SmartPort #1
 SmartPort bus GSF-133, GSF-157-165
 SmartPort Bus architecture SmartPort #3
 packet contents GSF-164
 packet format GSF-163
 device-specific GSF-138
 specific to Apple 3.5 disk drive GSF-138-141
 specific to UniDisk 3.5 GSF-142-143
 SmartPort calls GSF-121-137
 SmartPort device types SmartPort #4
 SmartPort devices Miscellaneous #8, ProDOS #21
 SmartPort firmware GSF-5, GSF-17, GSF-113-165, GST-40-41
 SmartPort Interface SmartPort #3
 SmartPort Interface Version SmartPort #2
 SmartPort
 assignment of unit numbers GSF-117-119, GSF-157-158
 bank selector CTR-27
 call parameters GSF-116
 calls CTR-125-148
 commands and parameters CTR-149
 control flow GSF-159-165
 Disk II interactions GSF-158
 dispatch address GSF-115
 display CTR-50,CTR-101-105
 error codes CTR-150-151
 error codes GSF-156
 extended commands GSF-137
 I/O interface CTR-123-124
 issuing a call GSF-120-121
 locating CTR-124
 locating GSF-114-115
 mouse CTR-189-191
 read protocol GSF-161
 slot for PI-9
 soft switches CTR-20,CTR-24
 standard commands GSF-136
 write protocol GSF-162
 smoothing GSTR-15-7, GSTR-15-13, PI-167
 sndAlreadyStrtErr GSTR-21-8, GSTR-21-37, GSTR-B-3
 sndIntHnd GSTR-14-68
 SO character ETR-54
 soft switches GSF-277-290, GSH-12, GSH-35, GSH-39, GSH-146, GSH-158, GSH-181-182, GSH-260-261, GSH-266, GST-93
 auxiliary memory ETR-87, ETR-89, GSH-40
 bank switches ETR-82-86, ETR-88
 differences in Apple II family ETR-230
 display ETR-28-31, GSH-68-70
 I/O memory ETR-142-143
 implemented by IOU ETR-166-167
 implemented by MMU ETR-164
 initializing P16-64, P16-81
 speaker ETR-39
 SOfTEV GSF-259
 Software Licensing PI-279
 compatibility P16-4, P16-10-11. See also ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16

requirements P16-xviii-xix
 standard Apple II P16-34
 software. See also operating
 system(s); RAM disks; system
 disks; system software
 Solid Apple (🍏) CTR-4,CTR-52,CTR-
 81,CTR-200,CTR-221,CTR-
 222,CTR-358, ETR-11, ETR-13,
 ETR-228
 Solid Apple-Control-X CTR-341
 SolidPattern GSTR-16-265
 SortList GSTR-11-8, GSTR-11-11
 SOS operating system PI-215-217
 file system P16-278, P16-284, P16-
 287
 filing calls P16-286
 history of P16-282
 I/O P16-285
 interrupt support P16-288
 memory management P16-287
 sound GSF-303, GSH-96, GSH-110-
 113, IIGS #37
 Sound Control register GSH-98-99,
 GSH-100, GSH-101
 sound expansion connector IIGS #9
 Sound General Logic Unit (Sound
 GLU) GST-12, GST-25, GSTR-
 21-4, GSH-98-101, GSH-101,
 GLU PI-8, PI-175, GLU, registers
 GSH-264
 sound hardware GSTR-21-1, GSTR-
 21-3-5
 sound impedance IIGS #9
 sound interrupt handler GST-69,
 GSTR-21-25
 Sound Manager GST-62, GST-69
 sound oscillator IIGS #11
 sound procedure GSTR-6-22, GSTR-
 6-47
 sound RAM IIGS #23
 sound subsystems GSTR-21-3
 sound synthesizer GSH-7
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-
 15, GSTR-21-1-37, IIGS #11, PI-
 22, PI-176
 constants GSTR-21-36-37
 data structures GSTR-21-37
 error codes GSTR-21-37
 shutdown routine GSTR-21-9
 startup routine GSTR-21-8
 status routine GSTR-21-10
 using GSTR-21-6
 version number routine GSTR-21-9
 sound tools GST-24, GST-60, GST-62
 Sound Tools IIGS #37
 sound waveforms GST-24
 sound
 address calculation GSH-111
 data register GSH-99, GSH-100,
 GSH-101
 stereo GSH-113
 sound/sound hardware PI-2, PI-8,
 PI-9, PI-22, PI-135, PI-174-176.
 See also Note Synthesizer
 SoundBootInit GSTR-21-7
 SoundReset GSTR-21-10
 SoundShutDown GSTR-21-6, GSTR-
 21-9
 SoundStartUp GSTR-21-6, GSTR-21-8
 SoundToolStatus GSTR-21-10
 SoundVersion GSTR-21-9
 source files P16-75. See also file(s),
 PI-26, PI-226-229
 assigning load segments in PI-234-
 236
 sPackage0Err GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-
 70, GSTR-B-1
 sparse files. See file(s)
 SPC command ETR-xxi
 speaker CTR-359, ETR-4, ETR-38-39,
 ETR-189, GSH-97, GSH-101,
 GST-25
 circuit diagram CTR-256
 connector ETR-189
 outputs CTR-82-84
 soft switch ETR-39
 volume control CTR-8,CTR-256
 special character, menu GSTR-13-14-
 15
 special characters CTR-393
 special function keys CTR-4
 special memory GSTR-12-3, GSTR-
 12-12, GSTR-12-13
 PI-187
 special memory. See memory
 specialized tool sets PI-22
 specification
 connector GSTR-xxvi
 language GSTR-xxvii
 mechanical GSTR-xxvi
 65C02 CTR-239
 specifications
 environmental CTR-232
 environmental ETR-158
 power supply CTR-233,CTR-383
 Speed register GSF-16, GSH-20-21
 spExtra GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-51,
 GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-
 16-59, GSTR-16-60, GSTR-16-
 144, GSTR-16-253
 spool printing GSTR-15-14-15, GSTR-
 15-20, GSTR-15-23, GSTR-15-30,
 GSTR-15-37, GSTR-15-38, GSTR-
 15-4, PI-172
 square root GSTR-9-24
 SRQ GSF-180
 SRQ list GSTR-3-3, GSTR-3-5, GSTR-
 3-7, GSTR-3-9, GSTR-3-15,
 GSTR-3-25, GSTR-3-26, GSTR-7-
 24
 srqListFull GSTR-3-25, GSTR-3-29,
 GSTR-B-4
 SRQPoll GSTR-3-25
 SRQRemove GSTR-3-26, GSTR-7-25
 SSC (Apple Super Serial Card) GSF-
 82, IIE #7, Miscellaneous #3
 SSC interrupts IIGS #18
 stack GSF-15, GSH-29, GSH-44,
 GSH-201, GST-13, GST-82, GST-
 84, GST-89, GSTR-2-5, GSTR-5-
 4, PI-4, PI-203, PI-269, PI-284,
 PI-293, PI-296
 stack diagram GSTR-xGSTR-xix
 pseudo-type GSTR-xxx
 stack overflow PI-207
 stack page GSH-38
 stack pointer CTR-18,CTR-213, GSF-
 13-15, GSF-35, GSH-201, GST-
 14, GST-84, PI-203, PI-262, PI-
 269, PI-294
 changing GSF-61, ETR-78, ETR-153
 stack underflow PI-207
 stack(s)
 diagram format (System Loader
 calls) P16-214
 hardware P16-75
 locations, converting ProDOS 8 to
 ProDOS 16 P16-88
 overflow P16-77
 pointer P16-75, P16-77-79, P16-
 104
 quit return stack P16-167
 See also direct page and stack
 stack
 65C02 ETR-78
 auxiliary ETR-153-154
 main ETR-153-154
 overflow GSH-29
 stage byte GSTR-6-21, GSTR-6-33
 standard Apple II PI-4, PI-10, PI-203,
 PI-290, See Apple II family
 compatibility of Apple IIGS with PI-
 9-10, PI-291-292
 defined PI-xxi
 program enhancement PI-290-297
 See Apple II, standard
 Standard Apple Numeric
 Environment (SANE) PI-xix-xx,
 GST-59, GST-68, GST-111
 Standard Apple Numeric
 Environment Tool Set PI-22, PI-
 179-180
 Standard Apple Numeric
 Environment. See SANE

standard color palette
 320 mode GSTR-16-35
 640 mode GSTR-16-36
 standard color table GSTR-16-159
 standard control type value GSTR-4-73
 Standard File IIGS #14
 standard file formats GST-100
 Standard File Operations Tool Set
 GST-71, GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-15,
 GSTR-22-1-32, PI-21, PI-64, PI-162-165,
 PI-288, PI-289
 constants GSTR-22-32
 data structures GSTR-22-32
 shutdown routine GSTR-22-17
 startup routine GSTR-22-16
 status routine GSTR-21-19
 using GSTR-22-13-14
 version number routine GSTR-21-18
 standard files P16-26-27, P16-270. See also file(s)
 format and organization of P16-267
 reading P16-272
 standard filter procedure GSTR-6-25
 standard GrafPort GSTR-16-187
 standard I/O links ETR-51, GST-51-52
 address storage ETR-78
 changing ETR-140-141
 standard I/O. See input/output
 standard linker (APW) PI-223, PI-235, PI-238
 standard menu edit GSTR-5-27
 standard pen state GSTR-16-196
 standard QUIT call (ProDOS 8) P16-60-61
 standard SCB GSTR-16-145
 standard window control GSTR-25-6-7
 standard window parts PI-110
 standardMenu GSTR-13-72, GSTR-13-87
 START PI-257, PI-258
 start bit GSH-128
 START file P16-58, P16-61-62
 StartDrawing GSTR-10-11, GSTR-25-31,
 GSTR-25-116
 StartInfoDrawing GSTR-25-47, GSTR-25-117,
 IIGS #3
 Starting Interpreter conventions
 ProDOS #7
 starting up ETR-267-268
 starting up a tool set GSTR-2-4
 starting up
 HodgePodge PI-38-47, PI-64
 tool sets PI-38-41, PI-42-46, PI-62-67
 STARTTIME GSF-209
 startup CTR-121-123
 startup drives ETR-xx-xxi
 startup file GST-95
 startup order, tool set GSTR-C-6
 startup routines
 Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-10
 Control Manager GSTR-4-42
 Desk Manager GSTR-5-9
 Dialog Manager GSTR-6-28
 Event Manager GSTR-7-27-28
 Font Manager GSTR-8-19-20
 Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-5
 LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-13
 List Manager GSTR-11-13
 Memory Manager GSTR-12-17
 Menu Manager GSTR-13-30
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-6
 Print Manager GSTR-15-26
 QuickDraw II GSTR-16-64-65
 QuickDraw II Auxiliary GSTR-17-6
 SANE Tool Set GSTR-18-12
 Scheduler GSTR-19-4
 Scrap Manager GSTR-20-7
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-8
 Standard File Operations Tool Set
 GSTR-22-16
 Text Tool Set GSTR-23-11
 Tool Locator GSTR-24-4
 Window Manager GSTR-25-32
 startup slot, Control Panel GST-47
 startup. See application(s); system
 startup
 startUpAlreadyMade GSTR-15-49,
 GSTR-B-5
 startupSlT GSTR-14-65
 StartupTools PI-35, PI-36, PI-42, PI-158,
 PI-188
 statcode ProDOS #21
 state record GSTR-24-18
 state register GSH-35-36
 static IIGS #11
 static programs P16-77, P16-204. See
 also System Loader, GST-96,
 GST-101, PI-25, PI-195, PI-196,
 PI-200, PI-232-235
 static segments
 APW Linker GST-104
 See segment(s)
 static text PI-140, PI-141
 statText GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12,
 GSTR-6-17, GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-88
 STATUS ProDOS #20,
 SmartPort #2, #4, #5, #7,
 UniDisk 3.5 #2, #3, #4, CTR-126,
 CTR-128-132, GSF-121-125
 status code error GSF-122
 status list SmartPort #2
 status record, printer GSTR-15-41
 status register GSF-56, GSH-126-127,
 GSH-148-149, P16-105
 ACIA CTR-130, CTR-281
 storage devices. See device(s)
 status routines
 Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-12
 Control Manager GSTR-4-44
 Desk Manager GSTR-5-11
 Dialog Manager GSTR-6-30
 Event Manager GSTR-7-30
 Font Manager GSTR-8-22
 Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-7
 LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-15
 List Manager GSTR-11-15
 Memory Manager GSTR-12-20
 Menu Manager GSTR-13-32
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-8
 Print Manager GSTR-15-28
 QuickDraw II GSTR-16-67
 QuickDraw II Auxiliary GSTR-17-8
 SANE Tool Set GSTR-18-14
 Scheduler GSTR-19-6
 Scrap Manager GSTR-20-9
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-10
 Standard File Operations Tool Set
 GSTR-21-19
 Text Tool Set GSTR-23-14
 Tool Locator GSTR-24-6
 Window Manager GSTR-25-34
 StatusID GSTR-14-60
 StatusTextDev GSTR-23-39
 stdArc IIGS #34
 StdOval IIGS #34
 StdRect IIGS #34
 stdRRect IIGS #34
 STEP command CTR-221-223, GSF-50,
 GSF-66
 step mode (Note Sequencer) PI-178
 STEPVECTOR GSF-271, GSTR-14-68
 stereo expansion cards IIGS #19
 stereo sound GSH-113
 StillDown GSTR-7-47
 stkOvrFlwErr GSTR-14-55, GSTR-14-70,
 GSTR-B-2
 Stop alert GSTR-6-6
 stop bit GSH-128
 stop bits GST-34, GST-35
 stop icon GSTR-6-86
 stop-list feature ETR-55
 stop-list function CTR-67
 stop-sound mask GSTR-21-18-19
 StopAlert GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-86, PI-135,
 PI-309
 stopping mini-assembler GST-50

StopSound GSTR-21-10
 STORADV GSF-240
 storage type field P16-275
 STORE command CTR-216,CTR-227,
 GSF-44
 string bounds rectangle GSTR-16-266
 StringBounds GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-
 56, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-266
 StringWidth GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-
 56, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-267
 strobe bit ETR-13
 strobe on DIP socket GST-41
 strobe output ETR-41, ETR-43
 strobes
 column-address CTR-252
 keyboard CTR-78,CTR-255,CTR-
 339,CTR-353
 outputs CTR-24
 row-address CTR-252
 structure region GSTR-25-9, GSTR-
 25-65, GSTR-25-83, PI-112
 STSBYTE ETR-285
 stupVolMntErr GSTR-14-56, GSTR-
 14-70, GSTR-B-2
 style GSTR-16-43
 style dialog box GSTR-15-1, GSTR-
 15-5-7, GSTR-15-45, PI-167
 style subrecord GSTR-15-12-13
 styled variations (fonts) PI-34, PI-95,
 PI-96
 SUB character ETR-55
 subdirectories P16-7, P16-26, P16-
 53-54, P16-56. See also
 directories
 file entry and P16-84
 files P16-254
 headers P16-259-261
 library P16-80
 SubPt GSTR-16-268
 subroutine conversion IIGS #2
 subroutines PI-230
 directory of ETR-220-226
 output ETR-64-68
 Pascal I/O protocol ETR-68-71
 See also names of subroutines
 standard I/O ETR-46-71
 subroutines. See routines
 substitution string IIGS #48
 subtraction, 32-bit GSF-42
 subtype byte SmartPort #7
 subtype codes SmartPort #7
 Super Hi-Res PI-xviii, PI-2, PI-6-7,
 PI-98, PI-284
 Super Hi-Res display GSF-8, GSF-9-10
 Super Hi-Res graphics GST-6, GST-
 21-24, GST-86
 Super Hi-Res graphics mode GSTR-
 16-31, GSTR-16-155
 display memory GST-87
 linear mapping GST-87
 QuickDraw II GST-60-61, GST-64-
 65
 reference manual GST-110
 shadowing GST-86-88
 specifications GST-3
 Video Graphics Controller (VGC)
 GST-12, GST-76
 Super Hi-Res
 320 mode PI-7, PI-99, PI-101
 640 mode PI-7, PI-99, PI-102
 available colors PI-7, PI-98
 color palettes PI-7
 SUPER records P16-187, P16-298
 Super Serial Card CTR-179,CTR-
 361,CTR-362, ETR-276-291,
 GST-35, GST-39, Ile #7,
 Miscellaneous #3
 Super Serial Card
 command character ETR-278
 commands ETR-278-285
 error codes ETR-285-286
 memory use ETR-287-290
 scratchpad RAM ETR-290-291
 terminal mode ETR-286-287
 Sw0 CTR-287, Ile #9
 Sw1 CTR-287, Ile #9
 SW2 Ile #9
 swap mode GSTR-21-5
 swap pair GSTR-21-5
 swap-mode IIGS #11
 switch 0 ETR-41, ETR-43
 switch 1 ETR-41, ETR-43
 switch event GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-5,
 GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-46, PI-68,
 PI-69, PI-73
 switch input Ile #9
 switch inputs CTR-200, ETR-41-42,
 ETR-43
 switch inputs (SW0 through SW3)
 GSH-157
 switchers P16-207, P16-222, P16-225
 switches See soft switches
 switchEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50, PI-
 69
 switching execution PI-199
 switchMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 symbol GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 symbol table GSF-291, GSF-292
 mini-assembler GST-50
 symbolic reference PI-226, PI-238
 SYN character ETR-54
 Sync command GSF-191
 Sync slot signal GST-28
 synch GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 synchLayoutOrLang GSTR-3-29
 synchMode GSTR-3-29
 SynchRec GSTR-3-29
 synchRepeatDelay GSTR-3-29
 synchronization of clock timing GST-
 77
 synchronization signals CTR-257
 synthesizer interrupt handler GSTR-
 21-27
 synthesizer. See Note Synthesizer;
 sound/sound hardware
 synthesizers GST-24
 synthModeErr GSTR-21-15, GSTR-
 21-37, GSTR-B-3
 SysBeep GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-53
 SysBeep routine (Miscellaneous Tool
 Set) PI-182
 SYSDMGRV GSF-265
 SysFailMgr GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-54-
 56, GSTR-23-8, GSTR-14-67,
 GSTR-23-8, IIGS #33, PI-307
 sysField GSTR-16-146, GSTR-16-255,
 GSTR-16-277
 sysSpeed GSTR-14-65
 sysStrtMtErr GSTR-B-2
 /SYSTEM.DISK GS/OS #1
 /SYSTEM.TOOLS GS/OS #1
 system calls P16-xix, P16-9-13, P16-
 94, P16-98-177. See also calls or
 specific call
 system calls
 call block P16-100
 converting ProDOS 8 to ProDOS 16
 P16-88
 definition of P16-100
 description format P16-106-107
 device calls P16-154-162
 environment calls P16-164-171
 Exerciser disk and P16-290
 file access calls P16-136-152
 file housekeeping calls P16-110-134
 filing calls. See file access calls; file
 housekeeping calls
 interrupt control calls P16-174-177
 interrupt handlers and P16-96
 parameter blocks P16-100-103. See
 also parameter(s)
 practicing with Exerciser P16-290
 ProDOS 16 (new) P16-12
 ProDOS 8 P16-11, P16-105
 ProDOS operating systems GST-95
 register values on entry and exit
 from P16-104
 system call reference P16-98-177
 system clock PI-9
 system configuration GSTR-14-11
 system direct page GSTR-5-4
 SYSTEM directory GSTR-2-3, GSTR-
 5-3, GSTR-5-6, GSTR-8-1, GSTR-
 8-15, GSTR-15-23, GSTR-15-24

- system disk PI-298-301, P16-xix, P16-52-55. See also disks; system startup
 - application PI-300-301
 - complete PI-298-300
 - application P16-52, P16-54-55
- s complete P16-52-53
 - standard Apple II P16-55-56, P16-69
- system event mask GSTR-7-10, GSTR-7-45, PI-70
- System Failure Manager GSTR-14-54, P16-49, P16-72, P16-83, PI-176, PI-181
- system failure message GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-54
- system file (ProDOS 8) P16-12, P16-58, P16-182, P16-224
- system file level P16-25, P16-80, P16-145, P16-151-152, P16-167
- system file levels PI-201, PI-211
- system files GST-95
 - SYS16 suffix GST-97
- system firmware See firmware
- system font GSTR-6-79, GSTR-8-8, GSTR-8-39, GSTR-8-40, GSTR-8-48, GSTR-13-78, GSTR-16-147, GSTR-16-256
- system hardware GST-92-93, GST-109
- system interrupts GSF-175-180
- system library prefix PI-209
- System Loader GST-60, GST-64, GST-80, GST-95, GST-96, GSTR-12-1, GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-44, GSTR-12-45, IIGS #22, P16-33-35, P16-37, P16-52, P16-56, P16-63, P16-77-78, P16-181-301. See also records, PI-22, PI-23, PI-180, PI-195-200, PI-259
- System Loader calls P16-210-250. See also specific call
- S call block P16-213
 - categories of P16-210
 - description format P16-214
 - how calls are made P16-213
 - parameter types P16-213-214. See also memory blocks; parameter(s)
- System Loader data tables P16-192-202
 - Jump Table P16-189, P16-193-198, P16-233
 - diagram of P16-198
 - directory entry P16-194
 - Jump Table Directory P16-193-194, P16-196
 - Jump Table Load call P16-195-196, P16-213, P16-247-248
 - Jump-Table-Loaded flag P16-201, P16-235
 - modification at load time P16-196
 - segment entry P16-194-197, P16-237
 - segments P16-201, P16-298, P16-193-195. See also segment(s)
 - use during execution P16-196-197
 - Mark List P16-201-202
 - Memory Segment Table P16-192-193. See also segment(s)
 - Pathname Table P16-199-201
- System Loader
 - calls. See System Loader calls or specific call
 - controlling program design and P16-207-209. See also controlling programs
 - data tables. See System Loader data tables
 - description of P16-70, P16-182-183
 - dormant state P16-62, P16-168, P16-185, P16-225, P16-233, P16-246
 - dynamic segments and P16-204-205. See also segment(s)
 - entry point P16-35, P16-300
 - errors P16-310-311
 - functions (categorized by caller) P16-210
 - global variables P16-300
 - interface with Memory Manager P16-184-187
 - introduction to P16-70, P16-182-189
 - load-file structure P16-187
 - loading applications PI-198
 - loading relocatable segments P16-187-189
 - loading relocatable segments PI-197
 - memory map of P16-34-35
 - memory requirements of P16-xviii
 - parameters P16-213-214
 - program development GST-100-101
 - program relocation GST-62
 - programming with P16-203-210
 - reference for P16-xix
 - relocation P16-188-189
 - restarting and shutting down applications P16-209-210
 - run-time libraries and P16-205-206
 - segment loading, user control of P16-206-207. See also segment(s)
 - static programs and P16-204
 - technical data P16-295-301
 - terminology P16-183-184
 - types of load segments PI-196
 - version number P16-218-219
- system menu bar GSTR-13-4-5, GSTR-13-30, GSTR-13-55, GSTR-13-63, GSTR-13-66, GSTR-13-68, GSTR-13-71, GSTR-13-86, PI-147
- System Monitor See Monitor, System
 - 40-column mode GSF-25
 - 80-column mode GSF-25-26
 - command syntax GSF-21
 - command types GSF-21-24
 - creating commands GSF-47
 - filling memory GSF-45
 - firmware GSF-4, GSF-19-67
 - invoking GSF-20
 - memory commands GSF-25-34
 - miscellaneous commands GSF-39-43
 - multiple commands GSF-44
 - repeating commands GSF-46
- system prefix (ProDOS 8) P16-66, P16-68-69
- system program (ProDOS 8) P16-12, P16-58, P16-182, P16-224, PI-257
- system resources, managing P16-79-84
- system ROM GST-78
- system software GSH-38, P16-70-72. See also system disks; software memory banks and P16-33 User ID and P16-71
- system speaker GSTR-14-5
- system startup P16-55-59, P16-210
 - boot initialization P16-52, P16-56-57
 - default operating system P16-13
 - device search P16-45-46
 - introduction to P16-55-59
 - Loader initialization P16-215
 - program selection P16-58-59
 - rebooting P16-49
- system tool GSTR-A-1
- system volume GSTR-21-26
- system window GSTR-5-26, GSTR-25-8, GSTR-25-66, GSTR-25-70, GSTR-25-107
 - task codes PI-48, PI-70, PI-74
 - taskData field PI-54, PI-153
- system windows PI-111
- SYSTEM.ATTACH Pascal #10, #16
- SYSTEM.CHARSET Pascal #10
- SYSTEM.LIBRARY Pascal #10, #15
- SYSTEM.MISCINFO Pascal #10
- SYSTEM.PASCAL Pascal #10
- SYSTEM.SETUP/ subdirectory PI-300
- SYSTEM.STARTUP Pascal #10

SystemClick GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-26,
GSTR-25-123, PI-158
SystemEdit GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-27,
GSTR-25-123, PI-158
SystemEvent GSTR-5-28, GSTR-7-40
SystemTask GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-8,
GSTR-5-29, GSTR-25-119
sysTool GSTR-24-26

T

T command CTR-171,CTR-180-183
T02+ Iie #4
T02- Iie #4
Tab CTR-4,CTR-358
TAB command ETR-xxi
with original Apple Iie ETR-271-272
Tab key GSTR-6-11
tabbing ETR-271-272, GSF-92
table320 GSTR-16-274
table640 GSTR-16-274
tables. See interrupt vector table;
System Loader data tables
TABV GSF-237
Tads Iie #4
taliesin GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
Talk GSF-6
talk GSTR-3-28
Talk command (ADB) GSH-130,
GSH-133
task codes PI-48, PI-70, PI-74
task mask GSTR-25-13-14, GSTR-25-
118, PI-74
task record GSTR-13-10, GSTR-25-12-
13, GSTR-25-118, GSTR-25-143
taskData field PI-54, PI-153
taskInstlErr GSTR-14-48, GSTR-14-70,
GSTR-B-2
taskMask bit flag GSTR-25-14
taskMaskErr GSTR-25-118, GSTR-25-
144, GSTR-B-4
TaskMaster GST-60, GST-62, GST-66,
GSTR-4-10, GSTR-5-5, GSTR-5-
20, GSTR-5-26, GSTR-5-29,
GSTR-6-63, GSTR-7-12, GSTR-
10-11, GSTR-13-5, GSTR-13-7,
GSTR-13-9, GSTR-13-10, GSTR-
13-11, GSTR-13-60, GSTR-13-66,
GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-12-15,
GSTR-25-21, GSTR-25-31, GSTR-
25-44, GSTR-25-64, GSTR-25-92,
GSTR-25-118-126, IIGS #42, #47,
PI-48, PI-50, PI-51-53, PI-73-75,
PI-113-117, PI-152
compared to GetNextEvent PI-68
desk accessories and PI-158
extended task event record PI-74
frame controls and PI-129, PI-130

HodgePodge and PI-51-53, PI-75,
PI-286
in converting Macintosh programs
PI-286
menu-selection handling PI-153
programming techniques and PI-75
scroll bars and PI-117
window-related events and PI-115
taskNtFdErr GSTR-14-52, GSTR-14-
70, GSTR-B-2
tBarColor GSTR-25-19, GSTR-25-142
Tdevsel+ Iie #4
Tdevsel- Iie #4
Tdsu Iie #4
technical manuals GST-106-111
television set ETR-16
temperature
case ETR-159
operating ETR-158
templates PI-140, PI-285
temporary initialization files PI-266,
PI-300
terminal emulation GST-37
terminal mode CTR-179,CTR-184,
GSF-83
Terminal Mode Iic #6
command character GSF-91-92
I/O command GST-36
termination charaaer (menu and item
lines) PI-150
termination character GSTR-13-13
test file format GSTR-xGSTR-xvii
TestControl GSTR-4-81
testCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-27, GSTR-
4-86
text PI-92-97, PI-104-106
text block GSTR-16-26, PI-92
text buffer GSTR-16-54, GSTR-16-58,
GSTR-16-100, GSTR-16-157,
GSTR-16-215-216
text cards ETR-86, ETR-134, ETR-
150, ETR-267-275
text character sets
alternate ETR-19-20
primary ETR-19-20, ETR-228
text colors GSH-57, GSH-77
text device GSTR-23-4, GSTR-23-15,
GSTR-23-28, GSTR-23-39
error output GSTR-23-17, GSTR-23-
18, GSTR-23-19, GSTR-23-20,
GSTR-23-21
input GSTR-23-29, GSTR-23-30,
GSTR-23-40
output GSTR-23-41, GSTR-23-42,
GSTR-23-43, GSTR-23-44, GSTR-
23-45
text display CTR-263, ETR-19-21,
ETR-22, ETR-178-181

40-column CTR-5,CTR-50,CTR-
86,CTR-91,CTR-92,CTR-
94,CTR-107,CTR-259,CTR-
261,CTR-358, GSH-73-79, GSH-
58, GSH-59, GSH-67, GSH-75-
76
80-column GSH-37, GSH-58, GSH-
59, GSH-67, GSH-71, GSH-75-
76, CTR-5,CTR-38,CTR-
64,CTR-68,CTR-86,CTR-
91,CTR-92,CTR-100,CTR-
106,CTR-108,CTR-269,CTR-358
buffer GST-32
changing GSF-63
characteristics CTR-93
flashing format ETR-57-58
inverse format ETR-19, ETR-57-58
LineEdit tool GST-67
normal format ETR-19
See also 40-column text; 80-column
text
setting color GST-20, GST-46
standard I/O links GST-51
switching CTR-93
Text Tool Set GST-70
color text GSH-76-79
text document PI-112
text editing GSTR-6-11
text face GSTR-16-148, GSTR-16-257
text face flag GSTR-16-258
text file format GSTR-xGSTR-xvii
text mode GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-149,
GSTR-16-259-260, GSTR-16-275,
PI-92
text Page 1 CTR-100,CTR-106, ETR-
27, ETR-78, GSH-67
text Page 1X CTR-100
text Page 2 CTR-100, ETR-27, ETR-
79, GSH-67
text pages GST-90
Page 1 GST-80
Pages 1 and 1X GST-89
Shadow register GST-85, GST-86
text screen GSTR-24-16, GSTR-24-17,
GSTR-24-23
TEXT soft switch ETR-29
text strings PI-285
text style GSTR-16-276
menu item GSTR-13-52
TEXT switch CTR-102,CTR-243,CTR-
354
Text Tool Set GST-70, GSTR-1-4,
GSTR-1-16, GSTR-23-1-47, PI-
21, PI-173, PI-261
constants GSTR-23-46
error codes GSTR-23-47
shutdown routine GSTR-23-11
startup routine GSTR-23-11

status routine GSTR-23-14
 using GSTR-23-9
 version number routine GSTR-23-12
 text window CTR-68-69, ETR-56-57, GSF-80, GSH-72-73
 character output routines GST-53
 memory locations ETR-57
 memory locations GSH-262
 text, character sets CTR-88-89
 TEXT2COPY GSF-232
 TextBootInit GSTR-23-10
 TextBounds GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-269
 textBufferWords GSTR-16-61, GSTR-16-206, GSTR-16-276
 textBuffHeight GSTR-16-61, GSTR-16-206, GSTR-16-276
 TextEdit (Macintosh) GST-59
 TextReadBlock GSTR-23-40
 TextReset GSTR-23-13
 textScrap GSTR-20-4, GSTR-20-19
 TextShutDown GSTR-23-9, GSTR-23-11
 TextStartUp GSTR-23-5, GSTR-23-9, GSTR-23-11
 TextStatus GSTR-23-14
 TextVersion GSTR-23-12
 TextWidth GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-270
 TextWriteBlock GSTR-23-41
 Thr Iie #4
 thumb GSTR-4-8, GSTR-25-9
 thumb (scroll bar part) PI-126, PI-129
 thumb box GSTR-4-5
 thumbCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-32-34, GSTR-4-86
 ThunderClock ProDOS #1, #10
 tick counter GSTR-14-22
 tickCnt GSTR-14-66
 TickCount GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-48
 time
 ASCII GSTR-14-16
 changing GSF-64
 displaying GSF-40, GSF-63
 hexadecimal GSTR-14-14, GSTR-14-15
 setting GST-26
 time. See creation date and time; modification date and time
 TIMEDATA GSF-209
 TimeData Mouse #2
 times GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 timing generator (TMG) CTR-15, CTR-245, CTR-365
 timing signals
 65C02 microprocessor ETR-162-163
 expansion slots ETR-194
 RAM ETR-172
 timing signals, video ETR-180-181, ETR-184
 Tiosel+ Iie #4
 Tiosel- Iie #4
 TioStb+ Iie #4
 TioStb- Iie #4
 title bar GSTR-25-6, GSTR-25-8, GSTR-25-49, PI-110, PI-111, PI-114
 title character GSTR-13-13
 title character (menu and item lines) types PI-36, PI-150
 title, window GSTR-25-73, GSTR-25-111, GSTR-25-115
 titleColor GSTR-25-18, GSTR-25-142
 titleName GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-20, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-88
 titleParm GSTR-6-90
 titleWidth GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-20, GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-88
 TLBootInit GSTR-24-4
 TLMountVolume GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-21-22, PI-307, PI-308
 TLP1 CTR-36
 TLP1X CTR-38
 TLP2 CTR-38
 TLP2X CTR-38
 TLReset GSTR-24-6
 TLShutDown GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-5
 TLStartUp GSTR-2-1, GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-4, PI-43
 TLStatus GSTR-24-6
 TLTextMountVolume GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-23-24
 TLVersion GSTR-24-5
 tmClose GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-140
 tmContent GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-124, GSTR-25-140
 tmCRedraw GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-120, GSTR-25-140
 tmDragW GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-124, GSTR-25-140
 tmFindW GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-121, GSTR-25-140
 tmGrow GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-140
 tmInactive GSTR-13-60, GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-121, GSTR-25-140
 tmInfo GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-126, GSTR-25-140
 tmMenuKey GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-119, GSTR-25-140
 tmMenuSel GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-121, GSTR-25-140
 tmOpenNDA GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-122, GSTR-25-140
 tmScroll GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-126, GSTR-25-140
 tmSpecial GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-122, GSTR-25-140
 tmSysClick GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-123, GSTR-25-140
 tmUpdate GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-119, GSTR-25-140
 tmZoom GSTR-25-14, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-140
 toBottom GSTR-25-139
 TOBRAMSETUP GSF-273
 TOCTRL.PANEL GSF-273
 ToDesk GSTR-25-40, GSTR-25-139
 toggle switches CTR-24
 tool calls GST-58, GST-63, P16-6-7. See also specific tool
 tool error number GSF-67
 tool initialization PI-134
 Tool Locator GSF-43, GSF-55, GSF-67, GST-49, GST-60, GST-63, GSTR-1-2, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-16, GSTR-2-1, GSTR-2-3, GSTR-24-1-26, GSTR-A-2, PI-18, PI-20, PI-42, PI-62, PI-65-66, PI-272-273
 constants GSTR-24-26
 error codes GSTR-24-26
 shutdown routine GSTR-24-5
 startup routine GSTR-24-4
 status routine GSTR-24-6
 using GSTR-24-3
 version number routine GSTR-24-5
 tool numbers PI-273
 tool pointer table (TPT) GSTR-24-19, GSTR-A-2
 tool set GSTR-1-1-19
 tool set dependency GSTR-C-15
 tool set interdependency IIGS #12
 tool set numbers GSTR-2-3, GSTR-24-13, GSTR-A-3, GSTR-D-1-9
 tool set startup order GSTR-2-4, GSTR-C-6
 tool set, PI-17-22, PI-291. See also Apple IIGS Toolbox or specific tool set
 error codes GSTR-2-5, GSTR-B-1-5
 installing GSTR-A-6-9
 loading GSTR-2-3-4
 minimum version number GSTR-24-10, GSTR-24-11
 RAM-based GSTR-24-3
 shutting down GSTR-2-4
 starting up GSTR-2-4
 version information GSTR-A-3
 version number GSTR-A-8

tool sets
 advantages of using PI-18
 basic PI-20
 categories of PI-19-22
 defined PI-17
 desktop-interface PI-20-21
 device-interface PI-21
 direct-page space for PI-42
 function numbers PI-66, PI-274
 independence from operating system PI-18
 loading PI-63
 math PI-22
 number of PI-62
 numbers PI-66, PI-273
 operating-environment PI-22
 programming techniques PI-18, PI-62, PI-272-274
 RAM patches PI-43, PI-293
 RAM-based PI-43, PI-63
 required PI-62-63
 sound PI-22
 specialized PI-22
 starting up PI-38-41, PI-42-46, PI-62-67
 user-written PI-272-274
 version number PI-63
 where stored on disk PI-63
 tool starting order IIGS #12
 tool table GSTR-2-3, GSTR-24-11, GSTR-24-12, PI-42, PI-63
 TOOL.SETUP PI-300
 TOOL.SETUP file P16-53, P16-56
 Toolbox GSH-233, GST-7, GST-58-71
 Toolbox Event Manager (Macintosh) GST-59, GST-65
 toolbox routines GSF-43
 Toolbox
 application programming GST-94
 calls GST-58, GST-63
 creating a tool set GST-58
 Interface Library GST-102
 Macintosh Toolbox comparison GST-6, GST-59-62
 mixing program environments GST-88-89
 programming suggestions GST-62
 reference manual GST-109-110
 specifications GST-3
 tool sets GST-63-71
 toolbox-defined constants PI-38, PI-50
 toolbox-defined data structures PI-38
 toolErr GSTR-2-6
 toolLoc1 GSTR-14-67
 toolLoc2 GSTR-14-67
 toolNotFoundErr GSTR-24-7, GSTR-24-8, GSTR-24-9, GSTR-24-10, GSTR-24-11, GSTR-24-19, GSTR-24-20, GSTR-24-25, GSTR-24-26, GSTR-B-2
 tools P16-xix, P16-70-72, P16-182. See also RAM-based tools; ROM-based tools or specific tool
 TOOLS subdirectory GSTR-2-3, GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-10, GSTR-24-11
 toolVersionErr GSTR-24-10, GSTR-24-11, GSTR-24-26, GSTR-B-2
 topMost GSTR-25-139
 TOPRINTMSG16 GSF-274
 TOPRINTMSG8 GSF-273
 TOREADBR GSF-272
 TOREADTIME GSF-273
 toronto GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 TOSUB GSF-247
 TotalMem GSTR-12-46
 TOTEXTPG2DA GSF-274
 TOWRITEBR GSF-272
 TOWRITETIME GSF-272
 TPT (tool pointer table) GSTR-24-19, GSTR-A-2
 TRACE command CTR-221-223
 Trace command GSF-50, GSF-66
 TRACEVECTOR GSF-271
 traceVector GSTR-14-68
 trackball GSTR-7-21
 TrackControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-82-84, GSTR-25-126, PI-71, PI-129
 TrackGoAway GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-127-128, IIGS #42, PI-114, PI-115
 tracking PI-153
 tracks P16-43, P16-254, P16-282, P16-284
 TrackZoom GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-12, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-129-130, PI-114
 transactions GSH-127, GSH-128-129
 transferring
 data to and from files P16-21
 sparse files P16-30
 translation PI-277
 Transmit num Bytes command GSF-194
 Transmit Two Bytes command GSF-195
 transmit/receive register, ACIA CTR-282
 transmit2ADDBytes GSTR-3-21, GSTR-3-28
 transmitADDBytes GSTR-3-21, GSTR-3-28
 transparent GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
 transparent mode CTR-187
 transparentVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
 Trap Dispatcher (Macintosh) GST-60
 tree files P16-28, P16-29, P16-262, P16-271-272
 growing P16-267-269
 TREESEARCH routine Pascal #14
 trigger value PI-251
 trkey IIC #6
 Trs IIC #4
 TRS.CODE Pascal #14
 trser IIC #6
 Trwh IIC #4
 TTL RGB GST-19
 TURTLEGRAPHICS unit Pascal #15
 twkey IIC #6
 twser IIC #6
 txFace GSTR-16-56
 txSize GSTR-16-150, GSTR-16-261, GSTR-16-277
 txtDspLang GSTR-14-65
 type-ahead keyboard buffer GST-42
 TypeID. See User ID
 typeId PI-192
 types PI-36
 typhed IIC #6

U

UCSD Pascal GST-90, GST-94
 display shadowing GST-86
 memory expansion GST-17
 UDISPATCH1 GSF-264
 UDISPATCH2 GSF-264
 UDivide GSTR-9-39
 unclaimed interrupts. See interrupt(s)
 unclaimedSndIntErr GSTR-21-37
 unCnctdDevErr GSTR-14-34, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
 unDefHW GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
 underlined menu item GSTR-13-15-16, GSTR-13-77
 underlineMask GSTR-16-276
 underlining PI-96
 underMItem GSTR-13-78, GSTR-13-87
 underscore () GSF-41, GSF-67, GSF-83
 blinking CTR-179
 underscore character GSTR-2-5
 undo GSTR-5-30
 Undo command (Edit menu) PI-32, PI-277
 undoAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
 unhighlighting PI-72, PI-153
 UniDisk GSH-143

UniDisk 3.5 CTR-120,CTR-124,CTR-130,CTR-223, GSF-110, GSF-117, GSF-133, GSF-135, P16-43, UniDisk 3.5 #5
 control list CTR-138
 I/O entry points CTR-122
 UniDisk 3.5 Controller
 Miscellaneous #6
 UniDisk 3.5 drives GST-39, GST-40
 UniDisk ID bytes UniDisk 3.5 #2
 UniDisk, internal functions GSF-144-145
 UniDisk, internal routines GSF-146-149
 UniDisk, memory allocation GSF-150-151
 UniDisk, SmartPort calls GSF-142-143
 UniDiskStat GSF-143
 UnionRect GSTR-16-271
 UnionRgn GSTR-16-272
 UNITCLEAR Pascal #16
 UNITREAD Pascal #16
 UnitStatus Iic #, Pascal #16
 UNITWRITE Pascal #16
 unit_number ProDOS #20, #21
 Unload Segment IIGS #22
 Unload Segment By Number IIGS #22
 Unload Segment By Number call (System Loader) P16-207, P16-237
 description of P16-232-233
 unloading PI-197, PI-198, PI-233, PI-246
 unloading dynamic segments IIGS #22
 UnloadOneTool GSTR-22-13, GSTR-22-16, GSTR-22-17, GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-25
 UnloadScrap GSTR-20-17
 unlocking a memory block GSTR-12-32, GSTR-12-33
 unlocking handles PI-194, PI-277
 UnPackBytes GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-42-44
 unpurgeable PI-195
 unreal font GSTR-8-7, GSTR-8-8
 unrealBit GSTR-8-9, GSTR-8-10, GSTR-8-50
 UnshieldCursor IIGS #34
 unsignedFlag GSTR-9-42
 unzoomed window size GSTR-25-74, GSTR-25-112
 UP GSF-241
 Up Arrow CTR-4, GSTR-4-86
 up arrow (scroll bar part) PI-126
 update event GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-54, GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-5, GSTR-7-14, GSTR-10-46, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-51, GSTR-25-52, GSTR-25-94, GSTR-25-95, GSTR-25-96, PI-68, PI-69, PI-72, PI-115, PI-118
 update region GSTR-6-87, GSTR-10-39, GSTR-25-35, GSTR-25-67, GSTR-25-80, GSTR-25-81, GSTR-25-131, GSTR-25-132
 update region PI-115, PI-117
 update routine
 HodgePodge and PI-116
 UpdateDialog GSTR-6-87
 updateEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50, GSTR-25-119, PI-69
 updateMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
 updating PI-72, PI-73
 upFlag GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-85
 uppercase characters CTR-394
 uppercase letters P16-18
 US character ETR-55
 USER Iie #3
 USER command CTR-218,CTR-228, GSF-47
 user ID GSTR-2-1, GSTR-2-2, GSTR-5-4, GSTR-12-10, GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-17, GSTR-12-18, GSTR-12-35, GSTR-14-57, GSTR-14-59, GSTR-14-60
 User ID IIGS #17, P16-37, P16-61, P16-71, P16-77, P16-167-168, P16-186, P16-192, P16-194-195, P16-200, P16-206, P16-208, P16-209, P16-223, P16-226-227, P16-230, P16-233, P16-240, P16-245. See also Memory Manager; User ID Manager, PI-192-194, PI-201, PI-202, PI-241, PI-247, PI-261, GSTR-12-10, GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-17, GSTR-14-6, GSTR-14-57, P16-71, P16-184, P16-300-301, PI-182, PI-192
 AuxID P16-301
 format P16-300-301
 MainID P16-208, P16-223, P16-301
 master GSTR-12-10-11, GSTR-12-14, GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-23, GSTR-12-35
 TypeID P16-71, P16-223, P16-301
 user interrupt vector PI-268, PI-270
 User Shutdown PI-199, PI-200, PI-260
 User Shutdown call (System Loader) P16-185, P16-209, P16-225
 description of P16-244-246
 user tool GSTR-A-1, GSTR-A-6
 user tool set GSTR-A-6, PI-256, PI-272-274
 user vector GSF-65
 user's interrupt handler ETR-154-155
 user-defined constants PI-36
 user-written tool sets PI-272-274
 userCilItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-88, IIGS #38
 userCilItem2 GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-88
 userField GSTR-16-151, GSTR-16-262, GSTR-16-277
 UserID IIGS #34
 userItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-88, IIGS #38
 userTool GSTR-24-26
 userVolume GSTR-14-65
 USRADR GSF-259
 usrTLoc1 GSTR-14-67
 usrTLoc2 GSTR-14-67
 utilities (APW) GST-8, GST-105
 utilities (APW) , validity-check byte CTR-51,CTR-53

V

ValidRect GSTR-25-131
 ValidRgn GSTR-6-87, GSTR-25-132
 value controls PI-125, PI-128, PI-130
 value, definition of P16-102, P16-213
 varCode parameters GSTR-25-25
 variable initialization (HodgePodge) PI-38-41
 variables, global. See global variables
 vAxisOnly GSTR-4-53, GSTR-4-86
 vbInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
 VBL interrupt GSTR-14-27, GSTR-14-49, Mouse #3
 VBL interrupt rate Mouse #2
 VBL interrupts IIGS #39
 VBL signal IIGS #40
 vblDisable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 vblEnable GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-67
 VBLInt switch CTR-243
 vblIntHnd GSTR-14-68
 VCB ProDOS #8
 VCB. See volume control blocks
 vector address GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-61, GSTR-14-63
 vector reference number GSTR-14-62
 vector routines PI-181
 vector space values P16-64
 vectors CTR-36,CTR-56
 vectors GSF-70, GSF-149, GSF-258-275
 BRK ETR-148
 interrupt CTR-333-334
 interrupt ETR-151
 IRQ ETR-147-148
 Monitor CTR-326-327
 page 3 ETR-97

reset CTR-50-53
 reset ETR-96-97
 See interrupt vector table
 venice GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
 Verify GSF-33, GSF-45, GSF-59, GSF-140, GSF-148, CTR-211-212, CTR-217, CTR-227, ETR-109, ETR-118
 VERIFY subroutine ETR-226
 VERSION GSF-238, GSTR-16-42, GSTR-16-43
 version information GSTR-A-3
 version number GSTR-A-8
 version number routines
 Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-11
 Control Manager GSTR-4-43
 Desk Manager GSTR-5-10
 Dialog Manager GSTR-6-29
 Event Manager GSTR-7-29
 Font Manager GSTR-8-21
 Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-6
 LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-14
 List Manager GSTR-11-14
 Memory Manager GSTR-12-19
 Menu Manager GSTR-13-31
 Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-7
 Print Manager GSTR-15-27
 QuickDraw II GSTR-16-66
 QuickDraw II Auxiliary GSTR-17-7
 SANE Tool Set GSTR-18-13
 Scheduler GSTR-19-5
 Scrap Manager GSTR-20-8
 Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-9
 Standard File Operations Tool Set GSTR-22-18
 Text Tool Set GSTR-23-12
 Tool Locator GSTR-24-5
 Window Manager GSTR-25-33
 version number
 font definition GSTR-16-42, GSTR-16-43
 minimum GSTR-24-10, GSTR-24-11
 file system P16-258, P16-260, P16-263, P16-305
 object module format P16-230
 ProDOS 16 P16-xxii, P16-171
 System Loader P16-218-219
 versions PI-301
 of HodgePodge PI-35
 of tool sets PI-63
 vertical blanking CTR-338, CTR-354, CTR-360
 vertical blanking (VBL) GST-43, GST-55
 vertical blanking signal GSF-180, GSF-183
 vertical blanking
 active modes CTR-188
 vertical retracing IIGS #40
 vertical scan GST-43
 vertical sync ETR-231
 vertical-count bits CTR-260
 VGC (Video Graphics Controller) GST-12, GST-76
 VID CTR-270, CTR-365
 VID7M signal ETR-163
 video GSH-7, GSH-52
 video buffers GSH-89, GSH-167
 video counters CTR-257-258, ETR-173-174, IIGS #39
 video display CTR-257-273, CTR-359-360, PI-2, PI-6-7. See also Super Hi- 80column text PI-6, PI-8, PI-260
 addresses CTR-101
 circuits CTR-262
 Double Hi-Res PI-7
 Hi-Res PI-7
 I/O firmware support CTR-116-118
 modes CTR-261-269
 specifications CTR-87
 Apple II specifications GSH-259
 locations GSH-259
 mixed-mode GSH-59
 Re, See display, video
 video display buffers GST-16
 video display modes GST-19-24
 video expansion, connector signals CTR-272-273
 video expansion, output CTR-271-273
 video firmware GSF-5, GSF-69-80
 Video Graphics Controller (VGC) GST-12, GST-76, GSH-7, GSH-52-57, GSH-84
 Interrupt register GSH-55
 Interrupt-Clear register GSH-56-57
 interrupts GSH-54-57
 video memory. See memory
 video monitor ETR-16-17, GSH-6
 composite GSH-59
 RGB GSH-57, GSH-59
 video output firmware
 addresses CTR-324
 entry points CTR-23
 video output port, characteristics CTR-86
 video output signals CTR-257, CTR-270-273, ETR-185-186
 video ROM ETR-5
 video scan line, interrupts GST-55
 video standards ETR-173
 video timing IIGS #39
 video
 Apple II GSH-58-60
 background colors GSH-57, GSH-77
 border colors GSH-57, GSH-77-78
 connector GSH-66
 display GSH-58
 display modes GSH-57
 display pages GSH-67-73
 Double Hi-Res GSH-59
 Hi-Res GSH-59
 Low-Res GSH-59
 monochrome GSH-58, GSH-60
 NTSC GSH-66
 RAM GSH-53
 RGB GSH-66
 text colors GSH-57, GSH-77
 video buffer GSH-89, GSH-167
 VIDOUT GSF-240
 VIDWAIT GSF-238
 view rectangle GSTR-6-17, GSTR-10-4, GSTR-10-6-7, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-17, GSTR-10-30
 visible region GSTR-16-14-15, GSTR-16-17, GSTR-16-152, GSTR-16-153, GSTR-16-187, GSTR-16-197, GSTR-16-208, GSTR-16-264, GSTR-17-10, GSTR-25-35, GSTR-25-47
 visible region PI-81, PI-82, PI-84, PI-115
 visRgn GSTR-16-15, GSTR-16-152, GSTR-16-263, GSTR-25-23, GSTR-25-28, PI-82
 VLINE GSF-79, GSF-226, CTR-113, CTR-115, ETR-68, ETR-226
 voices GST-25
 volSetting GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-37
 voltage converter CTR-11-12
 voltage
 line ETR-158
 supply ETR-159
 voltages GSH-192
 volume bit map P16-254, P16-258
 VOLUME call P16-11, P16-44, P16-80
 description of P16-128-130
 volume control CTR-8, CTR-256
 volume control block ProDOS #8
 volume control blocks P16-47
 volume name PI-208
 volume of sound GST-24, GST-69
 Volume registers GSH-106
 volume setting GSTR-21-21, GSTR-21-26
 volume(s) P16-7-8 .See also file(s)
 boot P16-81
 directories P16-7, P16-18, P16-254
 directories, directory headers P16-256-259
 formatting P16-254

names P16-7, P16-14, P16-18, P16-43, P16-117
organization of information on P16-254-255
sizes of P16-14
vSizing GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13, GSTR-15-48
VT character ETR-54
VTAB GSF-241
VTABZ GSF-79, GSF-241, CTR-113, ETR-68

W

WAIT routine Miscellaneous #12, ETR-226, GSF-243
WaitCursor GSTR-17-5, GSTR-17-16, PI-46, PI-165, PI-170, PI-211
WaitMouseUp GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-49
WAPT (work area pointer table) GSTR-A-4, GSTR-A-10
warm start CTR-50, CTR-51, CTR-123, GSF-65, GSF-112, GSF-178
warm-start reset ETR-95
interrupts GST-55
waveform IIGS #19
waveform buffer IIGS #23
waveform envelopes IIGS #23
waveList IIGS #19
waveSize GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-37
waveStart GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-37
wavetable GSH-98, GSH-102, GSH-107
Wavetable Pointer registers GSH-108-109
Wavetable Size registers GSH-107
wCalcRgns GSTR-25-25, GSTR-25-140
wCalledSysEdit GSTR-25-123, GSTR-25-140
wClickCalled GSTR-25-123, GSTR-25-140
wClosedNDA GSTR-25-122, GSTR-25-140
wColor GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-142
wContDefProc GSTR-25-21, GSTR-25-26, GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-119, GSTR-25-143, PI-109
wContRgn GSTR-25-16, GSTR-25-142
wControls GSTR-25-16, GSTR-25-142
wDataH GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-142
wDataV GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-142
wDev GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13, GSTR-15-48
wDispose GSTR-25-25, GSTR-25-140

wDraw GSTR-25-25, GSTR-25-140
wDrawFrame GSTR-25-27
wedge GSTR-16-24
wedges PI-91
Western Spanish keyboard CTR-380-381
wFrame IIGS #3, PI-109
wFrameBits GSTR-25-21, GSTR-25-69, GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-85, GSTR-25-108, GSTR-25-142
wFrameCtrls GSTR-25-16, GSTR-25-142
wFrameDefProc GSTR-25-25, GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143
wGrow GSTR-25-25
what GSTR-7-6, GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-43, GSTR-7-51, PI-70
wHAxisOnly GSTR-25-139
when GSTR-7-6, GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-43, GSTR-7-51, GSTR-13-61, GSTR-13-66, PI-70
where GSTR-7-6, GSTR-7-38, GSTR-7-43, GSTR-7-51, PI-70
wHit GSTR-25-25, GSTR-25-140
white GSTR-16-275
wHitFrame GSTR-25-126
widMax GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-226
widMaxSize GSTR-16-226, GSTR-16-274
width GSTR-16-13, GSTR-16-277, PI-80
wInactMenu GSTR-13-60, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-121, GSTR-25-140, PI-75
wInContent GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-12, GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-124, GSTR-25-140, PI-74
WindBootInit GSTR-25-32
WindDragRect GSTR-25-133-134
wInDesk GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-140, PI-74
wInDeskItem GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-122, GSTR-25-140, PI-75
windGlobals IIGS #42
WindNewRes GSTR-25-135, IIGS #4
window GSTR-25-1
alert GSTR-6-7, GSTR-25-6, GSTR-25-17
application GSTR-25-8, GSTR-25-66, GSTR-25-70
control GSTR-4-8
dialog GSTR-6-7
document GSTR-25-6, GSTR-25-17
system GSTR-5-26, GSTR-25-8, GSTR-25-66, GSTR-25-70, GSTR-25-107

window color table GSTR-25-142
window colors GSTR-25-17-20
window content definition procedures PI-51
window controls GSTR-25-6-7
window definition procedure GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-25, GSTR-25-55, GSTR-25-58, GSTR-25-98, GSTR-25-101, GSTR-25-127, IIGS #42
window drawing
programming techniques PI-103-106, PI-115-116
window events GST-65, PI-51, PI-72
HodgePodge and PI-56-57, PI-72
window frame GSTR-25-17, GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-108, GSTR-25-115, PI-109, PI-111
window frame color GSTR-25-18, GSTR-25-57, GSTR-25-99
window frame scroll bars GSTR-25-62, GSTR-25-64, GSTR-25-96, GSTR-25-105, GSTR-25-106
window frame type GSTR-25-69, GSTR-25-84-85, GSTR-25-108
window global flag GSTR-25-136-137
window global mask GSTR-25-137
window information bar GSTR-25-20, IIGS #3
window list PI-154
Window Manager GST-59, GST-60, GST-62, GST-66, GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-17-19, GSTR-13-7, GSTR-13-64, GSTR-13-66, GSTR-25-1-144, IIGS #3, #4, #5, #42, PI-20, PI-64, PI-71-73, PI-82, PI-91, PI-108-124 PI-288
constants GSTR-25-139-141
data structures GSTR-25-142-143
error codes GSTR-25-144
icon font GSTR-25-15, GSTR-25-109
shutdown routine GSTR-25-33
startup routine GSTR-25-32
status routine GSTR-25-34
using GSTR-25-10-11
version number routine GSTR-25-33
window menu bar GSTR-13-5, PI-147
window origin GSTR-25-29
resetting PI-120
window record GSTR-25-15-16, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-142
window record definition IIGS #42
window records PI-109
window size box GSTR-25-19
window title GSTR-25-73, GSTR-25-111, GSTR-25-115
window title bar color GSTR-25-19

window title color GSTR-25-18
 window titles IIGS #5
 window-related events programming techniques PI-113-120
 window-related events programming techniques, TaskMaster and PI-115
 WINDOW.ASM PI-337-352
 WINDOW.CC PI-390-399
 WINDOW.PAS PI-425-428
 WindowGlobal GSTR-25-136-137
 windows GSF-219, PI-10, PI-14, PI-51, PI-81, PI-82, PI-108-124
 active PI-114, PI-115, PI-116
 alert PI-110, PI-111, PI-116, PI-136
 application PI-111
 basic features PI-108-113
 controls and PI-129
 custom PI-111
 default properties PI-108
 definition procedures PI-51
 dialog PI-116, PI-136
 document PI-110, PI-111
 drawing contents of PI-115-116
 frame colors PI-111
 GrafPorts, relation to PI-108-109
 HodgePodge and PI-57, PI-120-124
 inactive PI-115
 scrolling PI-117-120
 standard pans PI-110
 system PI-111
 windows and QuickDraw II GST-64
 Windows menu PI-32
 winDrag GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-124, GSTR-25-140, PI-74
 WindReset GSTR-25-34
 WindShutDown GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-33, PI-58
 windSize GSTR-25-141
 WindStartUp GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-32, PI-45
 WindStatus GSTR-25-34, PI-58
 WindVersion GSTR-25-33
 wInfoDefProc GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143, IIGS #3
 wInfoHeight GSTR-25-21, GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143, IIGS #3
 wInfoRefCon GSTR-25-59, GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143
 wInFrame GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-126, GSTR-25-140, PI-75
 wInGoAway GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-27, GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-140, PI-74
 wInGrow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-140, PI-74
 wInInfo GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-126, GSTR-25-140, PI-75
 wInMenuBar GSTR-13-10, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-121, GSTR-25-123, GSTR-25-140, PI-50, PI-54, PI-74, PI-153
 wInSpecial GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-122, GSTR-25-123, GSTR-25-140, PI-75
 wInSysWindow GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-140, PI-75
 wInZoom GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-27, GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-140, PI-74
 wMaxH GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-142
 wMaxv GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-142
 wmNotStartedUp GSTR-4-42, GSTR-4-48, GSTR-4-88, GSTR-B-4
 wmTaskMaskErr GSTR-25-119
 wmTaskRecSize GSTR-25-141
 WNDW CTR-257
 wNew GSTR-25-25, GSTR-25-140
 wNext GSTR-25-16, GSTR-25-142
 wNoConstraint GSTR-25-139
 wNoHit GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-49
 word wraparound GST-67
 word, size of P16-33, P16-102. See also long word
 words CTR-385
 work area pointer table (WAPT) GSTR-A-4, GSTR-A-10
 wPadding GSTR-25-16, GSTR-25-142
 wPageHor GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143
 wPageVar GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143
 wPlane GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143
 wPosition GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143
 wRefCon GSTR-25-38, GSTR-25-72, GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-110, GSTR-25-142
 wRefCon PI-109
 WRITE GSF-253, PI-211, PI-213, UniDisk 3.5 #3, 3.5 #4, CTR-127, CTR-143-144, GSF-134-135, P16-24, P16-42, P16-44, P16-85, 264, P16-277, ETR-39, ETR-226
 description of P16-143-144
 Write Data Field GSF-139
 Write Microcontroller Memory command GSF-191
 write next GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-34
 write protected UniDisk 3.5 #3
 Write RAM GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-32
 Write Register GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-30
 WRITE tape command ETR-111-112
 Write Track GSF-139-140
 write-enable bit P16-137
 WriteBlock call GSF-5, GSF-127
 WriteBParam GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-11-12, GSTR-14-13
 WriteBRam GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-9
 WriteChar GSTR-23-42
 WriteCString GSTR-23-7, GSTR-23-43
 WriteData GSF-147
 WriteLine GSTR-23-44
 writeMicroMem GSTR-3-20, GSTR-3-28
 writeNext GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 writeProtected GSTR-23-16, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
 writeRAM GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 WriteRamBlock GSTR-21-28
 writeRegister GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
 WriteString GSTR-23-45
 WriteTimeHex GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-15
 WriteTrk GSF-148
 WRITE_BLOCK call P16-42, P16-44, P16-284, P16-290, CTR-127, CTR-134-135
 description of P16-159
 writing to files PI-211-214
 writing applications P16-89
 files P16-24
 wScrollHor GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-143
 wScrollVer GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-143
 wStorage GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-88, GSTR-25-143
 wStructRgn GSTR-25-16, GSTR-25-142
 wTitle GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-85, GSTR-25-142
 wTrackZoom GSTR-25-125
 wUpdateRgn GSTR-25-16, GSTR-25-142
 wVAxisOnly GSTR-25-139
 wXOrigin GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-142
 wYOrigin GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87, GSTR-25-142
 wZoom GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-87

yOffset GSTR-3-24, GSTR-3-29

X

X command CTR-157,CTR-171, GSF-50
x flag GSF-37, P16-64
X Index register GSH-200, GSH-204, CTR-18,CTR-43,CTR-73,CTR-84,CTR-114,CTR-115,CTR-118,CTR-128,CTR-192,CTR-201,CTR-213, ETR-146, GSF-35, GSF-74, GSF-98, GSF-121, P16-64, P16-104, P16-208, PI-66, PI-261
 changing GSF-60
 system interrupt handler GSF-181
X0 CTR-243,CTR-284
X0Edge switch CTR-189
X1 CTR-284
X2Fix GSTR-9-40
X2Frac GSTR-9-41
XBA GSF-18
xDivide GSTR-3-24, GSTR-3-29
XFER GSF-261, CTR-42-44,CTR-312, ETR-91, ETR-93, ETR-144, ETR-153
XInt CTR-190,CTR-354
xMultiply GSTR-3-24, GSTR-3-29
XOFF GSF-85, GSF-89, GSF-95
xOffset GSTR-3-24, GSTR-3-29
XON GSF-85, GSF-89, GSF-95
XON/XOFF handshaking GST-34, GST-36
XON/XOFF protocol CTR-171
xorMItemHilite GSTR-13-78, GSTR-13-87
XorRgn GSTR-16-273
xorTitleHilite GSTR-13-72

Y

Y Index register GSH-200, GSH-204, CTR-18,CTR-43,CTR-113,CTR-114,CTR-115,CTR-128,CTR-192,CTR-201,CTR-213, ETR-146, GSF-35, GSF-98, GSF-121, P16-64, P16-104, P16-208, PI-261
 changing GSF-60
 system interrupt handler GSF-181
Y0 CTR-243,CTR-284
Y0Edge switch CTR-190
Y1 CTR-284
yDivide GSTR-3-24, GSTR-3-29
yellow GSTR-16-275
YInt CTR-190,CTR-354
yMultiply GSTR-3-24, GSTR-3-29

Z

Z command CTR-157,CTR-165,CTR-171
Zap command GSF-34, GSF-87
zero page ETR-77, ETR-79-81, GSF-12, GSF-15, GSH-28, GSH-44, P16-75, P16-88. See also direct page, PI-203, PI-269, PI-293, PI-296
zero-crossing byte IIGS #11
ZeroScrap GSTR-20-5, GSTR-20-6, GSTR-20-11, GSTR-20-16, GSTR-20-18
zeroSize GSTR-16-226, GSTR-16-274
ZIDBYTE GSF-239
ZIDBYTE2 GSF-238
Zilog 8530 Serial Communications Controller chip GSF-82, GST-6, GST-33, GST-39
ZMODE GSF-257
zoom box GSTR-25-6, GSTR-25-10, GSTR-25-49
zoom box/area PI-48, PI-110, PI-111, PI-112, PI-114
zoom region GSTR-25-9, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-129-130
zoomed window size GSTR-25-74, GSTR-25-112
ZoomWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-12, GSTR-25-138, PI-114

Apple Computer, Inc.

20525 Mariani Avenue
Cupertino, California 95014
(408) 996-1010
TLX 171-576

To reorder products, please call:
Apple Programmers and Developers Association
1-800-282-APDA